

# FORD **EXPLORER** Owner's Manual





The information contained in this publication was correct at the time of release. In the interest of continuous development, we reserve the right to change specifications, design or equipment at any time without notice or obligation. No part of this publication may be reproduced, transmitted, stored in a retrieval system or translated into any language in any form by any means without our written permission. Errors and omissions excepted.

© Ford Motor Company 2026

All rights reserved.

Part Number: CG3968en-202603-20260327083757





# Table of Contents

---

## Introduction

|                                                   |    |
|---------------------------------------------------|----|
| About This Publication .....                      | 13 |
| Using This Publication .....                      | 14 |
| Warnings and Notes Used in This Publication ..... | 14 |
| Special Notices - Turkey .....                    | 15 |

## Symbols Glossary

|                                               |    |
|-----------------------------------------------|----|
| Symbols Used On Your Instrument Cluster ..... | 17 |
|-----------------------------------------------|----|

## Data Privacy

|                                  |    |
|----------------------------------|----|
| Data Privacy .....               | 21 |
| Service Data .....               | 22 |
| Event Data .....                 | 22 |
| Settings Data .....              | 23 |
| Connected Vehicle Data .....     | 23 |
| Mobile Device Data .....         | 23 |
| Emergency Call System Data ..... | 24 |

## Environment

|                                            |    |
|--------------------------------------------|----|
| Protecting the Environment .....           | 25 |
| Recycling and Disposing Labels .....       | 25 |
| Recycling and Disposing of Batteries ..... | 25 |

## Visual Search

|                               |    |
|-------------------------------|----|
| Interior Overview - LHD ..... | 26 |
| Interior Overview - RHD ..... | 27 |
| Exterior Overview .....       | 28 |

## Child Safety

|                                            |    |
|--------------------------------------------|----|
| Child Safety Precautions .....             | 30 |
| Child Restraint Anchor Points .....        | 31 |
| Child Restraints .....                     | 32 |
| Booster Seats .....                        | 36 |
| Child Safety Locks .....                   | 37 |
| Child Safety Lock Indicator .....          | 38 |
| Child Safety Locks – Troubleshooting ..... | 38 |

## Seatbelts

|                                                |    |
|------------------------------------------------|----|
| Seatbelt Precautions .....                     | 39 |
| Fastening and Unfastening the Seatbelts .....  | 39 |
| Adjusting the Seatbelts During Pregnancy ..... | 40 |
| Seatbelt Reminder .....                        | 40 |

## Airbags

|                                                    |    |
|----------------------------------------------------|----|
| How Do the Front Airbags Work .....                | 41 |
| How Do the Side Airbags Work .....                 | 41 |
| How Does the Center Mounted Side Airbag Work ..... | 42 |
| How Do the Side Curtain Airbags Work .....         | 42 |
| Airbag Precautions .....                           | 43 |
| Passenger Airbag Indicators .....                  | 43 |
| Switching the Passenger Airbag On and Off .....    | 44 |
| Airbags – Troubleshooting .....                    | 44 |

## Pedestrian Alert System

|                                           |    |
|-------------------------------------------|----|
| What Is the Pedestrian Alert System ..... | 45 |
| Pedestrian Alert System Precautions ..... | 45 |

## Driver State Assist

|                                             |    |
|---------------------------------------------|----|
| How Does Driver State Assist Work .....     | 46 |
| Driver State Assist Precautions .....       | 46 |
| Driver State Assist Limitations .....       | 47 |
| Driver State Assist – Troubleshooting ..... | 47 |

## eCall

|                                         |    |
|-----------------------------------------|----|
| What Is eCall .....                     | 48 |
| How Does eCall Work .....               | 48 |
| Emergency Call Requirements .....       | 48 |
| Emergency Call Limitations .....        | 48 |
| Manually Making an Emergency Call ..... | 48 |

# Table of Contents

---

|                                   |    |
|-----------------------------------|----|
| Emergency Call Indicators .....   | 49 |
| Changing the Backup Battery ..... | 50 |
| eCall – Troubleshooting .....     | 50 |

## Keys and Remote Controls

|                                                  |    |
|--------------------------------------------------|----|
| Remote Control Limitations .....                 | 51 |
| Removing the Key Blade .....                     | 51 |
| Changing the Remote Control Battery .....        | 51 |
| Replacing a Lost Key or Remote Control .....     | 53 |
| Programming the Remote Control .....             | 53 |
| Keys and Remote Controls – Troubleshooting ..... | 53 |

## Doors and Locks

|                                                     |    |
|-----------------------------------------------------|----|
| Operating the Doors From Outside Your Vehicle ..... | 54 |
| Operating the Doors From Inside Your Vehicle .....  | 55 |
| Reprogramming the Unlocking Function .....          | 56 |
| Autounlock .....                                    | 56 |
| Autolock .....                                      | 56 |
| Mislock .....                                       | 56 |
| Autorelock .....                                    | 57 |
| Doors and Locks – Troubleshooting .....             | 57 |

## Keyless Entry

|                                       |    |
|---------------------------------------|----|
| What Is Keyless Entry .....           | 58 |
| Keyless Entry Limitations .....       | 58 |
| Keyless Entry Settings .....          | 58 |
| Using Keyless Entry .....             | 58 |
| Keyless Entry – Troubleshooting ..... | 59 |

## Easy Entry and Exit

|                                                |    |
|------------------------------------------------|----|
| How Does Easy Entry and Exit Work .....        | 60 |
| Switching Easy Entry and Exit On and Off ..... | 60 |

## Liftgate - Vehicles With: Hands-Free Liftgate

|                                                    |    |
|----------------------------------------------------|----|
| Liftgate Precautions .....                         | 61 |
| Opening the Liftgate .....                         | 61 |
| Switching the Hands-Free Liftgate On and Off ..... | 62 |
| Setting the Liftgate Opening Height .....          | 63 |
| Closing the Liftgate .....                         | 63 |
| Stopping the Liftgate Movement .....               | 65 |
| Liftgate Obstacle Detection .....                  | 65 |
| Liftgate – Troubleshooting .....                   | 65 |
| Liftgate Videos .....                              | 66 |

## Liftgate - Vehicles With: Manual Liftgate

|                                  |    |
|----------------------------------|----|
| Liftgate Precautions .....       | 67 |
| Opening the Liftgate .....       | 67 |
| Closing the Liftgate .....       | 67 |
| Liftgate – Troubleshooting ..... | 68 |

## Security

|                                        |    |
|----------------------------------------|----|
| Passive Anti-Theft System .....        | 69 |
| Anti-Theft Alarm System .....          | 69 |
| Anti-Theft Alarm System Settings ..... | 70 |

## Steering Wheel

|                                                      |    |
|------------------------------------------------------|----|
| Adjusting the Steering Wheel .....                   | 73 |
| Switching the Heated Steering Wheel On and Off ..... | 73 |

## Wipers and Washers

|                                                  |    |
|--------------------------------------------------|----|
| Wipers .....                                     | 75 |
| Autowipers .....                                 | 76 |
| Switching the Rear Window Wiper On and Off ..... | 77 |
| Reverse Wipe .....                               | 77 |
| Checking the Wiper Blades .....                  | 77 |
| Replacing the Front Wiper Blades .....           | 77 |
| Replacing the Rear Wiper Blades .....            | 78 |

# Table of Contents

|                                                          |     |                                                     |     |
|----------------------------------------------------------|-----|-----------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Washers .....                                            | 78  | Exterior Mirrors Videos .....                       | 101 |
| Wipers and Washers Videos .....                          | 80  | <b>Instrument Cluster</b>                           |     |
| Wipers and Washers – Troubleshooting .....               | 80  | Instrument Cluster Overview .....                   | 102 |
| <b>Exterior Lighting</b>                                 |     | Power Gauge .....                                   | 103 |
| Exterior Lighting Control .....                          | 82  | Speedometer .....                                   | 103 |
| Headlamps .....                                          | 82  | Vehicle Range Display .....                         | 103 |
| Autolamps .....                                          | 83  | High Voltage Battery Gauge .....                    | 103 |
| Exterior Lamps .....                                     | 84  | What Are the Instrument Cluster Warning Lamps ..... | 104 |
| Automatic High Beam Control .....                        | 86  | What Are the Instrument Cluster Indicators .....    | 104 |
| Glare Free High Beam Control .....                       | 88  | <b>Instrument Cluster Display</b>                   |     |
| Adaptive Front Lighting .....                            | 91  | Using the Instrument Cluster Display Controls ..... | 105 |
| Exterior Lighting – Frequently Asked Questions .....     | 91  | Customizing the Instrument Cluster Display .....    | 105 |
| <b>Interior Lighting</b>                                 |     | Trip Summary .....                                  | 107 |
| Switching All of the Interior Lamps On and Off .....     | 93  | <b>Personalized Settings</b>                        |     |
| Switching the Front Interior Lamps On and Off .....      | 93  | Changing the Language .....                         | 109 |
| Switching the Rear Interior Lamps On and Off .....       | 93  | Changing the Measurement Unit .....                 | 109 |
| Interior Lamp Function .....                             | 93  | <b>Head Up Display</b>                              |     |
| Adjusting the Instrument Panel Lighting Brightness ..... | 94  | What Is the Head Up Display .....                   | 110 |
| Ambient Lighting .....                                   | 94  | Head Up Display Overview .....                      | 110 |
| Interior Lighting Videos .....                           | 94  | Switching the Head Up Display On and Off .....      | 110 |
| <b>Windows</b>                                           |     | Head Up Display Settings .....                      | 110 |
| Opening and Closing the Windows .....                    | 96  | <b>Remote Start</b>                                 |     |
| Global Opening and Closing .....                         | 97  | Using Remote Start .....                            | 111 |
| Window Bounce-Back .....                                 | 98  | Remote Start Settings .....                         | 111 |
| <b>Interior Mirror</b>                                   |     | <b>Climate Control</b>                              |     |
| Interior Mirror Precautions .....                        | 99  | Switching Climate Control On and Off .....          | 112 |
| Auto-Dimming Interior Mirror .....                       | 99  | Switching Recirculated Air On and Off .....         | 112 |
| <b>Exterior Mirrors</b>                                  |     |                                                     |     |
| Adjusting the Exterior Mirrors .....                     | 100 |                                                     |     |
| Folding the Exterior Mirrors .....                       | 101 |                                                     |     |

# Table of Contents

---

|                                                   |     |
|---------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Switching Air Conditioning On and Off .....       | 112 |
| Switching Defrost On and Off .....                | 113 |
| Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off .....        | 113 |
| Switching Maximum Cooling On and Off .....        | 113 |
| Switching the Heated Rear Window On and Off ..... | 113 |
| Setting the Blower Motor Speed .....              | 113 |
| Switching the Heated Mirrors On and Off .....     | 113 |
| Setting the Temperature .....                     | 114 |
| Directing the Flow of Air .....                   | 114 |
| Auto Mode .....                                   | 115 |
| Climate Control Hints .....                       | 116 |

## Interior Air Quality

|                        |     |
|------------------------|-----|
| Auto Air Refresh ..... | 118 |
|------------------------|-----|

## Front Seats

|                                       |     |
|---------------------------------------|-----|
| Front Seat Precautions .....          | 119 |
| Sitting in the Correct Position ..... | 119 |
| Manual Seats .....                    | 120 |
| Power Seats .....                     | 120 |
| Massage Seats .....                   | 123 |
| Heated Seats .....                    | 124 |
| Front Seats Videos .....              | 125 |

## Rear Seats

|                         |     |
|-------------------------|-----|
| Manual Seats .....      | 126 |
| Rear Seats Videos ..... | 127 |

## Rear Occupant Alert System

|                                                    |     |
|----------------------------------------------------|-----|
| What is the Rear Occupant Alert System .....       | 128 |
| How Does the Rear Occupant Alert System Work ..... | 128 |
| Rear Occupant Alert System Precautions .....       | 128 |

|                                                       |     |
|-------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Rear Occupant Alert System Limitations .....          | 128 |
| Switching Rear Occupant Alert System On and Off ..... | 128 |

## Memory Function

|                                            |     |
|--------------------------------------------|-----|
| What Is the Memory Function .....          | 130 |
| Memory Function Precautions .....          | 130 |
| Locating the Memory Function Buttons ..... | 130 |
| Saving a Preset Position .....             | 130 |
| Recalling a Preset Position .....          | 131 |

## USB Ports

|                                        |     |
|----------------------------------------|-----|
| Locating the USB Ports .....           | 132 |
| Playing Media Using the USB Port ..... | 132 |
| Charging a Device .....                | 133 |

## Power Outlet

|                                  |     |
|----------------------------------|-----|
| Power Outlet Precautions .....   | 134 |
| Locating the Power Outlets ..... | 134 |

## Wireless Accessory Charger

|                                               |     |
|-----------------------------------------------|-----|
| What Is the Wireless Accessory Charger .....  | 135 |
| Wireless Accessory Charger Precautions .....  | 135 |
| Locating the Wireless Accessory Charger ..... | 135 |
| Charging a Wireless Device .....              | 136 |

## Storage

|                           |     |
|---------------------------|-----|
| Cup Holders .....         | 137 |
| Glove Compartment .....   | 137 |
| Center Console .....      | 138 |
| Under Floor Storage ..... | 139 |

## Starting and Powering Off

|                                             |     |
|---------------------------------------------|-----|
| Starting and Powering Off Precautions ..... | 140 |
| Starting the Vehicle .....                  | 140 |

# Table of Contents

---

|                                                      |     |
|------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Powering Off .....                                   | 140 |
| Accessing the Passive Key Backup<br>Position .....   | 141 |
| Starting and Powering Off –<br>Troubleshooting ..... | 141 |

## High Voltage Battery

|                                                              |     |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| What Is the High Voltage Battery .....                       | 142 |
| High Voltage Battery Precautions .....                       | 142 |
| Preserving Your High Voltage Battery<br>.....                | 142 |
| Recycling and Disposing of the High<br>Voltage Battery ..... | 144 |
| Energy Consumption Regulations .....                         | 145 |
| Energy Consumption Figures .....                             | 145 |
| High Voltage Battery – Troubleshooting<br>.....              | 146 |

## Charging Your Vehicle

|                                                    |     |
|----------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Charging Equipment Precautions .....               | 147 |
| Charging Equipment Overview .....                  | 148 |
| Charging Equipment Indicators .....                | 150 |
| Locating the Charge Port .....                     | 154 |
| Charge Port Indicators .....                       | 155 |
| AC Charging .....                                  | 156 |
| DC Charging .....                                  | 162 |
| Charge Coupler Manual Release .....                | 165 |
| Charging Settings .....                            | 166 |
| Using Your Vehicle App and Charging<br>.....       | 169 |
| Bidirectional Charging .....                       | 169 |
| Charging Equipment Identification<br>Symbols ..... | 172 |
| Charging Your Vehicle – Troubleshooting<br>.....   | 173 |
| Charging Your Vehicle Videos .....                 | 175 |

## Electric Motor

|                                       |     |
|---------------------------------------|-----|
| Electric Motor Precautions .....      | 176 |
| Selector Positions .....              | 176 |
| Shifting Your Vehicle Into Gear ..... | 177 |

|                                        |     |
|----------------------------------------|-----|
| Selector Position Indicators .....     | 178 |
| Electric Motor Audible Warnings .....  | 178 |
| Roll-Away Protection .....             | 178 |
| Electric Motor – Troubleshooting ..... | 180 |

## All-Wheel Drive

|                                         |     |
|-----------------------------------------|-----|
| How Does All-Wheel Drive Work .....     | 181 |
| All-Wheel Drive Precautions .....       | 181 |
| All-Wheel Drive Limitations .....       | 181 |
| All-Wheel Drive – Troubleshooting ..... | 181 |

## Drive Mode Control

|                                               |     |
|-----------------------------------------------|-----|
| What Is Drive Mode Control .....              | 182 |
| How Does Drive Mode Control Work<br>.....     | 182 |
| Selecting a Drive Mode .....                  | 182 |
| Drive Modes .....                             | 182 |
| Drive Mode Control – Troubleshooting<br>..... | 183 |

## Efficient Drive Mode

|                                                    |     |
|----------------------------------------------------|-----|
| What Is Efficient Drive Mode .....                 | 184 |
| How Does Efficient Drive Mode Work<br>.....        | 184 |
| Efficient Drive Mode Precautions .....             | 184 |
| Switching Efficient Drive Mode On and<br>Off ..... | 184 |
| Efficient Drive Mode Indicators .....              | 185 |

## One Pedal Drive

|                                               |     |
|-----------------------------------------------|-----|
| What is One Pedal Drive .....                 | 186 |
| One Pedal Drive Precautions .....             | 186 |
| One Pedal Drive Limitations .....             | 186 |
| Switching One Pedal Drive On and Off<br>..... | 186 |
| One Pedal Drive Indicators .....              | 187 |

## Brakes

|                                |     |
|--------------------------------|-----|
| Brake Precautions .....        | 188 |
| Anti-Lock Braking System ..... | 188 |

# Table of Contents

|                                          |     |
|------------------------------------------|-----|
| Brake Over Accelerator .....             | 188 |
| Locating the Brake Fluid Reservoir ..... | 188 |
| Checking the Brake Fluid .....           | 188 |
| Brake Fluid Specification .....          | 189 |
| Brakes – Troubleshooting .....           | 189 |

## Electric Parking Brake

|                                                                                               |     |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| What Is the Electric Parking Brake .....                                                      | 192 |
| Applying the Electric Parking Brake .....                                                     | 192 |
| Applying the Electric Parking Brake in an<br>Emergency .....                                  | 192 |
| Automatically Releasing the Electric<br>Parking Brake .....                                   | 193 |
| Electric Parking Brake Audible Warning<br>.....                                               | 193 |
| Releasing the Electric Parking Brake if<br>the Vehicle Battery Has Run Out of<br>Charge ..... | 193 |
| Electric Parking Brake – Troubleshooting<br>.....                                             | 193 |

## Reverse Brake Assist

|                                                    |     |
|----------------------------------------------------|-----|
| What Is Reverse Brake Assist .....                 | 194 |
| How Does Reverse Brake Assist Work<br>.....        | 194 |
| Reverse Brake Assist Precautions .....             | 194 |
| Switching Reverse Brake Assist On and<br>Off ..... | 195 |
| Overriding Reverse Brake Assist .....              | 195 |
| Reverse Brake Assist Indicators .....              | 195 |
| Reverse Brake Assist – Troubleshooting<br>.....    | 196 |

## Auto Hold

|                                      |     |
|--------------------------------------|-----|
| How Does Auto Hold Work .....        | 198 |
| Switching Auto Hold On and Off ..... | 198 |
| Using Auto Hold .....                | 198 |
| Auto Hold Indicators .....           | 199 |

## Traction Control

|                                      |     |
|--------------------------------------|-----|
| What Is Traction Control .....       | 200 |
| How Does Traction Control Work ..... | 200 |

|                                                |     |
|------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Switching Traction Control On and Off<br>..... | 200 |
| Traction Control Indicator .....               | 200 |
| Traction Control – Troubleshooting .....       | 200 |

## Stability Control

|                                                       |     |
|-------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| What Is Stability Control .....                       | 201 |
| How Does Stability Control Work .....                 | 201 |
| Switching Stability Control On and Off -<br>AWD ..... | 201 |
| Switching Stability Control On and Off -<br>RWD ..... | 201 |
| Stability Control Indicator .....                     | 201 |
| Stability Control – Troubleshooting .....             | 202 |

## Steering

|                                  |     |
|----------------------------------|-----|
| Electric Power Steering .....    | 203 |
| Steering – Troubleshooting ..... | 203 |

## Parking Aids

|                                        |     |
|----------------------------------------|-----|
| Parking Aid Precautions .....          | 205 |
| Switching Parking Aid On and Off ..... | 205 |
| Rear Parking Aid .....                 | 206 |
| Front Parking Aid .....                | 207 |
| Side Parking Aid .....                 | 208 |
| Parking Aid Indicators .....           | 209 |

## Rear View Camera

|                                     |     |
|-------------------------------------|-----|
| What Is the Rear View Camera .....  | 210 |
| Rear View Camera Precautions .....  | 210 |
| Locating the Rear View Camera ..... | 210 |
| Rear View Camera Guidelines .....   | 210 |
| Rear View Camera Videos .....       | 211 |

## 360 Degree Camera

|                                              |     |
|----------------------------------------------|-----|
| How Does the 360 Degree Camera Work<br>..... | 212 |
| 360 Degree Camera Precautions .....          | 212 |
| 360 Degree Camera Limitations .....          | 212 |
| 360 Degree Camera Guidelines .....           | 212 |

# Table of Contents

|                                  |     |
|----------------------------------|-----|
| 360 Degree Camera Settings ..... | 213 |
|----------------------------------|-----|

## Active Park Assist

|                                               |     |
|-----------------------------------------------|-----|
| What Is Active Park Assist .....              | 214 |
| How Does Active Park Assist Work .....        | 214 |
| Active Park Assist Precautions .....          | 214 |
| Switching Active Park Assist On and Off ..... | 214 |
| Searching for a Parking Space .....           | 214 |
| Entering a Parking Space .....                | 215 |
| Exiting a Parking Space .....                 | 216 |
| Active Park Assist With Memory Function ..... | 216 |
| Reversing Assist .....                        | 218 |

## Adaptive Cruise Control

|                                                              |     |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| How Does Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go Work ..... | 220 |
| Adaptive Cruise Control Precautions .....                    | 220 |
| Adaptive Cruise Control Limitations .....                    | 221 |
| Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On and Off .....           | 223 |
| Adaptive Cruise Control Automatic Cancellation .....         | 223 |
| Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Speed .....              | 223 |
| Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Gap .....                | 224 |
| Canceling the Set Speed .....                                | 225 |
| Resuming the Set Speed .....                                 | 225 |
| Overriding the Set Speed .....                               | 225 |
| Adaptive Cruise Control Indicators .....                     | 226 |
| Lane Centering .....                                         | 226 |
| Lane Centering – Troubleshooting .....                       | 229 |
| Predictive Speed Assist .....                                | 229 |
| Adaptive Cruise Control – Troubleshooting .....              | 232 |

## Lane Change Assist

|                                                      |     |
|------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| How Does Lane Change Assist Work .....               | 233 |
| Lane Change Assist Precautions .....                 | 233 |
| Lane Change Assist Limitations .....                 | 234 |
| Switching Lane Change Assist On and Off .....        | 234 |
| Activating and Deactivating Lane Change Assist ..... | 234 |
| Lane Change Assist Cancellation .....                | 234 |
| Lane Change Assist – Troubleshooting .....           | 235 |

## Local Hazard Information

|                                            |     |
|--------------------------------------------|-----|
| What Is Local Hazard Information .....     | 236 |
| Local Hazard Information Precautions ..... | 236 |
| Local Hazard Information Indicators .....  | 236 |
| Enabling Local Hazard Information .....    | 236 |

## Intelligent Speed Limiter

|                                                                 |     |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| What Is the Intelligent Speed Limiter .....                     | 237 |
| How Does the Intelligent Speed Limiter Work .....               | 237 |
| Intelligent Speed Limiter Precautions .....                     | 237 |
| Switching the Intelligent Speed Limiter On and Off .....        | 237 |
| Setting the Speed Limit .....                                   | 237 |
| Changing the Set Speed Limit .....                              | 238 |
| Canceling the Set Speed Limit .....                             | 238 |
| Resuming the Set Speed Limit .....                              | 238 |
| Intentionally Exceeding the Set Speed Limit .....               | 238 |
| Intelligent Speed Limiter Indicators .....                      | 239 |
| Intelligent Speed Limiter Audible Warnings .....                | 239 |
| Switching From Intelligent Speed Limiter to Speed Limiter ..... | 239 |
| Intelligent Speed Limiter – Troubleshooting .....               | 239 |

# Table of Contents

---

## Lane Keeping System

|                                                    |     |
|----------------------------------------------------|-----|
| What Is the Lane Keeping System .....              | 240 |
| How Does the Lane Keeping System Work .....        | 240 |
| Lane Keeping System Precautions .....              | 240 |
| Lane Keeping System Limitations .....              | 240 |
| Switching the Lane Keeping System On and Off ..... | 241 |
| Lane Keeping System Indicators .....               | 241 |
| Blind Spot Assist .....                            | 242 |
| Lane Keeping System – Troubleshooting .....        | 246 |

## Exit Warning

|                                         |     |
|-----------------------------------------|-----|
| What is Exit Warning .....              | 247 |
| How Does Exit Warning Work .....        | 247 |
| Exit Warning Precautions .....          | 247 |
| Exit Warning Limitations .....          | 247 |
| Exit Warning Indicators .....           | 248 |
| Switching Exit Warning On and Off ..... | 248 |
| Locating the Exit Warning Sensors ..... | 248 |
| Exit Warning – Troubleshooting .....    | 249 |

## Cross Traffic Alert

|                                                |     |
|------------------------------------------------|-----|
| What Is Cross Traffic Alert .....              | 250 |
| How Does Cross Traffic Alert Work .....        | 250 |
| Cross Traffic Alert Precautions .....          | 250 |
| Cross Traffic Alert Limitations .....          | 250 |
| Switching Cross Traffic Alert On and Off ..... | 251 |
| Locating the Cross Traffic Alert Sensors ..... | 251 |
| Cross Traffic Alert Indicators .....           | 251 |
| Cross Traffic Alert – Troubleshooting .....    | 252 |

## Pre-Collision Assist

|                                          |     |
|------------------------------------------|-----|
| What Is Pre-Collision Assist .....       | 253 |
| How Does Pre-Collision Assist Work ..... | 253 |

|                                                                   |     |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| How Does Pre-Collision Assist with Intersection Assist Work ..... | 254 |
| Pre-Collision Assist Precautions .....                            | 254 |
| Pre-Collision Assist Limitations .....                            | 255 |
| Switching Pre-Collision Assist On and Off .....                   | 256 |
| Locating the Pre-Collision Assist Sensors .....                   | 256 |
| Forward Collision Warning .....                                   | 257 |
| Evasive Steering Assist .....                                     | 257 |
| Pre-Collision Assist – Troubleshooting .....                      | 257 |

## Driver Alert

|                                         |     |
|-----------------------------------------|-----|
| What Is Driver Alert .....              | 259 |
| How Does Driver Alert Work .....        | 259 |
| Driver Alert Precautions .....          | 259 |
| Switching Driver Alert On and Off ..... | 260 |
| Driver Alert Indicators .....           | 261 |
| Driver Alert – Troubleshooting .....    | 261 |

## Traffic Sign Recognition

|                                                  |     |
|--------------------------------------------------|-----|
| What Is Traffic Sign Recognition .....           | 262 |
| How Does Traffic Sign Recognition Work .....     | 262 |
| Traffic Sign Recognition Precautions .....       | 262 |
| Traffic Sign Recognition Limitations .....       | 262 |
| Traffic Sign Recognition Indicators .....        | 263 |
| Traffic Sign Recognition Settings .....          | 263 |
| Traffic Sign Recognition – Troubleshooting ..... | 265 |

## Load Carrying

|                                 |     |
|---------------------------------|-----|
| Partitioning System .....       | 266 |
| Load Carrying Precautions ..... | 266 |
| Rear Loadspace Hatch .....      | 267 |
| Roof Rack .....                 | 268 |
| Tow Bar Mounted Carrier .....   | 269 |
| Load Carrying Videos .....      | 269 |



# Table of Contents

---

## Luggage Compartment

|                                                                 |     |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Luggage Compartment Precautions .....                           | 270 |
| Installing and Removing the Luggage Compartment Cargo Net ..... | 270 |
| Installing and Removing the Luggage Compartment Cover .....     | 270 |
| Removing and Installing the Frunk Storage Tray .....            | 271 |
| Adjusting the Luggage Compartment Load Floor .....              | 272 |
| Luggage Compartment Anchor Points .....                         | 272 |
| Luggage Compartment Videos .....                                | 273 |

## Connecting a Trailer

|                                              |     |
|----------------------------------------------|-----|
| Connecting a Trailer Precautions .....       | 274 |
| Tow Ball .....                               | 274 |
| Connecting a Trailer – Troubleshooting ..... | 276 |

## Towing a Trailer

|                                     |     |
|-------------------------------------|-----|
| Towing a Trailer Precautions .....  | 277 |
| Towing a Trailer Limitations .....  | 277 |
| Loading Your Trailer .....          | 277 |
| Trailer Towing Hints .....          | 277 |
| Towing Weights and Dimensions ..... | 278 |

## Trailer Sway Control

|                                          |     |
|------------------------------------------|-----|
| How Does Trailer Sway Control Work ..... | 280 |
| Trailer Sway Control Precautions .....   | 280 |

## Driving Hints

|                                           |     |
|-------------------------------------------|-----|
| Cold Weather Precautions .....            | 281 |
| Driving on Snow and Ice .....             | 281 |
| Breaking-In .....                         | 281 |
| Driving Through Mud and Water .....       | 281 |
| Driving on Hilly or Sloping Terrain ..... | 281 |
| Driving In Sand .....                     | 282 |
| Driving Through Shallow Water .....       | 282 |

|                        |     |
|------------------------|-----|
| Electric Vehicle ..... | 283 |
| Floor Mats .....       | 284 |

## Crash and Breakdown Information

|                                                |     |
|------------------------------------------------|-----|
| High Voltage Battery Vehicle Precautions ..... | 285 |
| Switching the Hazard Flashers On and Off ..... | 286 |
| Jump Starting the Vehicle .....                | 286 |
| Post-Crash Alert System .....                  | 288 |
| Post-Collision Braking .....                   | 288 |
| Accessing the Emergency Exit .....             | 288 |
| Recovery Towing .....                          | 289 |
| Transporting the Vehicle .....                 | 290 |

## Towing Your Vehicle

|                                       |     |
|---------------------------------------|-----|
| Towing Your Vehicle Precautions ..... | 291 |
| Emergency Towing .....                | 291 |

## Emergency Equipment

|                                  |     |
|----------------------------------|-----|
| Storing a First Aid Kit .....    | 293 |
| Storing a Warning Triangle ..... | 293 |

## Fuses

|                              |     |
|------------------------------|-----|
| Fuse Precautions .....       | 294 |
| Under Hood Fuse Box .....    | 294 |
| Interior Fuse Box .....      | 297 |
| Identifying Fuse Types ..... | 302 |

## Maintenance

|                                     |     |
|-------------------------------------|-----|
| Maintenance Precautions .....       | 303 |
| Opening and Closing the Hood .....  | 303 |
| Under Hood Overview - LHD .....     | 304 |
| Under Hood Overview - RHD .....     | 305 |
| Coolant .....                       | 306 |
| 12V Battery .....                   | 309 |
| 12V Battery – Troubleshooting ..... | 311 |
| Adjusting the Headlamps .....       | 312 |
| Interior Bulbs .....                | 312 |

# Table of Contents

---

## Vehicle Specifications

|                                                          |     |
|----------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Vehicle Dimensions .....                                 | 313 |
| Air Conditioning System Capacity and Specification ..... | 314 |

## Vehicle Care

|                                    |     |
|------------------------------------|-----|
| Cleaning the Exterior .....        | 315 |
| Cleaning the Interior .....        | 316 |
| Repairing Minor Paint Damage ..... | 318 |
| Waxing Your Vehicle .....          | 319 |

## Storing Your Vehicle

|                                          |     |
|------------------------------------------|-----|
| Preparing Your Vehicle for Storage ..... | 320 |
| Removing Your Vehicle From Storage ..... | 321 |

## Wheel and Tire Information

|                                        |     |
|----------------------------------------|-----|
| Locating the Tire label .....          | 322 |
| Information on the Tire Sidewall ..... | 322 |
| Glossary of Tire Terminology .....     | 325 |
| Tire Replacement Requirements .....    | 326 |
| Using Summer Tires .....               | 327 |
| Using Winter Tires .....               | 327 |
| Using Snow Chains .....                | 327 |

## Tire Care

|                                      |     |
|--------------------------------------|-----|
| Checking the Tire Pressures .....    | 329 |
| Inflating the Tires .....            | 329 |
| Tire Pressure Specifications .....   | 329 |
| Inspecting the Tire for Damage ..... | 331 |
| Tire Rotation .....                  | 331 |

## Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit

|                                                                               |     |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| What Is the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit .....                               | 333 |
| Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit Precautions .....                               | 333 |
| Locating the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit .....                              | 333 |
| Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit Components - Vehicles Built From: 05/2026 ..... | 334 |

|                                                                                |     |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit Components - Vehicles Built Up To: 04/2026 ..... | 334 |
| Using the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit - Vehicles Built From: 05/2026 .....   | 335 |
| Using the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit - Vehicles Built Up To: 04/2026 .....  | 338 |

## Tire Pressure Monitoring System

|                                                         |     |
|---------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| What Is the Tire Pressure Monitoring System .....       | 343 |
| Tire Pressure Monitoring System Precautions .....       | 343 |
| Tire Pressure Monitoring System Limitations .....       | 343 |
| Resetting Tire Pressure Monitoring System .....         | 344 |
| Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Troubleshooting ..... | 344 |

## Changing a Road Wheel

|                            |     |
|----------------------------|-----|
| Changing a Flat Tire ..... | 347 |
| Wheel Bolts .....          | 348 |

## Vehicle Identification

|                                     |     |
|-------------------------------------|-----|
| Vehicle Identification Number ..... | 350 |
| Vehicle Identification Plate .....  | 351 |

## Connected Vehicle

|                                                  |     |
|--------------------------------------------------|-----|
| What Is a Connected Vehicle .....                | 352 |
| Connected Vehicle Requirements .....             | 352 |
| Connected Vehicle Limitations .....              | 352 |
| Connecting the Vehicle to a Mobile Network ..... | 352 |
| Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Network .....  | 353 |
| Connected Vehicle – Troubleshooting .....        | 353 |

## Audio System

|                                  |     |
|----------------------------------|-----|
| Audio System Precautions .....   | 355 |
| Identifying the Audio Unit ..... | 355 |

# Table of Contents

---

|                                           |     |
|-------------------------------------------|-----|
| Switching the Audio Unit On and Off ..... | 355 |
| Selecting the Audio Source .....          | 355 |
| Playing or Pausing the Audio Source ..... | 356 |
| Adjusting the Volume .....                | 356 |
| Switching Shuffle Mode On and Off .....   | 356 |
| Switching Repeat Mode On and Off .....    | 357 |
| Adding Favorites .....                    | 357 |
| Muting the Audio .....                    | 357 |
| Scrolling Through Menu Items .....        | 357 |
| Selecting a Menu Item .....               | 357 |
| Setting the Clock and Date .....          | 357 |
| Radio .....                               | 358 |
| Switching the Display On and Off .....    | 358 |

## Movable Screen

|                                |     |
|--------------------------------|-----|
| Using the Movable Screen ..... | 359 |
| Movable Screen Videos .....    | 359 |

## Center Display Overview

|                                                |     |
|------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Center Display Precautions .....               | 360 |
| Center Display Limitations .....               | 360 |
| Status Bar .....                               | 360 |
| Home Screen .....                              | 360 |
| Locking and Unlocking the Center Display ..... | 361 |
| Rebooting the Center Display .....             | 361 |

## Voice Interaction

|                                     |     |
|-------------------------------------|-----|
| What is Voice Interaction .....     | 362 |
| Beginning a Voice Interaction ..... | 362 |
| Canceling a Voice Interaction ..... | 363 |
| Voice Interaction Examples .....    | 363 |
| Voice Interaction Settings .....    | 363 |

## Phone

|                         |     |
|-------------------------|-----|
| Phone Precautions ..... | 364 |
|-------------------------|-----|

|                                                      |     |
|------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Connecting Your Phone .....                          | 364 |
| Phone Menu .....                                     | 364 |
| Making and Receiving a Phone Call .....              | 365 |
| Switching Text Message Notification On and Off ..... | 366 |
| Switching Apple CarPlay On and Off .....             | 366 |
| Switching Android Auto™ On and Off .....             | 366 |

## Bluetooth®

|                                      |     |
|--------------------------------------|-----|
| Connecting a Bluetooth® Device ..... | 368 |
| Playing Media Using Bluetooth® ..... | 368 |

## Apps

|                        |     |
|------------------------|-----|
| App Requirements ..... | 369 |
|------------------------|-----|

## Personal Profiles

|                                     |     |
|-------------------------------------|-----|
| How Do Personal Profiles Work ..... | 370 |
| Selecting a Personal Profile .....  | 370 |
| Deleting a Personal Profile .....   | 370 |

## Navigation

|                              |     |
|------------------------------|-----|
| Navigation .....             | 371 |
| Accessing Navigation .....   | 371 |
| Navigation Map Updates ..... | 371 |
| Adjusting the Map .....      | 371 |
| Setting a Destination .....  | 372 |
| Waypoints .....              | 374 |
| Route Guidance .....         | 374 |

## Vehicle Software Updates

|                                |     |
|--------------------------------|-----|
| Vehicle Software Updates ..... | 376 |
|--------------------------------|-----|

## Vehicle System Reset

|                                 |     |
|---------------------------------|-----|
| Performing a System Reset ..... | 377 |
|---------------------------------|-----|

# Table of Contents

---

## **Your Authorized Dealer - Turkey**

|                                            |     |
|--------------------------------------------|-----|
| Authorized Dealer Directory - Turkey ..... | 378 |
|--------------------------------------------|-----|

## **Service Intervals - Turkey**

|                                  |     |
|----------------------------------|-----|
| Service Intervals - Turkey ..... | 384 |
|----------------------------------|-----|

## **Customer Information**

|                                                      |     |
|------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Rollover Warning .....                               | 385 |
| Third Party Software Copyright Acknowledgment .....  | 385 |
| Battery Performance and Durability Information ..... | 385 |
| REACH .....                                          | 386 |
| Radio Frequency Certification Labels .....           | 387 |
| Replacement Parts Recommendation .....               | 387 |
| Mobile Communications Equipment .....                | 387 |
| eCall User Information .....                         | 388 |

## **Appendices**

|                                     |     |
|-------------------------------------|-----|
| Electromagnetic Compatibility ..... | 392 |
|-------------------------------------|-----|

# Introduction

## ABOUT THIS PUBLICATION



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.



**WARNING:** You risk death, fire, or serious injury to yourself and others if you do not follow the instruction highlighted by the warning symbol.

Thank you for choosing Ford. We recommend that you take some time to get to know your vehicle in order to benefit from greater safety and pleasure from driving it. Use this publication, whether in-vehicle center display screen, print, in Ford app or online, to familiarize yourself with the features on your vehicle.

**Note:** Use and operate your vehicle in line with all applicable laws and regulations.

**Note:** Pass on all printed owner's information when selling this vehicle.

## Features and Options

This publication describes product features and options available throughout the range of available models, sometimes even before they are generally available. It could describe options that are not available on the vehicle you have purchased.

## Providing Feedback

If you would like to provide feedback to the Owner's Manual team, please email us at [OWNERMANUALFEEDBACK@ford.com](mailto:OWNERMANUALFEEDBACK@ford.com).

You will not receive a direct email response. Your submission will be investigated and necessary changes will be made to the Owner's Manual content.

To help investigate your submission, please include the following information:

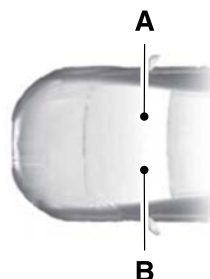
- Your vehicle model
- The country in which your vehicle was purchased
- The Owner's Manual section needing investigation

## Illustrations

**Note:** Some of the illustrations in this publication could show features as used in different models, so could appear different to you on your vehicle.

## Location of Components

This manual may qualify the location of a component as left-hand side or right-hand side. The side is determined when facing forward in the seat.



- A Right-hand side.  
B Left-hand side.

# Introduction

## Accessing the Digital Owner's Manual

The online version of the Owner's Manual may contain the very latest information, which may vary slightly from the in-vehicle digital Owner's Manual originally provided with your vehicle.

1.  Press this icon on the touchscreen.
2.  Press the Owner's Manual application icon.

**Note:** We strongly recommend updating the vehicle software so that the digital Owner's Manual is the latest version.

## Accessing the Digital Service Portfolio

The in-vehicle digital Service Portfolio contains information about the Warranty applicable to your vehicle. It also contains the service intervals, the body and paint check intervals applicable to your vehicle and contact information to help you if you need assistance.

1.  Press this icon on the touchscreen.
2.  Press the Service Portfolio application icon.

## Accessing the Online Owner's Manual and Service Portfolio

- Through your device's app store, you can download the Ford app.
- You can visit the local Ford Website.

**Note:** To find the local Ford website, visit <https://corporate.ford.com/operations/locations/global-links.html>.

**Note:** We strongly recommend downloading a copy of the Owner's Manual and having it with you whenever you drive, and to view the information if you are unable to be inside the vehicle.

## Printed Materials

In U.S. and Canada, visit <https://www.helminc.com> or see an authorized dealer.

In Europe, visit <https://www.z-order.eu> or see an authorized dealer.

For all other countries, see your authorized dealer.

## USING THIS PUBLICATION

To quickly locate information about your vehicle, use the word search within the Owner's Manual application.

## WARNINGS AND NOTES USED IN THIS PUBLICATION

### Warnings Used in This Publication

We include warnings in this publication to make you aware of possible danger. You can keep yourself and others safe if you follow the instructions highlighted by the warning symbol.

### Notes Used in This Publication

We include notes to give you more information to those instructions that require further explanation.

## SPECIAL NOTICES - TURKEY

### Consumer\* Information

\*Consumer: Real or legal person acting for commercial or non-occupational purposes. If a driver drives his vehicle for commercial or occupational purposes, whether on full-time or part-time basis, he may not be evaluated as a "Consumer" under the legislation.

In the event a vehicle is purchased subject to Consumer Warranty terms but driven for commercial or occupational purposes thereafter or if purchased subject to Commercial Warranty Terms and then driven out of commercial or occupational purposes, COMMERCIAL WARRANTY TERMS shall apply under general statutory provisions. This shall bind Driver and other persons who take over such vehicle. Please see Ford Warranty Terms for detailed information.

Optional rights granted to consumers pursuant to Consumer Protection Law no. 6502 and Regulation for Introductory and Owner Manuals published at the Official Gazette dated 13.06.2014 and no. 29029 and information related to authorities to which consumers may file complaints and objections are as follows:

#### I. Optional Rights of Consumers

1) If merchandise is understood to be defective consumer may exercise one of following rights;

a) Reneging on contract by notifying that he is ready to return sold item,

b) Retaining sold item and asking discount from sales price pro rata to defect,

c) In case excessive expense is not required, asking free of charge repair of sold item, all expenses at seller's account,

d) If possible, asking replacement of sold item with an equivalent free of defects,

you can use one of these rights. Seller shall be liable to fulfill such request preferred by consumer.

2) Rights of free of charge repair or replacement of merchandise with an equivalent free of defects may also be exercised against manufacturer or importer. Seller, manufacturer and importer shall be severally liable for fulfillment of rights set out in this clause. Manufacturer or importer shall not be held liable if they prove that defect has arisen after merchandise is placed on the market by them.

3) If free of charge repair or replacement of merchandise with an equivalent free of defects would bring along disproportional inconvenience for seller, consumer may exercise one of rights of reneging on contract or discount from price pro rata to defect. During determination of disproportionality, matters such as value of merchandise free of defects, importance of defect and whether resorting to other optional rights would create any problems for consumer shall be considered.

4) In the event either right of free of charge repair or replacement of merchandise with an equivalent free of defects is chosen, such request must be fulfilled within maximum thirty business days from notification of this request to seller, manufacturer or importer. However, concerning merchandise included at the list attachment of regulation issued as per article 58 of Consumer Protection Law no. 6502, consumer's request for free of charge repair shall be fulfilled within maximum repair period set out at the regulation. Otherwise, consumer shall be free to exercise other optional rights.

5) In cases consumer chooses right of reneging on contract or discount from price pro rata to defect, full price paid or amount of discount from price shall be promptly refunded to consumer.

# Introduction

---

6) Any expenses incurred because of exercising optional rights shall be covered by the party fulfilling the right chosen by consumer. Consumer, along with one of such optional rights, may also claim compensation as per provisions of Turkish Code of Obligations dated 11/01/2011 and no. 6098.

## **II. Consumer Complaints and Objections**

Consumers may file applications regarding complaints and objections to consumer courts and consumer arbitration committees in accordance with arrangements provided at Consumer Protection Law no. 6502.

## **Manufacturer or Importer**

Ford Otomotiv Sanayi A.S.  
Akpınar Mah. Hasan Basri Cad. No: 2  
34885 Sancaktepe/Istanbul  
Trade Registration No: 73232 - Istanbul  
Tel: 0.216 564 71 00  
Fax: 0.216 564 73 85  
[www.fordotosan.com.tr](http://www.fordotosan.com.tr)  
[www.ford.com.tr](http://www.ford.com.tr)

## **Service Life**

The service life of this vehicle is 10 years.



# Symbols Glossary

## SYMBOLS USED ON YOUR INSTRUMENT CLUSTER

Depending on your vehicle options, market, and instrument cluster type, not all symbols shown are available.

### Lighting and Signaling



High beams. See **Using the High Beam Headlamps** (page 82).



Auto high beams. See **Automatic High Beam Control Indicators** (page 87). See **Glare Free High Beam Control Indicators** (page 90).



Lamps off. See **Headlamp Indicators** (page 83).



Rear fog lamps. See **Using the Rear Fog Lamps** (page 85).



Front fog lamps. See **Using All Weather Lamps** (page 85).



Hazard warning. See **Switching the Hazard Flashers On and Off** (page 286).



Turn signal - right. See **Using the Turn Signal Lamps** (page 84). See **Switching the Hazard Flashers On and Off** (page 286).



Turn signal - left. See **Using the Turn Signal Lamps** (page 84). See **Switching the Hazard Flashers On and Off** (page 286).



Positioning/side lights. See **Headlamp Indicators** (page 83).



Exterior bulb failure. See **Headlamp Indicators** (page 83).

## Brakes



Brake failure. See **Brakes – Warning Lamps** (page 189). See **Electric Parking Brake – Warning Lamps** (page 193).



Brake failure. See **Brakes – Warning Lamps** (page 189).



Parking brake. See **Electric Parking Brake – Warning Lamps** (page 193).



Anti-lock brake system malfunction. See **Brakes – Warning Lamps** (page 189).



Automatic brake hold. See **Auto Hold Indicators** (page 199).



Brake pad wear. See **Brakes – Information Messages** (page 190).

## Visibility



Windshield washer fluid level. See **Wipers and Washers – Warning Lamps** (page 80).



Windshield washer fault. See **Wipers and Washers – Warning Lamps** (page 80).

## Load Management



Tow ball arm fault. See **Connecting a Trailer – Warning Lamps** (page 276).

## Electric motor



Coolant temperature. See **Coolant – Warning Lamps** (page 308).



Eco mode. See **Eco** (page 182).

# Symbols Glossary

## Transmission



Powertrain fault. See **High Voltage Battery – Warning Lamps** (page 146).

## Vehicle Handling



Selectable drive mode - normal. See **Normal** (page 182).



Selectable drive mode - ECO. See **Eco** (page 182).



Selectable drive mode - sport. See **Sport** (page 182).



Selectable drive mode - traction. See **Traction** (page 182).



Selectable drive mode - individual. See **Individual** (page 182).



Steering system fault. See **Steering – Warning Lamps** (page 203).

## Driver Assistance



Adaptive cruise control. See **Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On and Off** (page 223).

See **Adaptive Cruise Control Indicators** (page 226).



Adaptive cruise control. See **Adaptive Cruise Control Indicators** (page 226).



Adaptive cruise control failure. See **Adaptive Cruise Control – Warning Lamps** (page 232).



Speed limiter. See **Switching the Intelligent Speed Limiter On and Off** (page 237). See **Intelligent Speed Limiter Indicators** (page 239).



Lane centering assist. See **Switching Lane Centering On and Off** (page 227). See **Lane Centering Indicators** (page 229).



One pedal drive. See **One Pedal Drive Indicators** (page 187).



One pedal drive. See **One Pedal Drive Indicators** (page 187).



Lane keeping aid. See **Lane Keeping System Indicators** (page 241).



Lane keeping aid malfunction. See **Lane Keeping System – Information Messages** (page 246).



Hands on wheel. See **How Does Driver State Assist Work** (page 46).



Efficient drive mode. See **How Does Efficient Drive Mode Work** (page 184).

Take your foot off the accelerator. See **Efficient Drive Mode Indicators** (page 185).



Vehicle ahead. See **Efficient Drive Mode Indicators** (page 185).



Junction ahead. See **Efficient Drive Mode Indicators** (page 185). See **Predictive Speed Assist Indicators** (page 231).



Highway exit ahead. See **Efficient Drive Mode Indicators** (page 185). See **Predictive Speed Assist Indicators** (page 231).

# Symbols Glossary



Roundabout ahead. See **Efficient Drive Mode Indicators** (page 185). See

**Predictive Speed Assist Indicators** (page 231).



Bend to the left ahead. See **Efficient Drive Mode Indicators** (page 185). See

**Predictive Speed Assist Indicators** (page 231).



Bend to the right ahead. See **Efficient Drive Mode Indicators** (page 185). See

**Predictive Speed Assist Indicators** (page 231).



Curve. See **Predictive Speed Assist Indicators** (page 231).



Slope ahead. See **Efficient Drive Mode Indicators** (page 185).



Speed limit ahead. See **Efficient Drive Mode Indicators** (page 185). See **Predictive Speed Assist Indicators** (page 231). See **Traffic Sign Recognition Indicators** (page 263).



End of speed limit. See **Predictive Speed Assist Indicators** (page 231).



Traffic sign recognition. See **Traffic Sign Recognition Indicators** (page 263).



Stop sign recognition. See **Predictive Speed Assist Indicators** (page 231).



Traffic light recognition. See **Predictive Speed Assist Indicators** (page 231).



Broken down vehicle. See **Local Hazard Information Indicators** (page 236).



Accident. See **Local Hazard Information Indicators** (page 236).



Slippery road. See **Local Hazard Information Indicators** (page 236).

## Safety



Seatbelt. See **Seatbelt Reminder Indicators** (page 40).



Airbag. See **Airbags – Warning Lamps** (page 44).



Stability control system active or not available. See **Traction Control Indicator** (page 200). See **Stability Control Indicator** (page 201).



Stability control system off. See **Switching Stability Control On and Off** (page 201). See **Switching Stability Control On and Off** (page 201). See **Traction Control – Warning Lamps** (page 200).



Tire failure/Low tire pressure. See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Warning Lamps** (page 344).



Pre-collision assist system warning. See **Pre-Collision Assist – Warning Lamps** (page 257).



Pre-collision assist system disabled. See **Pre-Collision Assist – Warning Lamps** (page 257).

# Symbols Glossary



Pre-collision system unavailable. See **Pre-Collision Assist – Warning Lamps** (page 257).



Pre-collision assist system off. See **Pre-Collision Assist – Warning Lamps** (page 257).



Reverse brake assist. See **Reverse Brake Assist Indicators** (page 195). See

**Adaptive Cruise Control – Warning Lamps** (page 232).



Blind spot information system. See **Blind Spot Assist Indicators** (page 244). See **Exit Warning Indicators** (page 248).



Cross traffic alert. See **What Is Cross Traffic Alert** (page 250).



Icy road conditions. See **Cold Weather Precautions** (page 281). See **Driving on Snow and Ice** (page 281).



Driver alert system off or unavailable. See **Driver Alert Indicators** (page 261).



Driver alert system off or unavailable. See **Driver Alert Indicators** (page 261).



Door(s) ajar. See **Doors and Locks – Warning Lamps** (page 57).



Driver state assist. See **How Does Driver State Assist Work** (page 46). See **Driver State Assist – Warning Lamps** (page 47).



Health risk. See **Opening and Closing the Windows** (page 96).



Safety alert.

## Security



Liftgate release/ajar. See **Liftgate – Warning Lamps** (page 65). See **Liftgate – Warning Lamps** (page 68).

## Electrical Systems



Battery charge level. See **12V Battery – Warning Lamps** (page 311).



Propulsion battery charging. See **High Voltage Battery Gauge** (page 103).



External cord connected. See **Charging Your Vehicle – Warning Lamps** (page 173).



Electric system failure. See **Coolant – Warning Lamps** (page 308). See **Emergency Towing** (page 291).



Limited performance mode. See **Electric Motor Precautions** (page 176).



Ready to drive. See **Starting the Vehicle** (page 140).

# Data Privacy



**WARNING:** Do not connect wireless plug-in devices to the data link connector. Unauthorized third parties could gain access to vehicle data and impair the performance of safety related systems. Only allow repair facilities that follow our service and repair instructions to connect their equipment to the data link connector.

We respect your privacy and are committed to protecting it. The information contained in this publication was correct at the time of release, but as technology rapidly changes, we recommend that you visit the local Ford website for the latest information.

Your vehicle has electronic control units that have data recording functionality and the ability to permanently or temporarily store data. This data could include information on the condition and status of your vehicle, vehicle maintenance requirements, events and malfunctions. The types of data that can be recorded are described in this section. Some of the data recorded is stored in event logs or error logs.

**Note:** *Error logs are reset following a service or repair.*

**Note:** *We may provide information in response to requests from law enforcement, other government authorities and third parties acting with lawful authority or through a legal process. Such information could be used by them in legal proceedings.*

Data recorded includes, for example:

- For vehicles equipped with a driver facing camera, driver engagement including eye and head position processed by the camera.
- Operating states of system components, for example battery charge level and tire pressure.

- Vehicle and component status, for example wheel speed, deceleration, lateral acceleration and seatbelt status.
- Events or errors in essential systems, for example headlamps and brakes.
- System responses to driving situations, for example airbag deployment and stability control.
- Environmental conditions, for example temperature.

Some of this data, when used in combination with other information, for example an accident report, damage to a vehicle or eyewitness statements, could be associated with a specific person.

## Services That We Provide

If you use our services, we collect and use data, for example account information, vehicle location and driving characteristics, that could identify you. We transmit this data through a dedicated, protected connection. We only collect and use data to enable your use of our services to which you have subscribed, with your consent or where permitted by law. For additional information, see the terms and conditions of the services to which you have subscribed.

For additional information about our privacy policy, refer to the local Ford website.

## Services That Third Parties Provide

We recommend that you review the terms and conditions and data privacy information for any services equipped with your vehicle or to which you subscribe. We take no responsibility for services that third parties provide.

# Data Privacy

---

## SERVICE DATA

Our dealers collect service data through the data link connector in your vehicle. They use service data, for example error logs, to help them if you take your vehicle for repair. They share this data with our technical team, if required, to help with diagnosis. In addition to using the information for diagnosis and repair, we use and share service data with our service providers, for example parts suppliers, where required and where permitted by law, for continuous improvement or with other information that we have about you, for example your contact information, to offer you products and services that may be of interest to you according to your preferences and where allowed by law. Our service providers are equally required by law to protect your data and retain it in accordance with data retention policies.

**Note:** *Third party repair facilities can also collect service data through the data link connector.*

## EVENT DATA

European regulations mandate this vehicle to be equipped with an Event Data Recorder. The main purpose of an event data recorder is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an airbag deployment or hitting a road obstacle; this data will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The event data recorder is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 5 seconds or less.

The event data recorder in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating.
- Whether or not the occupant seatbelts were buckled/fastened.
- How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or the brake pedal.
- How fast the vehicle was traveling.
- Where the driver was positioning the steering wheel.

This data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

**Note:** *Event data recorder data is recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data is recorded by the event data recorder under normal driving conditions and no personal data or information (for example name, gender, age, and crash location) is recorded. However, parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the event data recorder data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.*

To read data recorded by an event data recorder, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the event data recorder is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have such special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the event data recorder.

## SETTINGS DATA

Your vehicle has electronic control units that have the ability to store data based on your personalized settings. The data is stored locally in the vehicle or on devices that you connect to it, for example, a USB drive or digital music player. You can delete some of this data and also choose whether to share it through the services to which you subscribe.

### Comfort and Convenience Data

Data recorded includes, for example:

- Seat and steering wheel position.
- Climate control settings.
- Radio presets.

### Entertainment Data

Data recorded includes, for example:

- Music, videos or album art.
- Contacts and corresponding address book entries.
- Navigation destinations.

## CONNECTED VEHICLE DATA



The modem has a SIM. The modem was enabled when your vehicle was built and periodically sends messages to stay connected to the cell phone network. Subject to your consent, the vehicle may send vehicle, driving and location data. These messages could include information that identifies your vehicle, the SIM and the electronic serial number of the modem. Cell phone network service providers could have access to additional information, for example cell phone network tower identification. For additional information about our privacy policy, visit [www.FordConnected.com](http://www.FordConnected.com) or refer to your local Ford website.

**Note:** The modem continues to send information unless you disable the modem or stop the modem from sharing data by changing the modem settings. See **Connected Vehicle** (page 352).

**Note:** The service can be unavailable or interrupted for a number of reasons, for example environmental or topographical conditions and data plan coverage.

**Note:** To find out if your vehicle has a modem, visit [www.FordConnected.com](http://www.FordConnected.com).

## MOBILE DEVICE DATA

If you connect a mobile device to your vehicle, you can display data from your device on the touchscreen for example, music and album art. You can share your vehicle data with mobile apps on your device through the system. See **App Requirements** (page 369).

If you connect a cell phone to the system, the system creates a profile that links to that cell phone. The cell phone profile enables more mobile features and efficient operation. The profile contains, for example data from your phonebook, read and unread text messages and call history, including history of calls when your cell phone was not connected to the system.

If you connect a media device, the system creates and retains a media device index of supported media content.

The cell phone profile and media device index remain in your vehicle unless you delete them and are generally accessible only in your vehicle when you connect your cell phone or media device. If you no longer plan to use the system or your vehicle, we recommend you use the system reset function to erase the stored information. See **Performing a System Reset** (page 377).

For additional information about our privacy policy, refer to the local Ford website.

## EMERGENCY CALL SYSTEM DATA

When the emergency call system is active, it may disclose to emergency services that your vehicle has been in a crash involving the deployment of an airbag or activation of the battery shut-off or that a system intervention by the Driver State Assist has been executed. See **Driver State Assist** (page 46). Certain versions or updates to the emergency call system may also be capable of electronically or verbally disclosing to emergency services operators your vehicle location or other details about your vehicle or crash to assist emergency services operators to provide the most appropriate emergency services. If you do not want to disclose this information, do not activate the emergency call system.

Examples of data that the system could transmit are:

- Vehicle identification number.
- Vehicle propulsion storage type.
- Current time.
- Vehicle location and direction.
- Accident direction.
- Change in velocity of the vehicle.
- Whether the call was automatically or manually initiated.
- Vehicle category.
- Number of occupants in the vehicle.

**Note:** *You cannot deactivate emergency call systems that are required by law.*



# Environment

## PROTECTING THE ENVIRONMENT

Sustainability is a priority at Ford. We are constantly looking for ways to reduce our impact on the planet while providing customers with great products and delivering a strong business. You should play your part in protecting the environment. Correct vehicle usage and the authorized disposal of waste, cleaning and lubrication materials are significant steps toward this aim.

For additional information about our sustainability progress and initiatives, visit [www.sustainability.ford.com](http://www.sustainability.ford.com).

## RECYCLING AND DISPOSING LABELS

### France Only



A déposer dans le réseau Ford agréé ou via le site [www.valorauto.com](http://www.valorauto.com).

Vous trouvez les informations sur le recyclage de votre Véhicule devenu Hors d'Usage via notre site:  
Recyclage de votre voiture Ford : Comment ça marche ? | Ford FR.

## RECYCLING AND DISPOSING OF BATTERIES



Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way. Seek advice from your local authority about recycling old batteries.

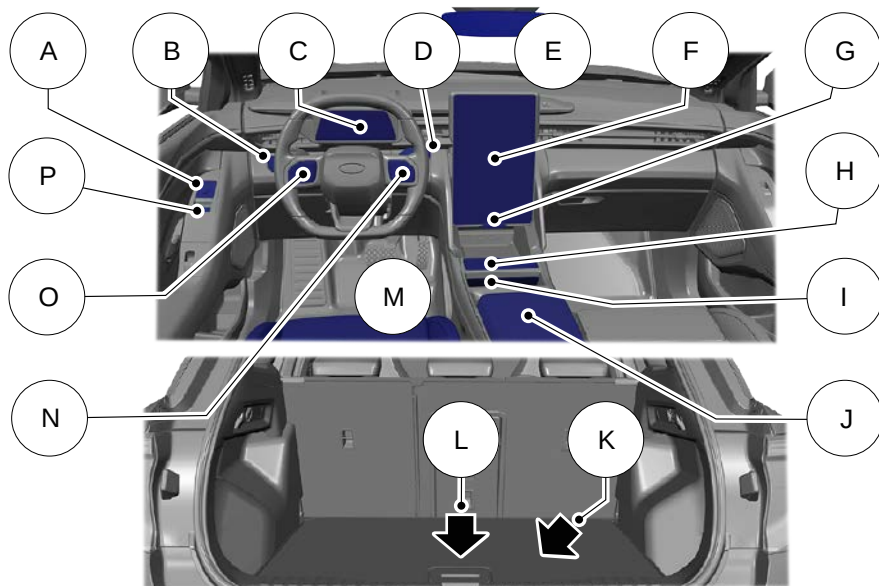
Batteries contain toxic metals such as cadmium, mercury and lead along with other hazardous materials like lithium, posing a significant environmental hazard if not disposed of properly.

### Chemical symbols of metals concerned

|        |              |
|--------|--------------|
| Cd     | Cadmium.     |
| Pb     | Lead.        |
| Li     | Lithium.     |
| Li-Ion | Lithium-Ion. |

# Visual Search

## INTERIOR OVERVIEW - LHD

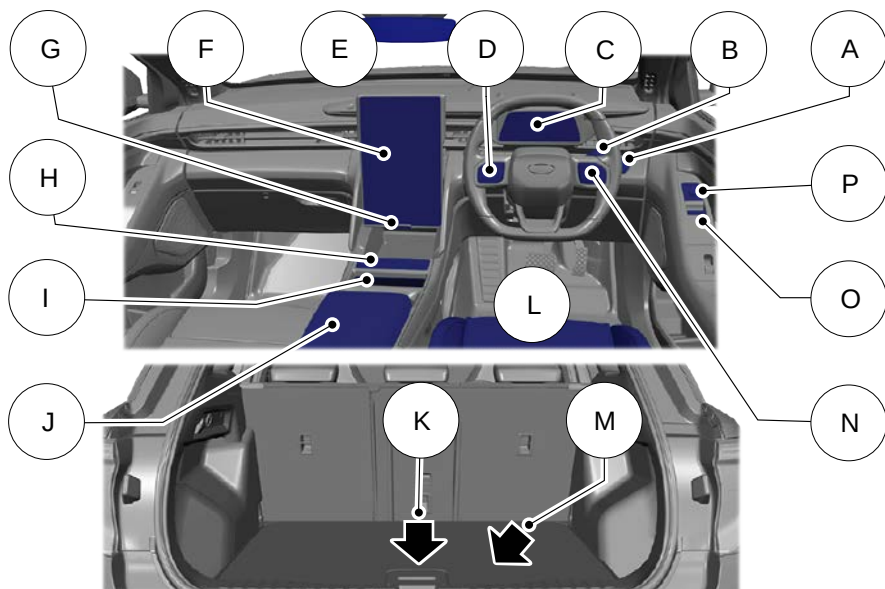


- A See **Adjusting the Exterior Mirrors** (page 100).
- B See **Exterior Lighting Control** (page 82).
- C See **Instrument Cluster Overview** (page 102).
- D See **Shifting Your Vehicle Into Gear** (page 177).
- E See **How Does Driver Alert Work** (page 259).
- F See **Center Display Precautions** (page 360).
- G See **Using the Movable Screen** (page 359).
- H See **Switching Active Park Assist On and Off** (page 214).
- I See **Charging a Wireless Device** (page 136).
- J See **Adjusting the Center Console** (page 138).
- K See **Charging Equipment Precautions** (page 147).
- L See **Adjusting the Luggage Compartment Load Floor** (page 272).

# Visual Search

- M See **Front Seat Precautions** (page 119).
- N See **Using the Instrument Cluster Display Controls** (page 105).
- O See **Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On and Off** (page 223).
- P See **Opening and Closing the Windows** (page 96).

## INTERIOR OVERVIEW - RHD

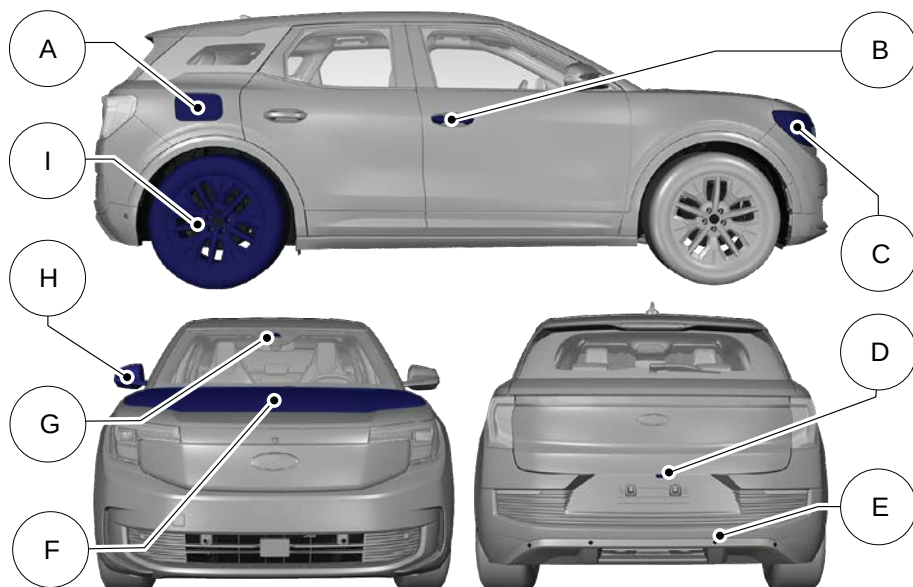


- A See **Exterior Lighting Control** (page 82).
- B See **Shifting Your Vehicle Into Gear** (page 177).
- C See **Instrument Cluster Overview** (page 102).
- D See **Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On and Off** (page 223).
- E See **How Does Driver Alert Work** (page 259).
- F See **Center Display Precautions** (page 360).
- G See **Using the Movable Screen** (page 359).

# Visual Search

- H See **Switching Active Park Assist On and Off** (page 214).
- I See **Charging a Wireless Device** (page 136).
- J See **Adjusting the Center Console** (page 138).
- K See **Adjusting the Luggage Compartment Load Floor** (page 272).
- L See **Charging Equipment Precautions** (page 147).
- M See **Front Seat Precautions** (page 119).
- N See **Using the Instrument Cluster Display Controls** (page 105).
- O See **Opening and Closing the Windows** (page 96).
- P See **Adjusting the Exterior Mirrors** (page 100).

## EXTERIOR OVERVIEW



# Visual Search

---

- A See **Charging Equipment Precautions** (page 147).
- B See **Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Remote Control** (page 54).
- C See **Exterior Lighting Control** (page 82).
- D See **Rear View Camera Guidelines** (page 210).
- E See **Parking Aid Precautions** (page 205).
- F See **Using the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit** (page 338).
- G See **What Is Pre-Collision Assist** (page 253).
- H See **Adjusting the Exterior Mirrors** (page 100).
- I See **Tire Pressure Specifications** (page 329).

# Child Safety

## CHILD SAFETY PRECAUTIONS



Only child restraints certified to ECE-R129 or ECE-R44.03 (or later) have been tested and approved for use in your vehicle.

**Note:** *Mandatory use of child restraints varies from country to country.*

**WARNING:** Extreme Hazard! Never use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an active airbag in front of it. Death or serious injury to the child can occur.

**WARNING:** The passenger airbag must be deactivated when using a rearward facing child restraint on the front seat.

**WARNING:** Following the removal of the child restraint, you must check the activation of the passenger airbag.

**WARNING:** Do not modify child restraints in any way.

**WARNING:** Do not hold a child on your lap when your vehicle is moving.

**WARNING:** Do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** If your vehicle has been involved in a crash, have the child restraints checked.

**WARNING:** Do not put the shoulder section of the seatbelt or allow the child to put the shoulder section of the seatbelt under their arm or behind their back. Failure to follow this instruction could reduce the effectiveness of the seatbelt and increase the risk of injury or death in a crash.

**WARNING:** Do not use pillows, books or towels to boost your child's height. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** You must reinstall the head restraint following the removal of the child restraint.

**WARNING:** Always make sure your child is secured properly in a device that is appropriate for their height, age and weight. Child safety restraints must be bought separately from your vehicle. Failure to follow these instructions and guidelines may result in an increased risk of serious injury or death to your child.

# Child Safety



**WARNING:** If you use a child restraint and a seatbelt, make sure that the seatbelt is not slack or twisted.



**WARNING:** Do not install a booster seat or a booster cushion with only the lap strap of the seatbelt.



**WARNING:** Do not install a booster seat or a booster cushion with a seatbelt that is slack or twisted.



**WARNING:** Make sure that your children sit in an upright position.

## CHILD RESTRAINT ANCHOR POINTS

### WHAT ARE THE CHILD RESTRAINT ANCHOR POINTS

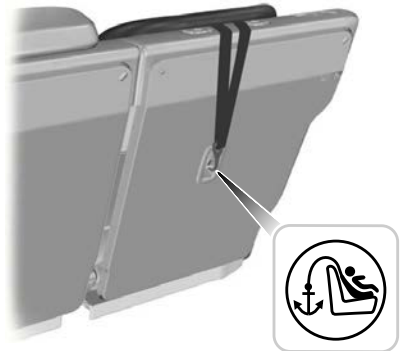
Anchor points are designed to allow you to quickly and safely install a child restraint.

### LOCATING THE CHILD RESTRAINT LOWER ANCHOR POINTS



Lower anchor points are on the rear outermost seats.

### LOCATING THE CHILD RESTRAINT TOP TETHER ANCHOR POINTS



Top tether anchor points are on the back of the rear seat.

# Child Safety

## CHILD RESTRAINTS

### CHILD RESTRAINT POSITION INFORMATION

| Seating Positions                             | Mass Group Categories |                      |                       |                        |                        |
|-----------------------------------------------|-----------------------|----------------------|-----------------------|------------------------|------------------------|
|                                               | 0                     | 0+                   | 1                     | 2                      | 3                      |
|                                               | 0–10 kg<br>(0–22 lb)  | 0–13 kg<br>(0–29 lb) | 9–18 kg<br>(20–40 lb) | 15–25 kg<br>(33–55 lb) | 22–36 kg<br>(49–79 lb) |
| Front passenger seat with airbag <b>ON</b> .  | X                     | X                    | UF <sup>1</sup>       | UF <sup>1</sup>        | UF <sup>1</sup>        |
| Front passenger seat with airbag <b>OFF</b> . | U <sup>1</sup>        | U <sup>1</sup>       | U <sup>1</sup>        | U <sup>1</sup>         | U <sup>1</sup>         |
| Rear seats. <sup>2</sup>                      | U                     | U                    | U                     | U                      | U                      |

<sup>1</sup> We recommend that you secure children in a government approved child restraint, on the rear seat.

<sup>2</sup> Do not use a child restraint with a support leg on the rear center seat unless stated as suitable in the child restraint manufacturer's product information.

**X** Not suitable for children in this mass group.

**U** Suitable for universal category child restraints approved for use in this mass group.

**UF** Suitable for universal category forward facing child restraints approved for use in this mass group.

**Note:** If it proves difficult to tighten the lap section of the seatbelt without slack remaining, adjust the seat backrest to the fully upright position and raise the height of the seat.

**Note:** No lower tether anchorage points are available on any seating positions.



# Child Safety

## ISOFIX Child Restraints

| Seating Positions           |             | Mass Group Categories |                  |                              |                          |                          |
|-----------------------------|-------------|-----------------------|------------------|------------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|
|                             |             | 0                     | 0                | 0+                           | 1                        | 1                        |
|                             |             | Lateral Facing        | Rearward Facing  | Rearward Facing              | Forward Facing           | Rearward Facing          |
|                             |             | 0–10 kg (0–22lb)      | 0–10 kg (0–22lb) | 0–13 kg (0–29lb)             | 9–18 kg (20–40lb)        | 9–18 kg (20–40lb)        |
| Front passenger seat.       | Size class. | No ISOFIX             |                  |                              |                          |                          |
|                             | Size type.  |                       |                  |                              |                          |                          |
| Rear outermost seat ISOFIX. | Size class. | F, G <sup>1</sup>     | E <sup>1</sup>   | C, D, E <sup>1</sup>         | A, B, B <sup>1</sup>     | C, D <sup>1</sup>        |
|                             | Fixture.    | L1, L2 <sup>1</sup>   | R1 <sup>1</sup>  | R1, R2X, R2, R3 <sup>1</sup> | F2, F2X, F3 <sup>1</sup> | R2X, R2, R3 <sup>1</sup> |
|                             | Size type.  | IL                    | IL               | IL                           | IL, IUF                  | IL                       |
| Rear center seat.           | Size class. | No ISOFIX             |                  |                              |                          |                          |
|                             | Size type.  |                       |                  |                              |                          |                          |

<sup>1</sup> The size class and fixture are defined for both universal and semi-universal child restraint systems. You can see the identification letters on ISOFIX child restraints.

**IL** Suitable for use with particular ISOFIX child restraint systems in the semi-universal category. Refer to the child restraint system manufacturer vehicle recommendation list for additional information.

**IUF** Suitable for use with forward facing ISOFIX child restraint systems in the universal category.

**Note:** No lower tether anchorage points are available on any seating positions.

# Child Safety

## i-Size Child Restraints

|                                                                                         | Front Passenger Seat | Rear Outermost Seats | Rear Center Seat    |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------|----------------------|---------------------|
| Rearward facing child restraint systems on front passenger seat with airbag <b>ON</b> . | X                    | -                    | -                   |
| i-Size child restraint systems.                                                         | X                    | i-U                  | X                   |
| Suitable booster fixture.                                                               | B2, B3 <sup>1</sup>  | B2, B3 <sup>1</sup>  | B2, B3 <sup>1</sup> |

<sup>1</sup> The fixture is defined for booster child restraint systems. You can see the identification letters on i-Size boosters.

**i-U** Suitable for use with forward and rearward facing i-Size child restraint systems.

**X** Not suitable for use with i-Size child restraint systems.

**Note:** *No lower tether anchorage points are available on any seating positions.*

# Child Safety

## CHILD RESTRAINTS RECOMMENDATION

| Size Class Categories                              | Manufacturer  | Model                                           | Attachment                                      |
|----------------------------------------------------|---------------|-------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| 40–83 cm<br>(15–35 in)<br>0–13 kg<br>(0–29 lb)     | Maxi-Cosi.    | Pebble 360 and FamilyFix 360 base. <sup>1</sup> | ISOFIX and support leg (base) or seatbelt only. |
| 40–105 cm<br>(15–40 in)<br>0–17.5 kg<br>(0–39 lb)  | Maxi-Cosi.    | Pearl 360 and FamilyFix 360 base. <sup>1</sup>  | ISOFIX and support leg (base).                  |
| 100–150 cm<br>(40–60 in)<br>15–36 kg<br>(33–79 lb) | Britax Römer. | KIDFIX OEM i-Size. <sup>1,2</sup>               | ISOFIX and seatbelt or seatbelt only.           |

<sup>1</sup>We recommend that you secure children using an ISOFIX child restraint on the rear outermost seats.

<sup>2</sup>We recommend that you use a booster seat that combines a cushion with a backrest instead of a booster cushion only.

See an authorized dealer for the latest details relating to our recommended child restraints.

# Child Safety

## INSTALLING CHILD RESTRAINTS



**WARNING:** Read and follow the manufacturer's instructions when you are installing a child restraint.

**Note:** Always follow the manufacturer's instructions for installing a child restraint with a top tether.



**WARNING:** Do not attach the top tether strap to anything other than the correct top tether strap anchor point.



**WARNING:** Make sure that the top tether strap is not slack or twisted and is properly located on the anchor point.



**WARNING:** If you use a child restraint that has a support leg, make sure the support leg rests securely on the floor.



**WARNING:** Make sure the child restraint rests tightly against the vehicle seat. You may need to adjust the seats to properly secure the child restraint. Make sure that the seat backrest is in an upright position. It may also be necessary to lift or remove the head restraint.

When using a child restraint on a front seat, follow these seat positioning guidelines:

- The child restraint must not be in contact with the instrument panel.
- Position the passenger seat as far rearward as possible and route the seatbelt forward and downward from the B-pillar ring to the child restraint.
- If it proves difficult to tighten the lap section of the seatbelt without slack remaining, adjust the seat backrest to the fully upright position and raise the height of the seat.

**Note:** When using a child restraint on a rear seat, adjust the front seat to a position to prevent contact with the child's feet or legs.

## BOOSTER SEATS

### Booster Seat



Secure children that weigh greater than 15 kg (33 lb) but are less than 150 cm (60 in) tall in a booster seat or on a booster cushion.

We recommend that you use a booster seat that combines a cushion with a backrest instead of a booster cushion only. The raised seating position will allow you to position the shoulder strap of the adult seatbelt over the center of your child's shoulder and the lap strap tightly across their hips.

### Booster Cushion



**WARNING:** When using a booster cushion, make sure you adjust the vehicle head restraint on that seating position.

# Child Safety



Secure children that weigh greater than 22 kg (49 lb) but are less than 150 cm (60 in) tall on a booster cushion.

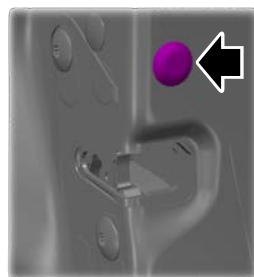
## CHILD SAFETY LOCKS



**WARNING:** You cannot open the rear doors from inside if you have put the child safety locks on.



A child safety lock is on the rear edge of each rear door. You must switch the child safety lock separately on each door.



1. Carefully remove the cover.



2. Activate or deactivate the feature with the key blade on the key fob. See **Removing the Key Blade** (page 51).

### Left-Hand Side

Turn the key clockwise to switch the child lock on and counterclockwise to switch it off.

### Right-Hand Side

Turn the key counterclockwise to switch the child lock on and clockwise to switch it off.

**Note:** Make sure you replace the cover.

# Child Safety

**Note:** To make sure the child safety lock is on, pull the inside door handle twice to verify the door does not open. Lower the rear window or open the front door to gain access to the rear inside door handle.

**Note:** To open the rear doors when the child lock is engaged, have someone outside the vehicle open the door.

## CHILD SAFETY LOCK INDICATOR



A LED on the child safety lock control illuminates when you switch them on. If the LED flashes, try to switch the child safety locks on again. If the LED continues to flash, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## CHILD SAFETY LOCKS – TROUBLESHOOTING

### CHILD SAFETY LOCKS – INFORMATION MESSAGES

| Message                                                        | Details                                                                                                                           |
|----------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Electronic childproof lock. Activate it again. Owner's Manual! | Try to switch the child safety locks on again. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |

# Seatbelts

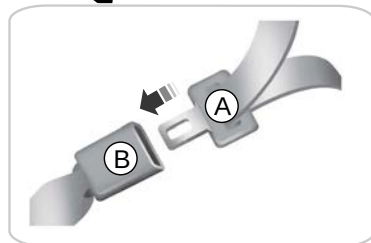
## SEATBELT PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Make sure that the seatbelts are securely stowed away when not in use and not outside your vehicle when closing the doors.



**WARNING:** Accessory seat covers not released by the manufacturer of your vehicle could prevent the seatbelt from retracting correctly. This could cause the seatbelt to become slack which could increase the risk of injuries in a crash.



A Seatbelt tongue.

B Seatbelt buckle.

## FASTENING AND UNFASTENING THE SEATBELTS

### Fastening the Seatbelts

All seatbelts in your vehicle are a three-point combination lap and shoulder seatbelt.

1. Pull the seatbelt out steadily.

**Note:** It may lock if you pull it sharply or if the vehicle is on a slope.

2. Insert the tongue into the buckle.
3. Pull the seatbelt tight to remove any slack.

### Unfastening the Seatbelts

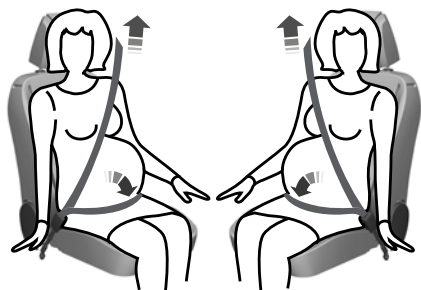
1. Press the red button on the buckle to release the seatbelt.
2. Hold the seatbelt tongue and let it retract completely and smoothly to its stowed position.

# Seatbelts

## ADJUSTING THE SEATBELTS DURING PREGNANCY



**WARNING:** Position the seatbelt correctly for your safety and that of your unborn child. Do not use only the lap strap or the shoulder strap.



Pregnant women should always wear their seatbelt. The lap belt portion of a combination lap and shoulder belt should be positioned low across the hips below the belly and worn as tight as comfort will allow. The shoulder belt portion of a combination lap and shoulder belt should be positioned to cross the middle of the shoulder and the center of the chest.

## SEATBELT REMINDER

### SEATBELT REMINDER INDICATORS

#### Front Seats

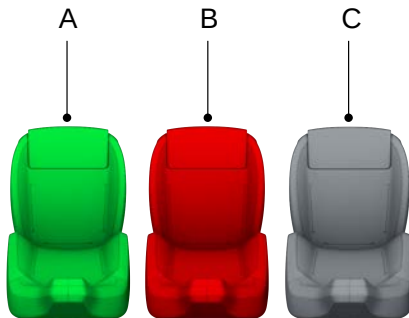
A warning lamp illuminates if the vehicle is on and any of the following occur:

- A front seat is occupied and the seatbelt has not been fastened.
- A front seatbelt has been recently unfastened.



The warning lamp illuminates until you fasten your seatbelt.

#### Rear Seats



- A Rear seatbelt fastened.
- B Rear seatbelt unfastened.
- C Empty seat.

## SEATBELT REMINDER AUDIBLE WARNINGS

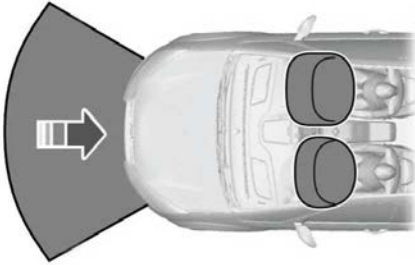
A warning tone sounds and the warning lamp illuminates if you are not wearing your seatbelt when your vehicle exceeds a relatively low speed.

The warning tone sounds for a short period of time or until you fasten your seatbelt.



# Airbags

## HOW DO THE FRONT AIRBAGS WORK



The front airbags are designed to deploy during a significant frontal or near-frontal crash. The airbags inflate within a few thousandths of a second cushioning forward body movement and deflate on contact with the occupant. The front airbags are not designed to deploy during a minor frontal crash, rear crash, side crash or a vehicle rollover.

## HOW DO THE SIDE AIRBAGS WORK

**WARNING:** Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the airbag cover, on the side of the front seat backrests, or in areas that may come into contact with a deploying airbag. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Do not lean your head on the door. The side airbag could injure you as it deploys from the side of the seatback.

**WARNING:** Accessory seat covers not released by the manufacturer of your vehicle could prevent the deployment of the airbags and increase the risk of injuries in a crash.

**WARNING:** Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the supplementary restraint system or associated components. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** If a supplementary restraint system component has deployed, it will not function again. Have the system and associated components inspected as soon as possible. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



# Airbags

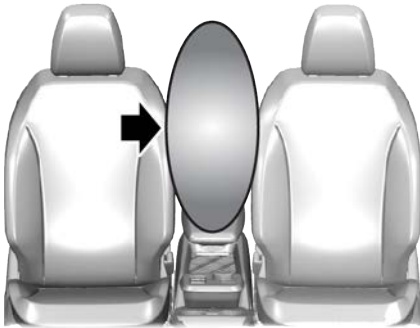
The side airbags are on the outermost side of each front seat. There is a sign engraved into the seat side trim to indicate this.

The side airbags are designed to inflate between the door panel and the occupant to enhance the protection in certain crashes.

The side airbags are designed to deploy during a significant lateral crash. They could also deploy during a significant frontal crash. The side airbags are not designed to deploy during a minor lateral or frontal crash, rear crash or a vehicle rollover.

## HOW DOES THE CENTER MOUNTED SIDE AIRBAG WORK

The center mounted side airbag is on the innermost side of the driver seat. There is a label attached to the side of the backrest to indicate this.



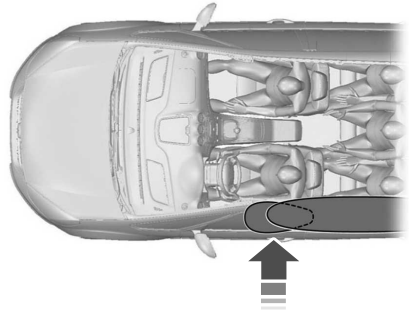
The center mounted side airbag is designed to inflate between the driver seat and the passenger seat to enhance the protection in certain crashes.

This airbag is designed to deploy during a significant lateral or frontal angled crash. The airbag reduces contact between the driver and the front seat passenger during side impacts. The airbag is not designed to deploy during a minor lateral or frontal crash, a rear crash or a rollover.

## HOW DO THE SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAGS WORK



**WARNING:** Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the headliner at the siderail that may come into contact with a deploying curtain airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.



The airbags are designed to deploy during a significant lateral or frontal angled crash. The airbags are not designed to deploy during a minor lateral and frontal crash, rear crash or a vehicle rollover.

# Airbags

## AIRBAG PRECAUTIONS

**WARNING:** Extreme Hazard! Never use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an active airbag in front of it. Death or serious injury to the child can occur.

**WARNING:** Do not modify the front of your vehicle in any way. This could adversely affect deployment of the airbags. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Wear a seatbelt and keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. Only when you use the seatbelt correctly, can it hold you in a position that allows the airbag to achieve its optimum effect. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Repairs to the steering wheel, steering column, seats, airbags and seatbelts must be carried out by an authorized dealer. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Keep the areas in front of the airbags free from obstruction. Do not affix anything to or over the airbag covers. Objects could become projectiles during airbag deployment. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Do not poke sharp objects into areas where airbags are fitted. This could damage and adversely affect deployment of the airbags. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Accessory seat covers not released by Ford Motor Company could prevent the deployment of the airbags and increase the risk of injuries in a crash.

**WARNING:** Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the supplementary restraint system or associated components. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** If a supplementary restraint system component has deployed, it will not function again. Have the system and associated components inspected as soon as possible. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

**Note:** A loud bang sounds and there is a cloud of harmless powdery residue if an airbag deploys. This is normal.

## PASSENGER AIRBAG INDICATORS



# Airbags

The passenger airbag on and off indicators are on the overhead console.

## SWITCHING THE PASSENGER AIRBAG ON AND OFF



**WARNING:** You must switch the passenger airbag off when using a rearward facing child restraint on the front seat.

The switch is on the side of the glove compartment.

1. Insert the key blade into the switch.



2. Turn the key to the **ON** or **OFF** position.
3. When your vehicle is on, the passenger airbag status indicator lamps illuminate for a short period to confirm they are functional. If the indicator lamps do not illuminate when you switch your vehicle on, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



**OFF**

It illuminates when the airbag is off.

## AIRBAGS – TROUBLESHOOTING

### AIRBAGS – WARNING LAMPS



If it does not illuminate when you switch your vehicle on, continues to flash or remains on or the Safety Alert Warning Lamp illuminates this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



**ON**

It illuminates when the airbag is on.

# Pedestrian Alert System

---

## WHAT IS THE PEDESTRIAN ALERT SYSTEM

Due to the quiet operation of hybrid and electric vehicles at low speeds, the system creates a subtle sound to alert pedestrians.

The system is on when your vehicle is running and not in park (P). Some sound may be audible in the passenger compartment.

## PEDESTRIAN ALERT SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** The system is not designed to detect cyclists, motorcyclists, pedestrians or animals. Apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to follow this instruction could result personal injury or death.

# Driver State Assist

## HOW DOES DRIVER STATE ASSIST WORK

Driver state assist detects a lack of driver activity, keeps the vehicle in the lane automatically, and brakes the vehicle to a complete stop if required, when the lane keeping system or lane centering is active.

The system uses the vehicle's front radar sensor and front windshield camera sensor, together with the steering wheel sensor to operate.

When the system detects no steering activity it prompts you to take control of the steering wheel.



This symbol illuminates and a message appears in the instrument cluster display, prompting you to take control of the steering wheel.

If you fail to do so, the system activates and takes control of the vehicle.



When the system activates, it illuminates red in the instrument cluster display and starts to slow the vehicle down to a complete stop while maintaining steering control.

**Note:** You can override the system at any time by strongly accelerating, braking or steering.

The system attempts to warn you with short brake activations, and turns on the hazard lights, while decelerating.

**Note:** If your vehicle's speed is below 50 km/h (31 mph) the system sounds the horn to warn other road users.

When your vehicle is stationary, the system takes the following actions:

- It applies the electric parking brake.
- It unlocks the doors.

- It switches on the interior lighting.
- It initiates an emergency call (eCall). See **How Does eCall Work** (page 48).

## DRIVER STATE ASSIST PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Adapt your speed and distance from the vehicles ahead to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.



**WARNING:** The system cannot help prevent all crashes. Do not rely on this system to replace driver judgment and the need to maintain a safe distance and speed.



**WARNING:** The system does not detect vehicles that are driving in a different direction, cyclists or animals. Apply the brakes and steer as necessary. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

See **Adaptive Cruise Control Precautions** (page 220).

See **Lane Centering Precautions** (page 226).

# Driver State Assist

## DRIVER STATE ASSIST LIMITATIONS

The system detects driving situations using the radar sensors and the camera. The system only activates in the following situations:

- Adaptive cruise control with lane centering is active.
- Lane keeping system is active.

## DRIVER STATE ASSIST – TROUBLESHOOTING

### DRIVER STATE ASSIST – WARNING LAMPS



If the system detects a fault, a symbol illuminates yellow and a message appears in the instrument cluster display.

Switch your vehicle off and on again.

If the problem persists, switch off lane keeping system and do not use adaptive cruise control with lane centering.

Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## DRIVER STATE ASSIST – INFORMATION MESSAGES

| Message                                  | Description                                                                                                                                                              |
|------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Driver State Assist: Take over steering! | The system activates and starts decelerating the vehicle, while maintaining steering control. You can override the system by strongly accelerating, braking or steering. |

## WHAT IS ECALL

eCall is an emergency call system that complies with European Union Regulation (EU) 2015/758. See **eCall User Information** (page 388).

The system uses the public cell phone network to initiate a call to the public emergency services when activated automatically in a severe accident or manually by the vehicle occupants or by Driver State Assist. See **Driver State Assist** (page 46).

eCall is designed for emergency calls in case of severe accidents or other emergencies that require the emergency services. It does not support other voice calls.

## HOW DOES ECALL WORK

The system initiates a call to the emergency services, if an accident results in an attempt to deploy an airbag, excluding knee airbags and rear inflatable seatbelts, or to shut off the fuel pump, or to activate the high voltage battery shut off, or after a Driver State Assist system intervention. See **Driver State Assist** (page 46). This call cannot be canceled.

In the case of an emergency, the system, as a means of communication aid, can help you contact specific rescue departments of public emergency services. The system does not deploy the rescue operations. The local public emergency service deploys specific rescue operations according to the actual situation.

During an emergency call, the system transmits vehicle data to the emergency service. See **Emergency Call System Data** (page 24).

**Note:** *If the transmission is unsuccessful, this could result in the emergency operator not receiving your vehicle data.*

## EMERGENCY CALL REQUIREMENTS

The system only operates in areas with a compatible cell phone network and emergency services infrastructure.

## EMERGENCY CALL LIMITATIONS

Not all accidents activate the system. If an accident does trigger the system, it initiates a call to the emergency services. Do not wait for the system to initiate a call if you are able to do so. Call emergency services immediately to avoid a delayed response time. If you do not hear the system within five seconds of the accident, the system could be non-functional.

Using a non-Ford audio system could result in the system not properly operating.

## MANUALLY MAKING AN EMERGENCY CALL



**WARNING:** Use caution when making a manual emergency call when driving.

1. Switch your vehicle on.

- 2.



Press this button on the overhead console to open the emergency call button cover.

3. Press the emergency call button until the indicator lamp flashes green to initiate a call to the emergency services.



**Note:** Press the button again until the indicator lamp lights up green continuously and before the call is connected to cancel it.

4. Speak to the operator.

**Note:** After completing an emergency call, the emergency operator can call your vehicle. The system automatically answers incoming calls for approximately an hour.

## EMERGENCY CALL INDICATORS



**WARNING:** If the system malfunctions, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



The indicator is next to the emergency call button cover on the overhead console.

It lights up green when you switch your vehicle on.

| Emergency Call Indicator Status | Description                                                                     |
|---------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Indicator off.                  | Emergency call is not available. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |
| Flashing red.                   | Emergency call is deactivated. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.   |
| Continuous red.                 | The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.    |
| Continuous green.               | Normal operation.                                                               |
| Flashing green.                 | Emergency call is active.                                                       |

## CHANGING THE BACKUP BATTERY

The system has a backup battery and indicates when it needs to be changed. We recommend that you have the battery changed by an authorized dealer.

## ECALL – TROUBLESHOOTING

### ECALL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

| Message                                                 | Description                                                                                   |
|---------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Error: emergency call.<br>Please visit workshop.        | The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.                  |
| Emergency call is restricted.<br>Please visit workshop. | Emergency call is restricted or not available. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |

# Keys and Remote Controls

## REMOTE CONTROL LIMITATIONS

The typical operating range for your remote control is approximately 10 m (33 ft).

A decrease in operating range could be caused by:

- Weather conditions.
- Nearby radio towers.
- Structures around your vehicle.
- Other vehicles parked next to your vehicle.

The radio frequency used by your remote control can also be used by other short distance radio transmissions, for example amateur radios, medical equipment, wireless headphones, remote controls and alarm systems. If the frequencies are jammed, you will not be able to use your remote control. You can lock and unlock the doors with the key.

**Note:** Make sure you have locked your vehicle before leaving it unattended.

**Note:** If you are within range of your vehicle, the remote control will operate if you unintentionally press any button.

**Note:** The remote control contains sensitive electrical components. Exposure to moisture or impact may cause permanent damage.

## REMOVING THE KEY BLADE



Push the release button and pull the key blade out.

## CHANGING THE REMOTE CONTROL BATTERY



**WARNING:** Keep batteries away from children to prevent ingestion. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death. If ingested, immediately seek medical attention.



**WARNING:** If the battery compartment does not securely close, stop using the remote control and replace it as soon as possible. In the meantime, keep the remote control away from children. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

## Keys and Remote Controls



**CAUTION:** The battery can cause severe or fatal injuries in two hours or less if swallowed or placed inside any part of the body. Seek medical attention immediately.



Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way. Seek advice from your local authority about recycling old batteries.

The remote control uses one coin-type three-volt lithium battery CR2032 or equivalent.



2. Insert the key blade into the slot and carefully push in the direction shown to remove the cover.



1. Push the release button and pull the key blade out.



3. Insert a suitable tool, for example a screwdriver, in the position shown and carefully remove the battery.
4. Install a new battery with the + facing upward.

**Note:** Do not wipe off any grease on the battery terminals or on the back surface of the circuit board.

5. Reinstall the cover and the key blade.

# Keys and Remote Controls

---

## REPLACING A LOST KEY OR REMOTE CONTROL

You can purchase replacement keys or remote controls from an authorized dealer. If possible, provide them with the key number from the tag provided with the original key. You can also obtain extra keys.

## PROGRAMMING THE REMOTE CONTROL

Contact an authorized dealer to program remote controls for your vehicle.

## KEYS AND REMOTE CONTROLS – TROUBLESHOOTING

### KEYS AND REMOTE CONTROLS – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

#### **What is the fan noise I hear when I press the unlock button on the remote control?**

- This is the blower motor pushing fresh air into the cabin and out through cabin exhaust vents. Your vehicle has air purge that could turn on when you press the unlock button on the remote control or when certain conditions are met.

# Doors and Locks

## OPERATING THE DOORS FROM OUTSIDE YOUR VEHICLE

### UNLOCKING AND LOCKING THE DOORS USING THE REMOTE CONTROL

You can only use the remote control when your vehicle is stationary.

#### Unlocking the Doors



Press the button to unlock the doors. The turn signal lamps flash twice to confirm that your vehicle has unlocked.

#### Locking the Doors



Press the button to lock all doors. One short flash of the turn signal lamps confirms that your vehicle has locked.

**Note:** If your vehicle is equipped with double locking, the doors cannot be opened from the inside. See **Double Locking the Doors Using the Remote Control** (page 54).

**Note:** You can also lock and unlock your vehicle without using the remote control. See **Keyless Entry** (page 58).

### UNLOCKING AND LOCKING THE DOORS USING THE KEY BLADE

#### Unlocking the Doors

1. Release the key blade from the remote control.
2. Fully insert the key blade into the driver door lock cylinder.
3. Turn the top of the key toward the front of your vehicle.

**Note:** When you unlock the driver door with the key blade all the other doors are unlocked.

#### Locking the Doors

1. Release the key blade from the remote control.
2. Fully insert the key blade into the driver door lock cylinder.
3. Turn the top of the key toward the rear of your vehicle.

**Note:** When you lock your vehicle with the key blade all doors are locked.

### DOUBLE LOCKING THE DOORS USING THE REMOTE CONTROL - RHD



**WARNING:** Before using double locking, check to make sure no one is inside the vehicle. Never activate double locking when an occupant is inside. Once double locking is activated, the doors cannot be opened or unlocked from the inside, which could prevent occupants from exiting the vehicle.

Double locking is a theft protection feature that prevents someone from opening the doors from the inside.

**Note:** You do not have to activate double locking.

#### Deactivating Double Locking

- Press the lock button on the remote control twice within two seconds.
- Touch the sensor on the outside of the door handle twice within two seconds.

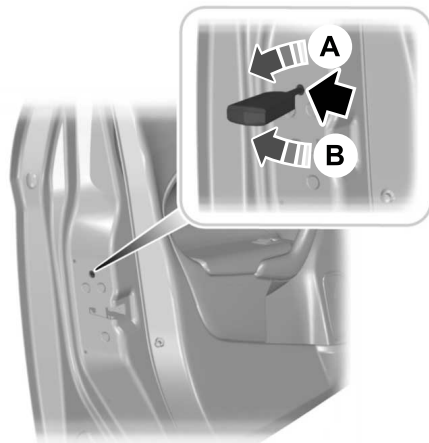
# Doors and Locks



**Note:** Deactivating double locking sets your alarm security level to perimeter sensing. See **Anti-Theft Alarm System Settings** (page 70).

## INDIVIDUALLY UNLOCKING AND LOCKING THE DOORS USING THE KEY BLADE

### Locking the Doors



If the central locking function does not operate, individually lock the front passenger door and the rear doors using the key blade.

**Note:** Remove the grommet from the key blade lock mechanism.

### Left-Hand Side Doors

Turn the key counterclockwise to lock.

### Right-Hand Side Doors

Turn the key clockwise to lock.

**Note:** Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible to repair the central locking function.

## Unlocking the Doors

If the central locking function does not operate, unlock the driver door and then individually unlock all other doors by pulling the interior door handles.

**Note:** When the doors have been unlocked using this method, the doors must be individually locked until the central locking function has been repaired.

**Note:** If the vehicle is double locked, you cannot open the doors by pulling the interior door handles.

## OPERATING THE DOORS FROM INSIDE YOUR VEHICLE

### UNLOCKING AND LOCKING THE DOORS USING THE CENTRAL LOCKING

The power door lock control is on the driver door.



Press the button to lock or unlock all doors.

# Doors and Locks

**Note:** If the vehicle has been locked from outside with the vehicle key, the power lock control is not activated.

When you lock the vehicle using the power lock control the indicator lamp on the control lights up yellow when all doors are closed and locked.

**Note:** The anti-theft alarm is not activated and the turn signal lamps do not flash.

## REPROGRAMMING THE UNLOCKING FUNCTION

You can program the unlocking function in the touchscreen so that only the driver or passenger door unlocks, or both doors unlock on one side of the vehicle.

**Note:** If you want to unlock all the doors, press the unlock button on the remote control again within three seconds.

## AUTOUNLOCK

### WHAT IS AUTOUNLOCK

Autounlock is a feature that recalls the last unlock status when you stop your vehicle.

If you unlocked:

- Only the driver door before starting your vehicle, then only the driver door unlocks when you stop.
- The driver side doors before starting your vehicle, then the driver side doors unlock when you stop.
- All the doors before starting your vehicle, then all the doors unlock when you stop.

## AUTOUNLOCK REQUIREMENTS

Autounlock operates if any of the following occurs:

- When you apply the electric parking brake and switch the vehicle off.
- You pull the interior door handle while the vehicle is stationary.

## AUTOLOCK

### WHAT IS AUTOLOCK

Autolock locks all the doors when you start driving.

**Note:** Depending on your vehicle's market or regional requirements and installed equipment, you may not be able to switch autolock on and off.

## AUTOLOCK REQUIREMENTS

Autolock locks all the doors when all of the following occur:

- All doors are closed.
- The vehicle is switched on.
- The vehicle reaches a speed greater than 15 km/h (9 mph).

## MISLOCK

### HOW DOES MISLOCK WORK

If you try to lock your vehicle when leaving your key inside the vehicle but you do not have another key outside, all the doors lock. A few seconds later the doors open as previously programmed in the touchscreen.

**Note:** The turn signal lamps flash four times to indicate that your vehicle has not locked.



# Doors and Locks

---

## AUTORELOCK

### HOW DOES AUTORELOCK WORK

The doors automatically relock if you do not open a door within 45 seconds of unlocking the doors. The doors lock and the alarm return to their previous state.

**Note:** *Autorelock does not work when you unlocked the vehicle with a key blade.*

## DOORS AND LOCKS – TROUBLESHOOTING

### DOORS AND LOCKS – WARNING LAMPS

#### Door Ajar Warning Lamp



Illuminates when you switch the vehicle on and remains on if any door, the hood or the liftgate is

open.

### DOORS AND LOCKS – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

#### Why do the turn signals not flash when the vehicle is locked?

- Make sure all the doors, the liftgate and the hood are closed.

#### Why does the vehicle lock itself automatically after a short period of time?

- The vehicle was unlocked but no doors or the liftgate were opened.
- The vehicle was not switched on.

#### Why does the key inside the vehicle not function?

- The key inside the vehicle is disabled if the vehicle is locked from the outside with another key. You need to reactivate the key inside the vehicle by pressing the unlock button on the key fob.

#### How can I lock the vehicle if the airbags opened during an accident?

- Switch the vehicle off, open the driver door and close it again. Lock the vehicle.

# Keyless Entry

## WHAT IS KEYLESS ENTRY

The system allows you to lock and unlock your vehicle without taking the passive key out of your pocket or purse.

## KEYLESS ENTRY LIMITATIONS

Make sure your remote control is within 1 m (3 ft) from the front door handles or the liftgate.

The system could not function if:

- The vehicle battery has no charge.
- The remote control battery has no charge.
- There is interference causing issues with the remote control frequencies.
- The remote control is too close to metal objects or electronic devices, for example keys or a cell phone.

## KEYLESS ENTRY SETTINGS

### Switching Keyless Entry On and Off

You can adjust the settings on the touchscreen.

1.  Press this icon.
2.  Press this icon.
3. Press **Exterior**.
4. Swipe to rotate the image of the vehicle until the preferred settings appear.
5. Press **Opening and closing**.
6. Make the required adjustments.

## Temporarily Disabling the Keyless Entry System

You can temporarily disable the Keyless Entry System by doing the following:

1.  Press the button on the remote control.
2. Touch the lock sensor on the exterior door handle within 5 seconds.

**Note:** All turn signals flash once.

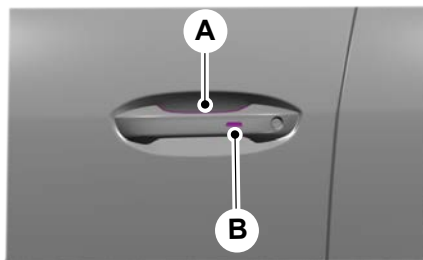
The Keyless Entry System is temporarily disabled.

**Note:** To check Keyless Entry System deactivation, wait 10 seconds after the procedure and pull the door handle again. You should not be able to open your vehicle.

It is only possible to unlock your vehicle with the remote control. Next time you unlock your vehicle, the Keyless Entry System is enabled again.

## USING KEYLESS ENTRY

### Unlocking the Doors



- A. Unlock sensor  
B. Lock sensor

# Keyless Entry

---

The unlock sensor is at the back of the exterior front door handle.

Touch the unlock sensor to unlock your vehicle and disarm the alarm. The turn signal lamps flash.

**Note:** *Do not touch the lock sensor on the outer surface of the door handle.*

Keep the door handle clean to make sure the system correctly operates.

After unlocking the doors with the unlock sensor, there is a brief delay before you can lock your vehicle. When the delay period is over you can lock the doors again, if the passive key is within the respective detection range.

**Note:** *The vehicle also unlocks when you approach it with a valid key in your pocket, if the settings are enabled.*

## Locking the Doors

Touch a lock sensor once to lock your vehicle and arm the alarm. The turn signal lamps flash.

**Note:** *The vehicle also locks when you walk away from it with a valid key in your pocket, if the settings are enabled.*

## KEYLESS ENTRY – TROUBLESHOOTING

### KEYLESS ENTRY – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

#### Why does the passive key not work?

- The system deactivates passive keys left inside your vehicle when you lock it. You cannot switch on your vehicle using a deactivated passive key. Press the unlock button on the remote control to reactivate a passive key.

# Easy Entry and Exit

---

## HOW DOES EASY ENTRY AND EXIT WORK

This feature moves the driver or passenger seat rearward when you switch your vehicle off. The driver or passenger seat returns to its previous position when you switch your vehicle on.

## SWITCHING EASY ENTRY AND EXIT ON AND OFF

1. Switch your vehicle on.

2.  Press this icon on the touchscreen.

3.  Press this icon.

4. Press **Interior**.

5. Press **Seats**.

6. Make the required Easy Entry and Exit adjustment for Driver or Passenger seat.

# Liftgate - Vehicles With: Hands-Free Liftgate

## LIFTGATE PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a crash, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seatbelts. Make sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and properly using a seatbelt. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Keep keys out of reach of children. Do not allow children to operate or play near an open or moving power liftgate. You should supervise the operation of the power liftgate at all times.

## OPENING THE LIFTGATE

### OPENING THE LIFTGATE FROM INSIDE YOUR VEHICLE



**WARNING:** Make sure all persons are clear of the liftgate area before opening or closing the liftgate.



Lift the switch on the driver door.

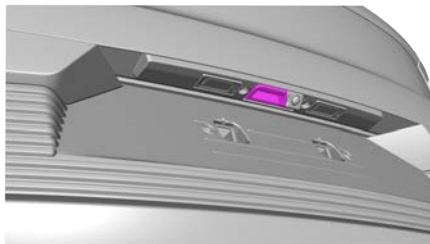
**Note:** Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.

**Note:** Do not hang anything, for example a bike rack, from the glass or liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

**Note:** Always keep the liftgate closed while the vehicle is in motion.

### OPENING THE LIFTGATE FROM OUTSIDE YOUR VEHICLE

1. Unlock the liftgate using a valid vehicle key.



2. Press and release the liftgate control button.

**Note:** Allow the power system to open the liftgate. Manually pushing or pulling the liftgate activates the system's obstacle detection feature and stops the power operation or reverses its direction, replicates a strut failure, or damages mechanical components.

**Note:** Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.

**Note:** Do not hang anything, for example a bike rack, from the glass or liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

**Note:** Do not leave the liftgate open while driving. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

### OPENING THE LIFTGATE USING THE REMOTE CONTROL



Press and hold the button on the vehicle key to open the liftgate.

## Liftgate - Vehicles With: Hands-Free Liftgate

**Note:** Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.

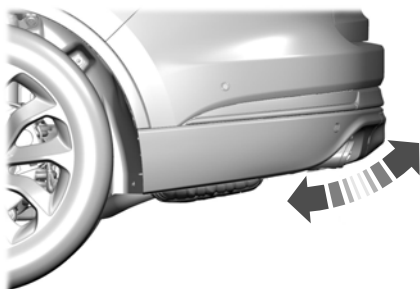
**Note:** Do not hang anything, for example a bike rack, from the glass or liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

**Note:** Do not leave the liftgate open while driving. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

### OPENING THE HANDS-FREE LIFTGATE

Make sure you have the valid vehicle key within 1 m (3 ft) of the liftgate.

1. Stand behind your vehicle facing the liftgate.
2. Move your foot in a single-kick motion without pausing under and away from the rear bumper detection area.



3. The liftgate opens.

Avoid the following actions when using the hands-free opening feature:

- Making physical contact with the bumper.
- Holding your foot under the bumper.
- Sweeping your foot from side to side, or kicking at an odd angle.

### Detection Zones

The detection area is in the center of the rear bumper.

**Note:** Allow the power system to open the liftgate. Manually pulling the liftgate activates the system's obstacle detection feature and stops the power operation or reverses its direction, replicates a strut failure, or damages mechanical components.

**Note:** Any physical actions that mimic a kicking motion such as splashing water, trailer chains, charging cables or vacuum hoses may cause the hands-free liftgate to activate. Switch the power liftgate off through your vehicle settings or keep the valid vehicle key away from the rear bumper detection area.

**Note:** If the valid vehicle key is located close to the liftgate, the hands-free liftgate function can sometimes be operated accidentally, causing the liftgate to open. For example, when sweeping underneath the rear bumper, if a powerful jet of water or steam is directed at the bumper, or if maintenance and repair work is carried out in the area around the rear bumper.

### SWITCHING THE HANDS-FREE LIFTGATE ON AND OFF

1.  Press this icon.
2.  Press the vehicle icon.
3. Swipe to rotate the image of the vehicle until the preferred settings appear.
4. You can switch the hands-free liftgate on or off.

## Liftgate - Vehicles With: Hands-Free Liftgate

**Note:** Always make sure that there are no valid vehicle keys left unattended in the operating range of the liftgate.

**Note:** Always switch off the hands-free liftgate function in the touchscreen before any maintenance or repair work is carried out.

**Note:** Always switch off the hands-free liftgate function in the touchscreen before cleaning the vehicle.

**Note:** The power liftgate and all hands-free liftgate functions are disabled when a trailer is connected to the vehicle. Only the button above the license plate and the button on the lower side of the liftgate remain operational. Open the liftgate manually.

### SETTING THE LIFTGATE OPENING HEIGHT

-  Open the liftgate and press the control button on the liftgate when it reaches the desired height. The liftgate must be at least half open.

**Note:** Once the liftgate stops moving, you can manually move it to the desired height.

- Press and hold the button on the liftgate until the hazard flashers flash and a tone sounds confirming programming is complete.

**Note:** You can only use the liftgate control button to program the height.

- The power liftgate now opens at the programmed height. To change the programmed height, repeat the steps.

**Note:** The system recalls the new programmed height until you reprogram it, even if you disconnect the battery.

### CLOSING THE LIFTGATE

#### CLOSING THE LIFTGATE FROM INSIDE YOUR VEHICLE



**WARNING:** Make sure all persons are clear of the power liftgate area before opening or closing the liftgate.



While the vehicle is on, pull the button upwards on the driver door until the liftgate is closed.

**Note:** Make sure that you close the liftgate before operating or moving your vehicle, especially in an enclosure, like a garage or a parking structure. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

**Note:** Before opening or closing the liftgate, check whether there is enough clearance to open or close the liftgate, for example in garages.

**Note:** Make sure that you fully close the liftgate to prevent cargo from falling out.

#### CLOSING THE LIFTGATE FROM OUTSIDE YOUR VEHICLE



**WARNING:** Make sure all persons are clear of the power liftgate area before using the power liftgate control.

## Liftgate - Vehicles With: Hands-Free Liftgate



Press and release the liftgate button in the open liftgate. A tone sounds when the liftgate begins to close.

**Note:** Make sure that you close the liftgate before operating or moving your vehicle, especially in an enclosure, like a garage or a parking structure. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

**Note:** Before opening or closing the liftgate, check whether there is enough clearance to open or close the liftgate, for example in garages.

**Note:** Make sure you fully close the liftgate to prevent cargo from falling out.

### CLOSING THE LIFTGATE USING THE REMOTE CONTROL



**WARNING:** Make sure all persons are clear of the power liftgate area before using the power liftgate control.



Press and hold the button for a few seconds. The vehicle key must also be within operating range.

**Note:** Make sure that you close the liftgate before operating or moving your vehicle, especially in an enclosure, like a garage or a parking structure. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

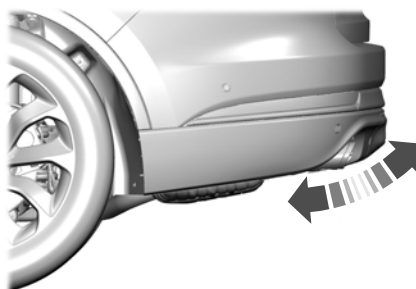
**Note:** Before opening or closing the liftgate, check whether there is enough clearance to open or close the liftgate, for example in garages.

**Note:** Make sure that you fully close the liftgate to prevent cargo from falling out.

### CLOSING THE HANDS-FREE LIFTGATE

Make sure you have the valid vehicle key within 1 m (3 ft) of the liftgate.

1. Stand behind your vehicle facing the liftgate.
2. Move your foot in a single-kick motion without pausing under and away from the rear bumper detection area.



3. The liftgate closes.

**Note:** A tone sounds when the liftgate begins to close.

Avoid the following actions when using the hands-free feature:



# Liftgate - Vehicles With: Hands-Free Liftgate

---

- Making physical contact with the bumper.
- Holding your foot under the bumper.
- Sweeping your foot from side to side, or kicking at an odd angle.

## Detection Zones

The detection area is in the center of the rear bumper.

**Note:** Allow the power system to close the liftgate. Manually pushing the liftgate activates the system's obstacle detection feature and stops the power operation or reverses its direction, replicates a strut failure, or damages mechanical components.

**Note:** Any physical actions that mimic a kicking motion such as splashing water, trailer chains, charging cables or vacuum hoses may cause the hands-free liftgate to activate. Switch the power liftgate off through your vehicle settings or keep the valid vehicle key away from the rear bumper detection area.

## STOPPING THE LIFTGATE MOVEMENT

You can stop the liftgate movement by pressing any of the liftgate control buttons or moving your foot under and away from the center rear bumper in a single-kick motion.

**Note:** Do not apply sudden excessive force to the liftgate while it is in motion. This could damage the power liftgate and its components.

## LIFTGATE OBSTACLE DETECTION

### Closing the Liftgate

The system stops when it detects an obstacle. A tone sounds and the system reverses to open. Once you remove the obstacle, you can power close the liftgate.

**Note:** To prevent accidental obstacle detection, let the power liftgate close completely before you enter your vehicle.

### Opening the Liftgate

The system stops when it detects an obstacle and a tone sounds. Once you remove the obstacle, you can continue to operate the liftgate.

## LIFTGATE – TROUBLESHOOTING

### LIFTGATE – WARNING LAMPS



Illuminates when the liftgate is not completely closed.

# Liftgate - Vehicles With: Hands-Free Liftgate

---

## LIFTGATE – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

### **Why are opening and closing the liftgate problematic?**

Make sure the liftgate is free of obstacle. Opening the liftgate requires more effort. The drive switches off automatically in order to prevent overheating if the driver operates the liftgate frequently within a short period of time. As the drive cools off, opening and closing the liftgate require more effort. Make sure the transmission is in park (P). Make sure the hands-free liftgate is enabled. If there are continued issues, the battery voltage may be low or there may be other system issues. See an authorized dealer.

### **Why do all turn signals flash four times?**

The key is still in the vehicle. Remove the key and lock the vehicle.

### **Why is the liftgate stiff?**

Due to outside temperatures below freezing point, opening the liftgate requires more effort. Open the liftgate manually.

## LIFTGATE VIDEOS

Animations are shown to enhance the written content and not intended to replace it. We recommend that you read the Owner's Manual for full details.

[Explorer Opening and Closing the Power Liftgate Video Link](#)

For more information scan here:



# Liftgate - Vehicles With: Manual Liftgate

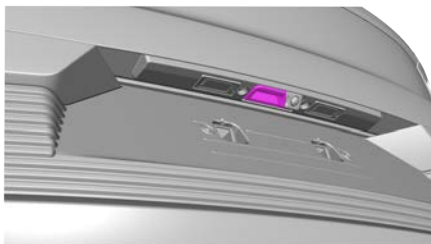
## LIFTGATE PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a crash, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seatbelts. Make sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and properly using a seatbelt. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

## OPENING THE LIFTGATE

### OPENING THE LIFTGATE FROM OUTSIDE YOUR VEHICLE



1. Unlock the liftgate using a valid vehicle key.
2. Press and release the liftgate control button.
3. Raise the liftgate.

**Note:** Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.

**Note:** Do not hang anything, for example a bike rack, from the glass or liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

**Note:** Do not leave the liftgate open while driving. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

## OPENING THE LIFTGATE USING THE REMOTE CONTROL



Press and hold the button on the vehicle key to unlock the liftgate.

**Note:** Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.

**Note:** Do not hang anything, for example a bike rack, from the glass or liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

**Note:** Do not leave the liftgate open while driving. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

## CLOSING THE LIFTGATE

### CLOSING THE LIFTGATE FROM OUTSIDE YOUR VEHICLE



E291353

A handle is located inside the liftgate to help with closing.

# Liftgate - Vehicles With: Manual Liftgate

---

**Note:** Make sure that you fully close the liftgate to prevent cargo from falling out.

## LIFTGATE – TROUBLESHOOTING

### LIFTGATE – WARNING LAMPS



Illuminates when the liftgate is not completely closed.

## PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

### WHAT IS THE PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

The passive anti-theft system prevents someone from starting your vehicle with an incorrectly coded key.

**Note:** Do not leave a duplicate coded key in your vehicle. Always take the keys and lock all the doors when leaving your vehicle.

### HOW DOES THE PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM WORK

The passive anti-theft system arms when you switch your vehicle off.

It disarms when you switch your vehicle on with a correctly coded key.

**Note:** The system is not compatible with non-Ford aftermarket remote start systems.

**Note:** Do not leave a duplicate coded key in your vehicle. Always take the keys and lock all doors when leaving your vehicle.

## ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM

### WHAT IS THE ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM

The anti-theft alarm system warns you of an unauthorized entry to your vehicle.

### HOW DOES THE ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM WORK

When armed, the anti-theft alarm is triggered in any of the following ways:

- If someone opens a door, the liftgate or the hood without a correctly coded key or remote control.
- If the interior sensors detect movement inside your vehicle.
- If a halogen-light illuminated bicycle carrier or a trailer that is connected to the anti-theft alarm system is removed.
- If the 12 volt vehicle battery is disconnected.
- If the vehicle is lifted or towed.

If the anti-theft alarm is triggered, the alarm horn sounds and the direction indicators flash for 5 minutes.

### WHAT IS THE PERIMETER ALARM

The perimeter alarm is designed to detect unauthorized access to your vehicle.

### WHAT ARE THE INTERIOR SENSORS

The interior sensors are designed to detect any movement inside your vehicle.

The interior sensors are in the overhead console.

**Note:** Do not cover the interior sensors.

**Note:** If people or animals remain in the vehicle, deactivate the interior sensors to avoid false alarm.

**Note:** Open or partially open windows and lightweight items left in the vehicle can trigger false alarm.

# Security

---

## WHAT ARE THE INCLINATION SENSORS

The inclination sensor is designed to detect an attempt to raise your vehicle, for example to remove a wheel or to tow it away.

**Note:** *Deactivate inclination sensors to avoid false alarm if the vehicle is loaded onto another vehicle, transported or towed away, or parked in a car wash or a two-story building.*

## WHAT IS THE BATTERY BACKUP ALARM (If Equipped)

The battery backup alarm is a standalone alarm sounder that has its own internal circuitry and a recharging battery which is charged when the engine is running. It can detect if your vehicle's 12V battery is disconnected to overcome the alarm system or if the battery backup sounder itself becomes unplugged from the vehicle's electrical harness. The alarm sounds from its own power source if that occurs.

## ARMING THE ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM

The alarm is ready to arm when you switch your vehicle off.

Arm the alarm by locking your vehicle.

**Note:** *The interior monitoring system is activated a short period of time after locking the vehicle.*

## DISARMING THE ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM

Disarm the alarm by performing any of the following actions:

- Unlock the doors or luggage compartment with the remote control.
- Switch your vehicle on or start your vehicle.
- Grip the door handle with built in sensors, and a correctly coded key nearby.

## ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM SETTINGS

### WHAT ARE THE ALARM SECURITY LEVELS

You can select two levels of alarm security:

- All sensors.
- Perimeter sensing.

### All Sensors

All sensors is the standard setting.

In all sensors, all equipped sensors are on when you arm the alarm.

**Note:** *Do not arm the alarm with all sensors if passengers, animals or other moving objects are inside your vehicle.*

### Perimeter Sensing

In perimeter sensing, the interior sensors and inclination sensors are off when you arm the alarm.

**Note:** *When you arm the alarm in this mode, all the other sensors become active.*

# Security

## SETTING THE ALARM SECURITY LEVEL - LHD

You may switch off the interior monitoring system and anti-tow alarm in the opening and closing menu. The interior sensors and the inclination sensor remain deactivated until the vehicle is locked again.

To switch the interior monitoring system and anti-tow alarm on or off:

1.  Press this icon.
2.  Press this icon.
3.  Press this icon.
4. Swipe to rotate the image of the vehicle until the preferred settings appear.
5. Press **Opening and closing**.
6. Switch **Interior monitoring** on or off.

**Note:** The interior monitoring system is activated a short period of time after locking the vehicle.

To avoid false alarms, deactivate the interior monitoring and the anti-tow alarm in the following situations:

- If any people or animals remain inside the vehicle.
- When loading the vehicle onto another vehicle, or towing it.
- When you park the vehicle in or on something that can move.



You can deactivate the interior monitoring and the anti-tow alarm by pressing the lock button on the remote control or touching the sensor on the outside of the door handle again in two seconds after locking the vehicle.

## SETTING THE ALARM SECURITY LEVEL - RHD

You may switch off the interior monitoring system and anti-tow alarm in the opening and closing menu. The interior sensors and the inclination sensor remain deactivated until the vehicle is locked again.

To switch the interior monitoring system and anti-tow alarm on or off:

1.  Press this icon.
2.  Press this icon.
3.  Press this icon.
4. Swipe to rotate the image of the vehicle until the preferred settings appear.
5. Press **Opening and closing**.
6. Switch **Interior monitoring** on or off.

**Note:** The interior monitoring system is activated a short period of time after locking the vehicle.

To avoid false alarms, deactivate the interior monitoring and the anti-tow alarm in the following situations:

- If any people or animals remain inside the vehicle.
- When loading the vehicle onto another vehicle, or towing it.
- When you park the vehicle in or on something that can move.

**Note:** When interior monitoring is deactivated, the vehicle locking is automatically set for single lock.

# Security

---



You can deactivate the interior monitoring and the anti-tow alarm by pressing the lock button on the remote control or touching the sensor on the outside of the door handle again in two seconds after locking the vehicle. In this case you activate only the central lock.



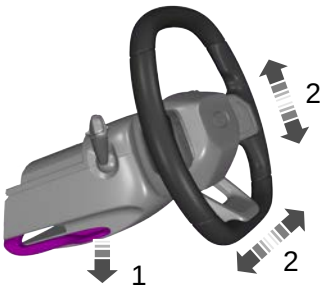
# Steering Wheel

## ADJUSTING THE STEERING WHEEL

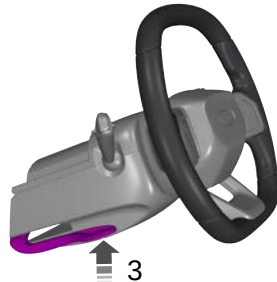


**WARNING:** Do not adjust the steering wheel when your vehicle is moving. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of vehicle control, personal injury or death.

**Note:** Make sure that you are sitting in the correct position. See **Sitting in the Correct Position** (page 119).



1. Push down the lever.
2. Adjust the steering wheel to the desired position.



3. Push the lever up firmly to its normal position.

**Note:** Make sure the lever is flush with the steering column trim, otherwise it can accidentally move while the vehicle is in motion.

## SWITCHING THE HEATED STEERING WHEEL ON AND OFF

### Switching the Heated Steering Wheel On and Off on the Steering Wheel



# Steering Wheel

Press the button on the steering wheel to switch the heated steering wheel on, adjust the temperature setting and switch it off.

**Note:** The system uses a sensor and is designed to control the temperature of the steering wheel and to prevent it from overheating.

**Note:** The most recent temperature setting is switched on automatically, when you restart your vehicle within approximately 10 minutes.

**Note:** You can also adjust this function on the touchscreen through the climate control menu or add it as a favorite icon to the climate bar on the home screen.



You can also control this vehicle feature with voice interaction. See **Voice Interaction**

**Examples** (page 363).

## Switching the Heated Steering Wheel On and Off on the Touchscreen

1.  Press this icon.
2.  Press this icon.
3.  Press this icon to switch the steering wheel heating on at the highest temperature setting.
4. To adjust the temperature setting, press the same icon repeatedly.
5. To switch the heated steering wheel off press the icon until the symbol is colored gray.

## Switching the Heated Steering Wheel On and Off Automatically at the Start of the Journey.

1.  Press this icon to access the Air conditioning menu.
2.  Press this icon.
3. Select the preferred heated steering wheel setting from the dropdown menu.

**Note:** Once the vehicle is ready to drive, the steering wheel heating is automatically switched on depending on the outside temperature.

# Wipers and Washers

## WIPERS

### WIPER PRECAUTIONS

Fully defrost the windshield before you switch the windshield wipers on.

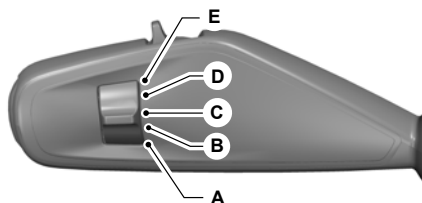
Make sure that you switch the windshield wipers off before entering a car wash.

If streaks or smears appear on the windshield, clean the windshield and the wiper blades. See **Checking the Wiper Blades** (page 77). If that does not resolve the issue, install new wiper blades. See **Replacing the Front Wiper Blades** (page 77). See **Replacing the Rear Wiper Blades** (page 78).

Do not operate the wipers on a dry windshield. This may scratch the glass or damage the wiper blades. Always use the windshield washers before wiping a dry windshield.

When your vehicle speed increases, the interval between intermittent wipes may decrease.

## SWITCHING WINDSHIELD WIPERS ON AND OFF



- A Windshield wipers off.
- B Autowipers on (low sensitivity).
- C Autowipers on (high sensitivity).
- D Low speed wipe.
- E High speed wipe.

Use the rotary control to operate the windshield wipers.

**Note:** When you turn autowipers on, the wipers operate based on the rain sensor. You can set the sensitivity of the rain sensor in two stages. See **Adjusting the Sensitivity of the Rain Sensor** (page 76).

**Note:** Make sure that you switch the windshield wipers and autowipers completely off before entering a car wash.

# Wipers and Washers

## Single-wipe function



Push the button briefly to activate single-wipe. Hold it longer to wipe more quickly. Release the button to switch off single-wipe.

**Note:** The button has two positions. If you push it deeper to its second position, it activates the windshield washer system.

## AUTOWIPERS

### WHAT ARE AUTOWIPERS

Autowipers, when turned on, automatically control the speed and frequency of the windshield wipers if the rain sensors detect moisture on the windshield.

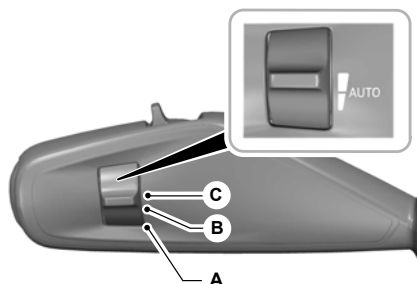
**Note:** Keep the outside of the windshield clean. The rain sensor is very sensitive and the wipers may operate if dirt, mist or insects hit the windshield.

### AUTOWIPERS SETTINGS

You can adjust the settings on the touchscreen.

1.  Press this icon.
2.  Press this icon.
3. Press **Exterior**.
4. Swipe to rotate the image of the vehicle until the preferred settings appear.
5. Press **Wipers**.
6. Make the required adjustments.

## ADJUSTING THE SENSITIVITY OF THE RAIN SENSOR



- A Windshield wipers off.
- B Autowipers on (low sensitivity).
- C Autowipers on (high sensitivity).

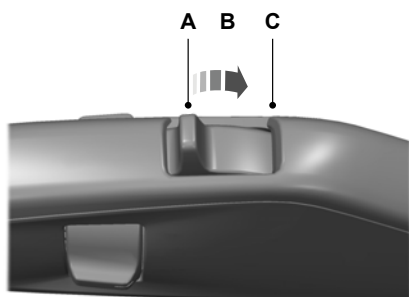
Use the rotary control to adjust the sensitivity of the rain sensor in two stages.

With the sensitivity level you can adjust the frequency of the wiper depending on the rain intensity.

# Wipers and Washers

**Note:** Keep the outside of the windshield clean. The rain sensor is very sensitive and the wipers may operate if dirt, mist or insects hit the windshield.

## SWITCHING THE REAR WINDOW WIPER ON AND OFF



- A Rear window wiper and washer off.
- B Rear window wiper on (intermittent wipe).
- C Rear window washer on.



Push the switch to the middle position to operate the rear window wiper. It wipes the window in short intervals. To switch off the rear window wiper, push the switch back to the left.

## REVERSE WIPE

### WHAT IS REVERSE WIPE

Reverse wipe turns on the rear window wiper when you shift into reverse (R) and the windshield wipers are on.

## REVERSE WIPE SETTINGS

You can adjust the settings on the touchscreen.

1.  Press this icon.
2.  Press this icon.
3. Press **Exterior**.
4. Swipe to rotate the image of the vehicle until the preferred settings appear.
5. Press **Wipers**.
6. Make the required adjustments.

## CHECKING THE WIPER BLADES



Run the tip of your fingers over the edge of the blade to check for roughness.

## REPLACING THE FRONT WIPER BLADES

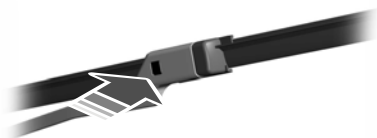
It is possible to replace the front wiper blades in parking position or you can place the wiper arms in service position. You can activate the service position from the touchscreen's wiper menu.

Make sure you powered your vehicle off before beginning the following procedure.

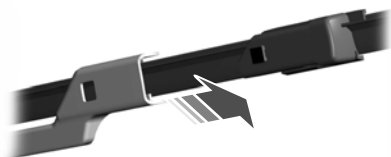
# Wipers and Washers

1. Fully lift the wiper arm from the windshield.

**Note:** Do not hold the wiper blade to lift the wiper arm.



2. Press the wiper blade locking button.



3. Remove the wiper blade.

**Note:** Make sure that the wiper arm does not spring back against the glass when the wiper blade is not attached.

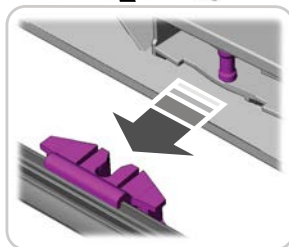
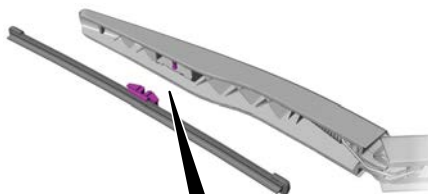
4. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

**Note:** Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place.

## REPLACING THE REAR WIPER BLADES

1. Lift the wiper arm.

**Note:** Do not hold the wiper blade to lift the wiper arm.



2. Disengage the wiper blade from the wiper arm.

**Note:** Make sure that the wiper arm does not spring back against the glass when the wiper blade is not attached.

3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

**Note:** Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place.

## WASHERS

### WASHER PRECAUTIONS

Do not operate the washers when the washer reservoir is empty. This could cause the washer pump to overheat.

# Wipers and Washers

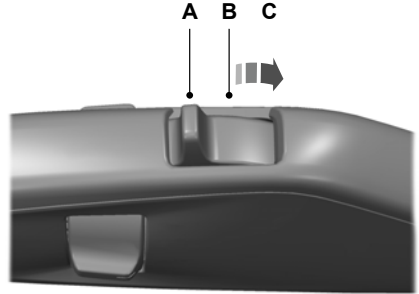
## USING THE WINDSHIELD WASHER



Press the button deeper to its second position and hold it there to operate the windshield washer. Release the button to switch off the windshield washer.

**Note:** A courtesy wipe occurs a short time after the wipers stop to clear any remaining washer fluid.

## USING THE REAR WINDOW WASHER



- A Rear window wiper and washer off.
- B Rear window wiper on (intermittent wipe).
- C Rear window washer on.



Push the switch all the way to the right and hold it to operate the rear window washer. Release the switch to turn off the rear window washer. If you also want to turn off the rear window wiper, push the switch all the way to the left.

## Rear view camera cleaning system

The rear view camera cleaning system works in conjunction with the rear window washer. If the view from the camera remains obscured after it has been cleaned several times, the camera lens must be cleaned manually. See **Cleaning Camera Lenses and Sensors** (page 316).

## ADDING WASHER FLUID

1. Open the hood.

# Wipers and Washers

2. Remove the washer fluid reservoir cap.

3. Add washer fluid that meets our specification. See **Washer Fluid Specification** (page 80).
4. Install the washer fluid reservoir cap.

**Note:** *The reservoir supplies the front and rear washer systems.*

## WASHER FLUID SPECIFICATION

### Capacities

| Variant | Quantity          |
|---------|-------------------|
| All.    | Fill as required. |

### Materials

| Name                                              | Specification |
|---------------------------------------------------|---------------|
| Screen Wash - Winter Premium 55<br>PU7J-19C544-** | WSS-M8B18-A2  |

## WIPERS AND WASHERS VIDEOS

Animations are shown to enhance the written content and not intended to replace it. We recommend that you read the Owner's Manual for full details.

[Explorer Replacing the Front and Rear Wiper Blades Video Link](#)

For more information scan here:



## WIPERS AND WASHERS – TROUBLESHOOTING

### WIPERS AND WASHERS – WARNING LAMPS



Illuminates when the windshield washer fluid is low.



Illuminates if there is a fault and the wipers do not wipe.

Switch your vehicle off and on again to reset the system.

If the warning lamp continues to illuminate and the wipers do not wipe, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



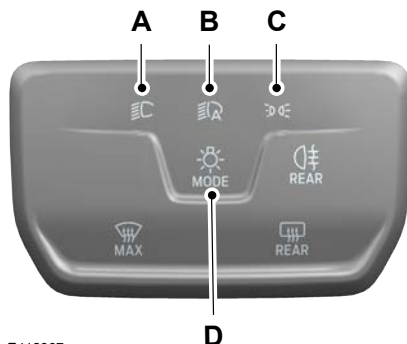
## WIPERS AND WASHERS – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

### Why are there streaks and smears on the windshield?

- The wiper blades could be dirty, worn or damaged. Check the wiper blades. See **Checking the Wiper Blades** (page 77). If the wiper blades are dirty, clean them with washer fluid or water applied with a soft sponge or cloth. If the wiper blades are worn or damaged, install new ones. See **Replacing the Front Wiper Blades** (page 77). See **Replacing the Rear Wiper Blades** (page 78).

# Exterior Lighting

## EXTERIOR LIGHTING CONTROL



E412867

- A Headlamps on.
- B Autolamps on.
- C Parking lamps on.
- D Mode button.

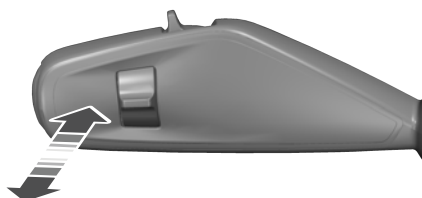


Press the button to make a selection.

**Note:** The lighting control defaults to autolamps every time you switch your vehicle on.

## HEADLAMPS

### USING THE HIGH BEAM HEADLAMPS



Push the lever away from you to switch the high beams on. The indicator illuminates blue in the instrument cluster.

Pull the lever toward you to switch the high beams off.

Slightly pull the lever toward you and release it to flash the headlamps.

**Note:** Continuous activation only with headlamps on.

### SWITCHING THE HEADLAMPS FOR DRIVING ON THE LEFT OR RIGHT-HAND SIDE OF THE ROAD - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE LED HEADLAMPS

1.  Press this icon on the touchscreen.
2.  Press this icon.
3. Press **Exterior**.
4. Press **Headlamps**.

# Exterior Lighting

## SWITCHING THE HEADLAMPS FOR DRIVING ON THE LEFT OR RIGHT-HAND SIDE OF THE ROAD - VEHICLES WITH: LED PROJECTOR HEADLAMPS

The headlamps are designed to support the left or right-hand side driving. You do not need to take any action.

## ADJUSTING THE LEVEL OF THE HEADLAMPS - VEHICLES WITH: MANUAL HEADLAMP LEVELING



**WARNING:** Heavy objects in the vehicle can cause the headlights to dazzle and distract other road users. This can lead to accidents and serious injuries.



**WARNING:** The light cone should always be adjusted to the load level of the vehicle to ensure that other road users are not dazzled.

You can adjust the level of the headlamp beams according to the vehicle load.

-  Press this icon on the touchscreen.
-  Press this icon.
- Press **Exterior**.
- Press **Headlamps**.
- Drag the slider and make the required adjustment.

**Note:** Set the control to zero when your vehicle is unloaded.

**Note:** Set the headlamp beams to give between 35–100 m (115–328 ft) of road surface illumination when your vehicle is partially or fully loaded.

## ADJUSTING THE LEVEL OF THE HEADLAMPS - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE LED HEADLAMPS

Your vehicle has a dynamic leveling system. The headlamps do not require additional aim adjustment.

## HEADLAMP INDICATORS

### Parking Lamps On



It illuminates when you switch the parking lamps on.

### Lamps Off



It only illuminates in the instrument cluster when you switch the lamps off and do not exceed a vehicle speed of 10 km/h (6 mph) or a distance of 100 m (109 yd).

## Exterior Bulb Failure



It illuminates when an exterior lamp has failed.

## AUTOLAMPS

### WHAT ARE AUTOLAMPS



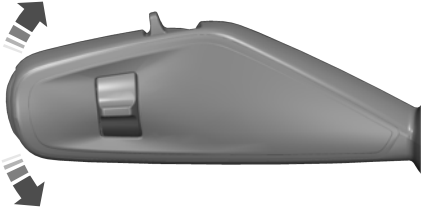
**WARNING:** The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. You may need to override the system if it does not turn the headlamps on in low visibility conditions, for example daytime fog.

Autolamps turn the headlamps on in low light situations or when the windshield wipers operate.

# Exterior Lighting

## EXTERIOR LAMPS

### USING THE TURN SIGNAL LAMPS



Push the lever up or down to switch the turn signal lamps on.

Set the lever to the middle position to switch the turn signal lamps off.

**Note:** Tap the lever up or down to make the turn signal lamps flash three times.

#### Turn Signal Lamp Indicator



It flashes green when you switch the turn signal lamps on.

**Note:** An increase in the rate of flashing warns of a failed turn signal lamp.

### SWITCHING THE PARKING LAMPS ON AND OFF

To switch both sides on or off:

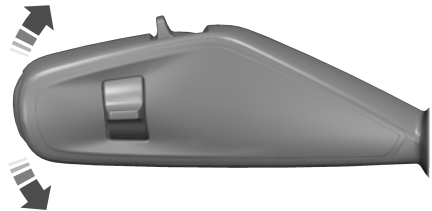
1. Switch your vehicle off.



Press the button repeatedly to switch the parking lamps on or off in the instrument cluster.

To switch one side on or off:

1. Switch your vehicle off.



- 2.



Push the lever up or down to switch the parking lamps on.

3. Move the lever back to a neutral position to switch the lamps off.

**Note:** Parking lamps could turn off to prevent the vehicle battery from running out of charge.

### SWITCHING THE DAYTIME RUNNING LAMPS ON AND OFF



**WARNING:** The daytime running lamps system may not activate the rear lamps and may not provide adequate lighting during low visibility driving conditions. Make sure you switch the headlamps on, as appropriate, during all low visibility conditions. Failure to do so may result in a crash.

Daytime running lamps are always on unless you switch on the headlamps or your vehicle is in park (P).

**Note:** You cannot activate or deactivate the daytime running lamps manually if your vehicle speed is greater than approximately 10 km/h (6 mph).

# Exterior Lighting

## USING ALL WEATHER LAMPS



Press the button on the lighting control to switch the lamps on or off.

## USING THE REAR FOG LAMPS

To switch the lamps on or off:

1.



Press the button on the lighting control to select the headlamps or autolamps.

**Note:** When the lighting control is in the autolamps position, you cannot switch the rear fog lamps on unless the low beam headlamps are on.

2.



Press the button on the lighting control to switch the rear fog lamps on or off.

**Note:** Only switch the rear fog lamps on during reduced visibility.

**Note:** The brightness of the daytime running lamps may decrease when the front fog lamps are switched on.

## Rear Fog Lamp Indicator



It illuminates yellow when you switch the rear fog lamps on.

## USING THE ENTRY AND EXIT LIGHTING

Entry and exit lighting automatically turns on when autolamps is on and you get in or out of your vehicle in darkness.

### Entry Lighting

Unlock your vehicle to switch entry lighting on.

To switch entry lighting off do any of the following:

- Lock your vehicle.
- Set the exterior lighting control to lamps off.
- Switch your vehicle on.

**Note:** Entry lighting turns off automatically after the set duration time.

### Exit Lighting

Switch your vehicle off to switch exit lighting on.

Set the exterior lighting control to lamps off to switch exit lighting off.

**Note:** Exit lighting turns off automatically after the set duration time.

## Adjusting the Entry and Exit Lighting

1.



Press this icon on the touchscreen.

2.



Press this icon.

3. Press **Exterior**.

4. Press **Comfort light**.

5. Set the required duration time.

**Note:** The entry and exit lighting does not function if you drag the slider to zero.

## EXTERIOR LAMPS ON AUDIBLE WARNING

Sounds when you open the driver door and the exterior lamps are on.

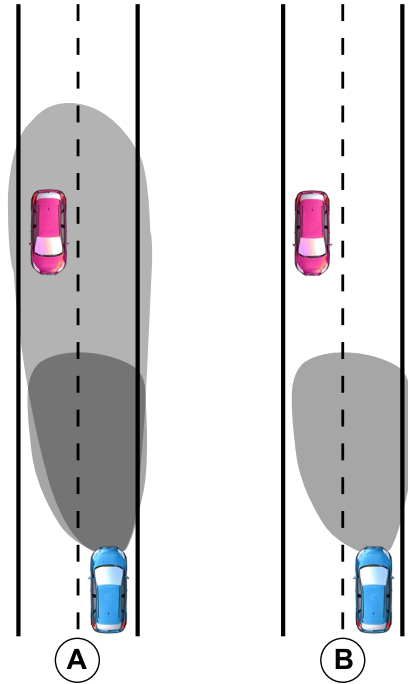
# Exterior Lighting

## AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL

### HOW DOES AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL WORK

Automatic high beam control turns the high beams on if it is dark enough and no other traffic is present. If it detects an approaching vehicle's headlamps or tail lamps, or street lighting ahead, the system turns the high beams off.

A camera sensor, centrally mounted behind the windshield of your vehicle, continuously monitors conditions to turn the high beams on and off.



- A Without automatic high beam control.
- B With automatic high beam control.

### AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. You may need to override the system if it does not turn the high beams on or off.

# Exterior Lighting



**WARNING:** The system may not switch the high beams off if the lights of oncoming vehicles are hidden by obstacles, for example guard rails.



**WARNING:** You may need to override the system when approaching other road users.



**WARNING:** In situations with poor visibility, such as fog, heavy rain or other inclement weather, you may need to override or completely switch off the system.

## AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL REQUIREMENTS

The system turns the high beams on if all of the following occur:

- You switch the system on.
- You set the lighting control to the autolamps position.
- The ambient light level is low enough that you require high beams.
- There is no traffic in front of your vehicle.
- The vehicle speed is greater than approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).

## AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL LIMITATIONS

The system turns the high beams off if any of the following occur:

- You switch the system off.
- You set the lighting control to any position except autolamps.
- The ambient light level is high enough that you do not require high beams.
- The system detects an approaching vehicle's headlamps or a leading vehicle's tail lamps.

- The system detects severe rain, snow or fog.
- The system detects street lighting.
- The camera has reduced visibility.
- The vehicle speed falls below approximately 30 km/h (19 mph).

**Note:** The deactivation speed may be lower on curves.

## SWITCHING AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL ON AND OFF

1. Switch your vehicle on.
2.  Press the button on the lighting control to select autolamps.
3. Push the lever away from you to switch the automatic high beam control on.
4. Push the lever forward again to switch the automatic high beam control off.

**Note:** You can also adjust automatic high beam control settings on the touchscreen.

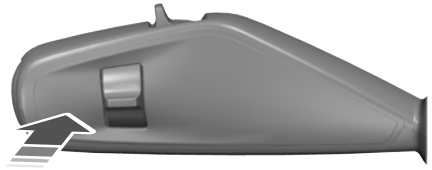
## AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL INDICATORS



Illuminates white to confirm when the system is ready to assist. Illuminates blue when the high beam is activated.

# Exterior Lighting

## OVERRIDING AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL



Push the lever away from you to switch between high beam and low beam.

## AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

| Message                          | Details                                                                                                  |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Fault: auto high beam            | Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.                                                           |
| Auto high beam: sensor impaired. | Clean the windshield. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |
| Error: dynamic headlamp system   | Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.                                                           |

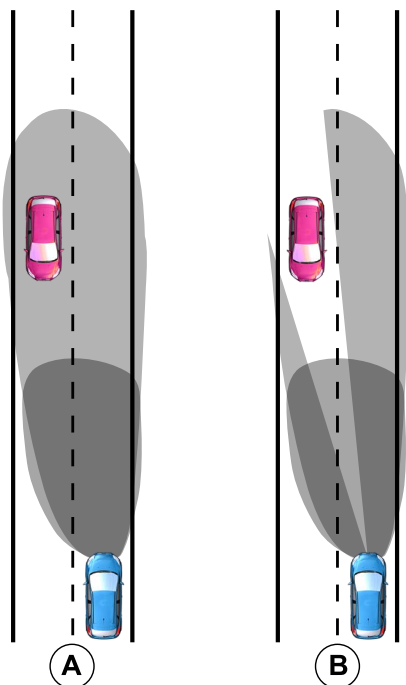
## GLARE FREE HIGH BEAM CONTROL

### HOW DOES GLARE FREE HIGH BEAM CONTROL WORK

Glare free high beam control enhances visibility and minimizes glare for other road users.



# Exterior Lighting



- A Without glare free high beam control.
- B With glare free high beam control.

## GLARE FREE HIGH BEAM CONTROL PRECAUTIONS

**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** The system may not adapt the lighting to avoid glare if the lights of oncoming vehicles are hidden by obstacles such as guard rails.

**WARNING:** You may need to override the system when approaching other road users.

**WARNING:** In situations with poor visibility, such as fog, heavy rain or other inclement weather, you may need to override or completely switch off the system.

## GLARE FREE HIGH BEAM CONTROL REQUIREMENTS

The system turns on if all of the following occur:

- You switch the system on.
- You set the lighting control to the autolamps position.
- The ambient light level is low enough.
- Your vehicle speed is greater than approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).

Additionally, the system adapts the lighting to avoid glare if it detects an approaching vehicle's headlamps or rear lamps.

# Exterior Lighting

## GLARE FREE HIGH BEAM CONTROL LIMITATIONS

The system turns off if any of the following occur:

- You switch the system off.
- You set the lighting control to any position except autolamps.
- The ambient light level is high enough.
- The system detects severe rain, snow or fog.
- The system detects street lighting.
- The camera has reduced visibility.
- The vehicle speed falls below approximately 30 km/h (19 mph).

**Note:** The deactivation speed is lower on curves.

## SWITCHING GLARE FREE HIGH BEAM CONTROL ON AND OFF

1. Switch your vehicle on.



Press the button on the lighting control to select autolamps.

3. Push the lever away from you to switch the glare free high beam control on.

4. Push the lever forward again to switch the glare free high beam control off.

**Note:** You can also adjust glare free high beam control settings on the touchscreen.

## GLARE FREE HIGH BEAM CONTROL INDICATORS



Illuminates white to confirm when the system is ready to assist. Illuminates blue when the glare free high beam is activated.

## OVERRIDING GLARE FREE HIGH BEAM CONTROL



Push the lever away from you to switch between high beam and low beam.

## GLARE FREE HIGH BEAM CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

| Message                          | Details                                                                                                  |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Fault: auto high beam            | Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.                                                           |
| Auto high beam: sensor impaired. | Clean the windshield. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |
| Error: dynamic headlamp system   | Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.                                                           |

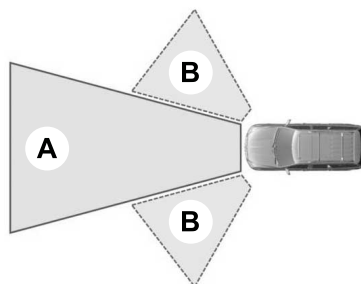
# Exterior Lighting

## ADAPTIVE FRONT LIGHTING

### HOW DOES ADAPTIVE FRONT LIGHTING WORK

#### Speed Dependent Lamps

Provides additional light on the road depending on your vehicle speed and steering wheel input.



- A Standard low beam.  
B Additional lighting.

## ADAPTIVE FRONT LIGHTING – INFORMATION MESSAGES

| Message                          | Details                                                                                                  |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Fault: auto high beam            | Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.                                                           |
| Auto high beam: sensor impaired. | Clean the windshield. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |
| Error: dynamic headlamp system   | Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.                                                           |

## EXTERIOR LIGHTING – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

### Why is there condensation in the exterior lamps?

- Exterior lamps have vents to accommodate normal changes in air pressure. Condensation can be a natural by-product of this design. When moist air enters the lamp assembly through the vents, there is a possibility that condensation can occur

when the temperature is cold. When normal condensation occurs, a fine mist can form on the interior of the lens. The fine mist eventually clears and exits through the vents during normal operation.

### How much condensation is acceptable?

- The presence of a fine mist or small droplets without streak marks is normal condensation. This may occur under certain environmental conditions and will clear on its own.

# Exterior Lighting

---

## **How long does it take for the acceptable condensation to clear?**

- Clearing time may vary depending on the outside temperature and environment, the drive duration or speed.

## **How much condensation is unacceptable?**

- Standing water or a water puddle inside the lamp. Condensation with drip marks present on the interior of the lens.

## **What should I do if unacceptable condensation is present?**

- Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## **Why do my headlamps turn off when I have them switched on when I switch my vehicle off?**

- The battery saver turns the headlamps off after a short period of time after you switch your vehicle off.

# Interior Lighting

## SWITCHING ALL OF THE INTERIOR LAMPS ON AND OFF



-  Press the button to switch all of the interior lamps on or off.

## SWITCHING THE FRONT INTERIOR LAMPS ON AND OFF



**Note:** Press the lamp lens to switch the front interior lamps off before switching your vehicle off to prevent the vehicle battery from running out of charge.

**Note:** You can dim the light by keeping your finger on the lamp.

## SWITCHING THE REAR INTERIOR LAMPS ON AND OFF



**Note:** You can dim the light by keeping your finger on the lamp.

## INTERIOR LAMP FUNCTION

### WHAT IS THE INTERIOR LAMP FUNCTION

The interior lamp function switches the courtesy and door lamps on or off.

### SWITCHING THE INTERIOR LAMP FUNCTION ON AND OFF



Press the button to switch the interior lamp function off.

# Interior Lighting

The interior lamps turn on if:

- You open any door.
- You press the unlock button on the remote control.
- You switch your vehicle off.

**Note:** If you switch your vehicle off, the interior lamps could turn off after a short time to prevent the vehicle battery from running out of charge.

## ADJUSTING THE INSTRUMENT PANEL LIGHTING BRIGHTNESS

1.  Press this icon on the touchscreen.
2.  Press this icon.
3. Press **Interior**.
4. Press **Interior lighting**.
5. Drag the slider left or right.

## AMBIENT LIGHTING

### SWITCHING AMBIENT LIGHTING ON AND OFF

1.  Press this icon on the touchscreen.
2.  Press this icon.
3.  Press this icon to switch ambient lighting off.



You can also control this vehicle feature with voice interaction.

See **Voice Interaction**

**Examples** (page 363).

## ADJUSTING AMBIENT LIGHTING

1.  Press this icon on the touchscreen.
2.  Press this icon.
3. Press and drag the slider to adjust the ambient lighting brightness.



If you press this icon ambient lighting color changes depending on the selected drive mode.



If you press this icon you can adjust the ambient lighting color and the brightness separately.



You can also control this vehicle feature with voice interaction.

See **Voice Interaction**

**Examples** (page 363).

## INTERIOR LIGHTING VIDEOS

Animations are shown to enhance the written content and not intended to replace it. We recommend that you read the Owner's Manual for full details.

[Explorer Interior Lighting Video Link](#)

For more information scan here:

# Interior Lighting

---



# Windows

## OPENING AND CLOSING THE WINDOWS



**WARNING:** Do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle and do not let children play with the power windows. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** When closing the power windows, verify that they are free of obstructions and make sure children and pets are not in the proximity of the window openings. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



## Front Windows



Press the window control switch to open the window. Lift the window control switch to close the window.

## Rear Windows



Press the button to activate the rear windows. It illuminates when the rear windows are activated.

**Note:** If you press the button again or you do not operate the rear windows within a short period of time, the front windows are reactivated.



Press the window control switch to open the window. Lift the window control switch to close the window.

**Note:** The power windows operate when the vehicle is on, and for several minutes after you switch the vehicle off or until you open a front door.

To reduce wind noise or pulsing noise when one window is open, slightly open the opposite window.

## One-Touch Open

Fully press the window control switch and release it. Press again or lift it to stop the window.

## One-Touch Close

Fully lift the window control switch and release it. Press again or lift it to stop the window.

## Resetting One-Touch Open and Close

If you have disconnected the 12 volt battery while the windows were not fully closed, you must reset the one-touch memory separately for each window.

1. Start your vehicle.
2. Pull and hold the window control switch until the window is fully closed and keep it held for a few seconds.
3. Release the switch then pull and hold it again for a few seconds.



# Windows

**Note:** Repeat the procedure if the window does not close when you use one-touch.

## GLOBAL OPENING AND CLOSING

### WHAT IS GLOBAL OPENING AND CLOSING

You can open and close all the windows simultaneously.

### USING GLOBAL OPENING

#### Using the Remote Control

1. Press and hold the unlock button on the remote control to open the windows.
2. Release the button to stop global opening.

**Note:** You can adjust global opening settings on the touchscreen.

#### Using a Window Control Switch

You can operate the windows simultaneously by using the window control switches on the inside of the driver door when the vehicle is on.

 Press and hold the button until it flashes to activate global opening and closing.

 Press either of the two window control switches to open the windows.

**Note:** If you do not operate the windows within a short period of time, global opening and closing is disabled.

### USING GLOBAL CLOSING

 **WARNING:** When closing the power windows, verify that they are free of obstructions and make sure children and pets are not in the proximity of the window openings. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

#### Using the Remote Control

1. Press and hold the lock button on the remote control to close the windows.
2. Release the button to stop global closing.

#### Using a Window Control Switch

You can operate the windows simultaneously by using the window control switches on the inside of the driver door when the vehicle is on.

 Press and hold the button until it flashes to activate global opening and closing.

 Pull either of the two window control switches to close the windows.

**Note:** If you do not operate the windows within a short period of time, global opening and closing is disabled.

#### Using the Door Handle

1. Place your finger on the locking sensor in the door handle to close the windows.
2. Remove your finger from the sensor to stop the windows.

**Note:** The remote control must be within 1.5 m (1.6 yd) from the door handles.

# Windows

**Note:** Bounce-back is on during global closing. See **Window Bounce-Back** (page 98).

## GLOBAL OPENING AND CLOSING VIDEOS

Animations are shown to enhance the written content and not intended to replace it. We recommend that you read the Owner's Manual for full details.

[Explorer Global Opening and Closing Video Link](#)

For more information scan here:



## WINDOW BOUNCE-BACK

### WHAT IS WINDOW BOUNCE-BACK

The window stops and reverses if it detects an obstruction when closing.

### OVERRIDING WINDOW BOUNCE-BACK



**WARNING:** If you override bounce-back, the window does not reverse if it detects an obstacle. Take care when closing the windows to avoid personal injury or damage to your vehicle.

1. Close the window until it reaches the point of resistance and let it reverse.

2. Lift the window control switch within five seconds to override bounce-back and close the window. Bounce-back is now disabled and you can close the window manually.

**Note:** The window goes past the point of resistance and you can fully close it.

**Note:** If the window does not close, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

### RESETTING WINDOW BOUNCE-BACK



**WARNING:** Bounce-back is off until you reset the memory. Take care when closing the windows to avoid personal injury or damage to your vehicle.

If you have disconnected the 12 volt battery while the windows were not fully closed, you must reset the bounce-back memory separately for each window.

1. Start your vehicle.
2. Pull and hold the window control switch until the window is fully closed and keep it held for a few seconds.
3. Release the switch then pull and hold it again for a few seconds.

**Note:** Repeat the procedure if the window does not close when you use one-touch.

## INTERIOR MIRROR PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Do not adjust the mirrors when your vehicle is moving. This could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

**Note:** Do not clean the mirror housing or glass with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products.

## AUTO-DIMMING INTERIOR MIRROR

### WHAT IS THE AUTO-DIMMING INTERIOR MIRROR

The mirror dims to reduce the effect of bright light from behind. It returns to normal when the bright light from behind is no longer present or if you shift into reverse (R).

### AUTO-DIMMING INTERIOR MIRROR LIMITATIONS

Do not block the sensors on the front and back of the mirror.

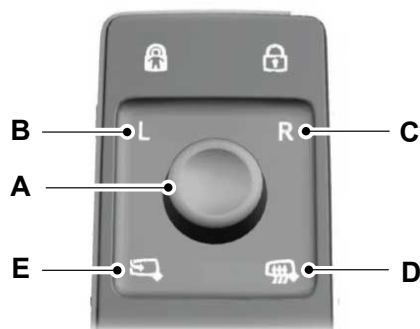
**Note:** A rear center passenger or raised rear center head restraint could prevent light from reaching the sensor.

# Exterior Mirrors

## ADJUSTING THE EXTERIOR MIRRORS



**WARNING:** Do not adjust the mirrors when your vehicle is moving. This could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.



- A Mirror adjustment control.
- B Left-hand mirror position.
- C Right-hand mirror position.
- D Exterior mirror heating position.
- E Power fold position.

**Note:** The symbol of the selected position illuminates.

### Mirror Settings

You can adjust the settings on the touchscreen.

1.  Press this icon.
2.  Press this icon.

3. Press **Exterior**.
4. Swipe to rotate the image of the vehicle until the preferred settings appear.
5. Press **Mirrors**.
6. Make the required adjustments.

**Note:** When you select to adjust the mirrors simultaneously, rotate the control on the driver door to the left-hand mirror position to adjust the mirrors.

You can save the front passenger side exterior mirror position for reversing:

1. Unlock and switch on your vehicle with the vehicle key you want to assign the setting to.
2. Shift into reverse.
3. Adjust the passenger side exterior mirror into a desired position.
4. Shift into neutral.
5. Switch your vehicle off.

You can retrieve the passenger side exterior mirror setting for reversing the following way:

1. Turn the exterior mirror control knob to the passenger side exterior mirror adjustment position.
2. With your vehicle on, shift into reverse.

The passenger side exterior mirror will move to the saved position.

**Note:** The saved position of the passenger side exterior mirror will remain on until the vehicle is driven forward faster than 15 km/h (9.3 mph) or the control knob is turned into another position.

### Memory Mirrors

You can save and recall the mirror positions through the memory function. See **Saving a Preset Position** (page 130).

# Exterior Mirrors

---

## FOLDING THE EXTERIOR MIRRORS

When locking or unlocking your vehicle from outside, the exterior mirrors fold and unfold automatically if the mirror adjustment control is not in the power fold position.

**Note:** *You can adjust this function on the touchscreen.*



Rotate the mirror adjustment control to the power fold position. The mirrors fold after a few seconds.

**Note:** *The mirrors remain folded until you rotate the mirror adjustment control to another position.*

## EXTERIOR MIRRORS VIDEOS

Animations are shown to enhance the written content and not intended to replace it. We recommend that you read the Owner's Manual for full details.

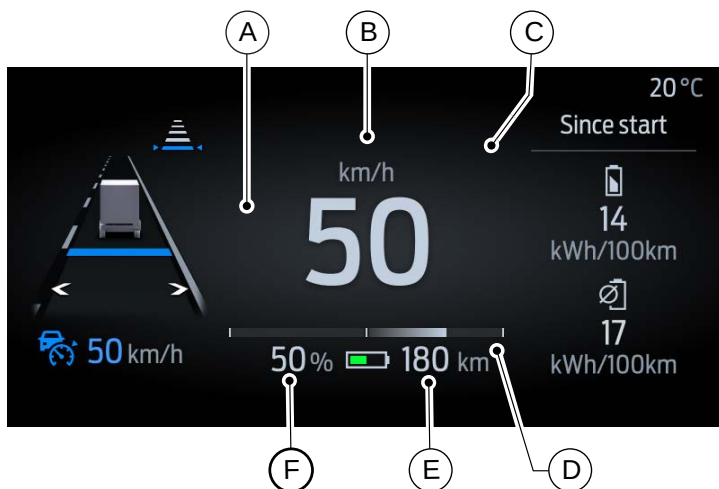
[Explorer Folding the Exterior Mirrors Video Link](#)

For more information scan here:



# Instrument Cluster

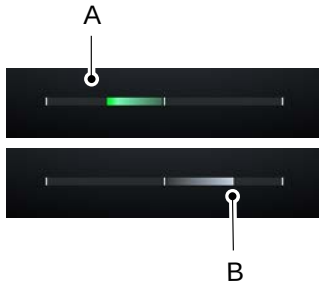
## INSTRUMENT CLUSTER OVERVIEW



- A Instrument cluster display.
- B Speedometer.
- C Pop-up message display area.
- D Power gauge.
- E Vehicle driving range.
- F High voltage battery gauge.

# Instrument Cluster

## POWER GAUGE



- A Brake energy recuperation.
- B Traction power.

The bar displays the current drive power dynamically, either as brake energy recuperation in green to the left or traction power in gray to the right.

**Note:** The bar appears only when the vehicle is moving.

## SPEEDOMETER

Indicates the speed of the vehicle to the driver at any given moment.

## VEHICLE RANGE DISPLAY

Displays the approximate range your vehicle can travel with the energy currently onboard. Estimates vary based on the energy used when driving.

Changes in driving pattern can cause the values to not only decrease but also increase or stay constant for periods of time.

The amount of energy being used when driving is affected by:

- Mild or aggressive acceleration or braking.
- Your vehicle's speed.
- Use of accessories, such as climate control.
- Ambient temperature and weather conditions.
- Driving in a city or on a highway.
- Driving on hilly road conditions.
- Towing.

The available energy capacity in the high voltage battery is affected by cold temperatures and battery degradation. See **Preserving Your High Voltage Battery** (page 142).

**Note:** It is normal for the vehicle range estimates to vary due to changes in average energy usage and battery temperature. This could cause different range estimates each time you fully charge your battery. See **Maximizing Your Driving Range** (page 283).

**Note:** When you leave your vehicle unplugged, it periodically uses energy from the high voltage battery to recharge the 12-volt accessory battery, resulting in a reduced driving range.

## HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY GAUGE

Displays the high voltage battery state of charge in the form of a percentage. A full or 100% charge represents the total amount of energy you can get from plugging your vehicle in.

The indicator is normally green. When you reach a low battery condition, the indicator illuminates amber. When the battery is depleted the indicator is red.

## **WHAT ARE THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER WARNING LAMPS**

Warning lamps alert you to a vehicle condition that could become serious. Some lamps illuminate when you start your vehicle to make sure they work. If any lamps remain on after starting your vehicle, refer to the respective system warning lamp for further information.

## **WHAT ARE THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER INDICATORS**

Indicators notify you of various features that are active on your vehicle.



# Instrument Cluster Display

## USING THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY CONTROLS

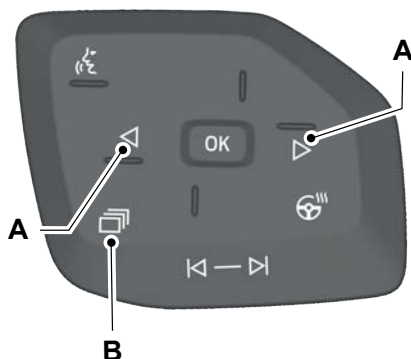


**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.



**WARNING:** If the instrument cluster does not display, stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Do not use the vehicle until it has been repaired. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

The controls are on the steering wheel.



- A Left and right arrow buttons.
- B View button.

### Left and Right Arrow Buttons

Press to select one of the views.

### View Button

Press to get a simplified view. If you press again, it displays the last selected view.

## CUSTOMIZING THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY

The digital instrument cluster can display different views. Depending on the selected view, some data is hidden.

# Instrument Cluster Display

## Welcome View



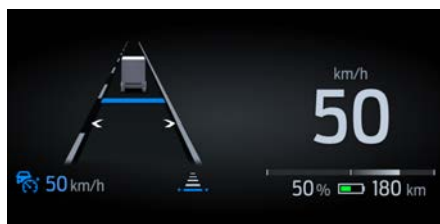
It displays general vehicle status information such as mileage, battery state of charge, odometer and vehicle driving range.

## Home View



It displays information including driving assistance, speed, trip summary or navigation data and general information.

## Driver Assistance View



It displays the status of the active driver assistance system and general information.

## Trip Summary View



It displays the trip summary and general information.

# Instrument Cluster Display

## Navigation View



It displays navigation data and general information.

## Setting Views

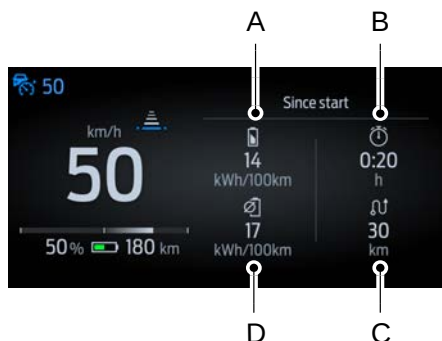


Press these buttons to select the preferred view.



## TRIP SUMMARY

Depending on the selected view, the trip summary displays on the instrument cluster display.



- A Power consumption.
- B Trip time.
- C Trip distance.
- D Average power consumption.

## Trip Summary Views

The digital instrument cluster can display three different trip summary views. Each view displays different values.



Press the OK button on the steering wheel to select the preferred view.

# Instrument Cluster Display

---

**Note:** *If you press the OK button for longer than one second, it resets the long-term data.*

## CHANGING THE LANGUAGE

You can change the language using the touchscreen.

1.  Press this icon.

2.  Press this icon.

3. Press **Language**.

4. Select a language.



You can also control this vehicle feature with voice interaction.

See **Voice Interaction**

**Examples** (page 363).

## CHANGING THE MEASUREMENT UNIT

You can change the measurement unit using the touchscreen.

1.  Press this icon.

2.  Press this icon.

3. Press **Units**.

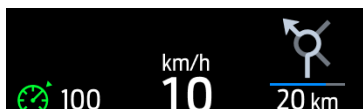
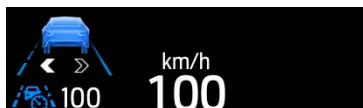
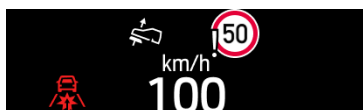
4. Select a measurement unit.

# Head Up Display

## WHAT IS THE HEAD UP DISPLAY

The system displays information on the windshield in your field of vision, allowing you to keep your eyes on the road. You can select which information the system displays.

## HEAD UP DISPLAY OVERVIEW



The system can display different vehicle information depending on the selected data such as speed, navigation, and driving assistance.

## SWITCHING THE HEAD UP DISPLAY ON AND OFF

You can switch the system on and off on the touchscreen.

1.  Press this icon on the touchscreen.

2.  Press this icon.
3. Press Interior.
4. Press Display.
5. Press Head-up display.
6. Follow the prompts on the screen to switch the Head-up display on or off.

## HEAD UP DISPLAY SETTINGS

1.  Press this icon on the touchscreen.
2.  Press this icon.
3. Press Interior.
4. Press Display.
5. Press Head-up display.
6. Follow the prompts on the screen to set your preferred settings.

**Note:** Assume the correct seating position when configuring the head-up display.

## Additional settings

You can configure additional settings for the head-up display. To configure additional setting in the head-up display press Display Contents.

# Remote Start

## USING REMOTE START



**WARNING:** Do not keep electrical devices plugged in the power outlet whenever the device is not in use. Power outlets power up during remote start.

The system allows you to remotely start the climatization in your vehicle to heat or cool the interior to the last set temperature.

Follow the instructions in the vehicle app to start and stop your vehicle.

**Note:** *The vehicle app must be paired with your vehicle to remotely start using the app.*

**Note:** *The vehicle remains secured when you have remotely started the vehicle. A valid key must be inside your vehicle to switch your vehicle on and drive your vehicle.*

**Note:** *If your vehicle is plugged in during remote start, it uses energy from your charging source.*

Remote start does not work under the following conditions:

- Your vehicle is already on.
- The high voltage battery state of charge is below 10%.

**Note:** *To use remote start, make sure that the modem is enabled. See **Enabling and Disabling the Modem** (page 352).*

## REMOTE START SETTINGS

You can adjust the settings on the touchscreen.

1.  Press this icon.

2.  Press this icon.

3. In the pre-conditioning menu you can adjust the cabin temperature, turn on the automatic window heater, the heated seats and the heated steering wheel.

**Note:** *These settings also apply to selected departure times.*



Press the button next to a menu option for more information.

# Climate Control

## SWITCHING CLIMATE CONTROL ON AND OFF



Press this icon on the touchscreen to access the climate controls.



Press this icon.

## SWITCHING RECIRCULATED AIR ON AND OFF



Press this icon on the touchscreen to recirculate air currently in the passenger compartment.

**Note:** *Recirculated air may turn off automatically, or prevent you from switching on in all air flow modes except MAX A/C to reduce the risk of fogging. Recirculation may also turn on and off automatically in various air distribution control combinations to improve heating or cooling efficiency.*

## SWITCHING AIR CONDITIONING ON AND OFF



Press this icon on the touchscreen.

**Note:** *Under certain conditions, the air conditioning compressor could continue to operate after you switch air conditioning off.*

**Note:** *To keep the system and its components fully functional, switch air conditioning on and let your vehicle idle at least once per month for a minimum of two minutes.*

## Stationary Air Conditioning

### When switching your vehicle off

When you activate this feature, the air conditioning system remains active for about 30 minutes after you switch your vehicle off.

1. Switch on the electric parking brake and unbuckle the driver seatbelt.
2. The Exit menu appears on the touchscreen.

3.



Switch the feature on or off.

### When unlocking your vehicle

When you activate this feature, the air conditioning system turns on automatically when you unlock your vehicle.

You can activate the feature on the touchscreen.

1.



Press this icon.

2.



Press this icon.

3.



Press this icon and from the drop down menu switch the feature on or off.

**Note:** *These features are only available if the high-voltage battery is sufficiently charged or the vehicle is plugged into a charging source.*

**Note:** *The driving range of the vehicle reduces if you operate stationary air conditioning without plugging your vehicle into a charging source.*



# Climate Control

## SWITCHING DEFROST ON AND OFF



Press this icon on the touchscreen to access the climate controls.



Press this icon.

## SWITCHING MAXIMUM DEFROST ON AND OFF



Press this button on the instrument panel next to the steering wheel.

Air flows through the windshield air vents, and the blower motor adjusts to the highest speed.

You can also use this setting to defog and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice.

**Note:** You can also adjust this function on the touchscreen through the climate control menu or add it as a favorite icon to the climate bar on the home screen.

**Note:** If you select recirculated air, maximum defrost switches off automatically.

## SWITCHING MAXIMUM COOLING ON AND OFF



Press this icon on the touchscreen to access the climate controls.



Press this icon.

**Note:** When you switch maximum cooling off, air conditioning remains on.

**Note:** In certain conditions, for example, cold weather, maximum cooling may not activate or could run slow when switched on. This helps reduce power consumption from the battery.

## SWITCHING THE HEATED REAR WINDOW ON AND OFF



Press this button on the instrument panel next to the steering wheel.

**Note:** You can also adjust this function on the touchscreen through the climate control menu or add it as a favorite icon to the climate bar on the home screen.

**Note:** Do not use harsh chemicals, razor blades or other sharp objects to clean or remove decals from the inside of the heated rear window as this could cause damage to the heated rear window grid lines not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

## SETTING THE BLOWER MOTOR SPEED

-  Press this icon to access the climate controls.
-  Adjust the blower motor speed using the + or - buttons.

## SWITCHING THE HEATED MIRRORS ON AND OFF



Rotate the mirror adjustment control to the heating position. The heating starts after a few seconds.

# Climate Control

**Note:** Do not remove ice from the mirrors with a scraper or adjust the mirror glass when it is frozen in place.

**Note:** Do not clean the mirror housing or glass with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products. The vehicle warranty may not cover damage caused to the mirror housing or glass.

## SETTING THE TEMPERATURE

Adjust the temperature using the **+** or **-** buttons on either side of the climate control to set the temperature for that side.



You can also control this vehicle feature with voice interaction. See **Voice Interaction**

**Examples** (page 363).

## DIRECTING THE FLOW OF AIR

### Directing Air to the Windshield Air Vents



Press this icon on the touchscreen to access the climate controls.



Press this icon.

### Directing Air to the Instrument Panel Air Vents



Press this icon on the touchscreen to access the climate controls.



Press this icon.

### Directing Air to the Footwell Air Vents



Press this icon on the touchscreen to access the climate controls.



Press this icon.

### Comfort

The Comfort functions remain on for a short time.

1.



Press this icon on the touchscreen to access the climate controls.

2. Press **Comfort**.



Press this icon to defog and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice.



Press this icon to direct fresh air from the outside into the vehicle interior.



Press this icon to direct cold air into the footwell air vents.



Press this icon to direct warm air into the footwell air vents.



Press this icon to direct warm air into the steering wheel area.

**Note:** When you press this icon, the steering wheel heating switches on automatically and sets level depending on the ambient temperature.

**Note:** When you press this icon and the steering wheel heating is already on, it remains active and sets level depending on the ambient temperature.

# Climate Control



Press this icon to increase interior cooling for a short period of time.



Press this icon to increase interior heating for a short period of time.

## AUTO MODE

### SWITCHING AUTO MODE ON AND OFF



Press this icon on the touchscreen to access the climate controls.



Press this icon to select auto mode.

Adjust the blower motor control or air distribution control to switch auto mode off.

## AUTO MODE INDICATORS

| Auto Mode Indicator | Description                                                                                                                                                            |
|---------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Low                 | The blower motor speed is reduced. Use this setting to minimize the amount of noise from the blower motor. This setting increases the time taken to cool the interior. |
| Medium              | The blower motor speed is moderate.                                                                                                                                    |
| High                | The blower motor speed is increased. Use this setting to reduce the time taken to cool the interior. This setting increases the amount of noise from the blower motor. |

# Climate Control

## SWITCHING DUAL MODE ON AND OFF

The default setting is on.



To switch dual mode off, press this icon on the touchscreen to access the climate controls.



Press this icon.

**Note:** When dual mode is off, setting the temperature using the driver side controls, sets the temperature for both sides.

**Note:** Setting the temperature using the passenger side controls, sets the passenger temperature and switches dual mode on.

## CLIMATE CONTROL HINTS

### General Hints

- Use of the climate system will reduce your vehicles driving range. Conserve battery charge by using climate control features when necessary.
- Prolonged use of recirculated air may cause the windows to fog up.
- You may feel a small amount of air from the footwell air vents regardless of the air distribution setting.
- To reduce humidity build-up inside your vehicle, do not drive with the system switched off or with recirculated air always switched on.
- Remove any snow, ice or leaves from the air intake area at the base of the windshield.
- To improve the time to reach a comfortable temperature in hot weather, drive with the windows open until you feel cold air through the air vents.

### Automatic Climate Control

- Adjusting the settings when your vehicle interior is extremely hot or cold is not necessary. Automatic mode is best recommended to maintain set temperature.
- The system adjusts to heat or cool the interior to the temperature you select as quickly as possible.
- For the system to function efficiently, the instrument panel and side air vents should be fully open.
- If you press **AUTO** during cold outside temperatures, the system directs air flow to the windshield and side window air vents. The blower motor speed may reduce until the air warms.
- If you press **AUTO** during hot temperatures and the inside of the vehicle is hot, the system uses recirculated air to maximize interior cooling. Blower motor speed may also reduce until the air cools.

### Quickly Heating the Interior

1. Press **AUTO**.
2. Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer.

### Recommended Settings for Heating

1. Press **AUTO**.
2. Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer. Use 22°C (72°F) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

### Quickly Cooling the Interior

Press **MAX A/C**.

### Recommended Settings for Cooling

1. Press **AUTO**.

# Climate Control

---

2. Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer. Use 22°C (72°F) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

## **Defogging the Side Windows in Cold Weather**

1. Press defrost or maximum defrost.
2. Adjust the temperature control to the setting you prefer. Use 22°C (72°F) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

# Interior Air Quality

---

## AUTO AIR REFRESH

### MANUALLY REFRESHING THE INTERIOR AIR



Press the button on the touchscreen.



Press this icon.

The enhanced air filter with activated carbon in the climate control system reduces the amount of pollutants and allergens that enter the vehicle interior.

### AUTOMATICALLY REFRESHING THE INTERIOR AIR

If the cabin air recirculates continuously for a longer period of time, climate control settings could change temporarily to help outside air flow into the cabin.

# Front Seats

## FRONT SEAT PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Sitting improperly, out of position or with the seatback reclined too far can take weight off the seat cushion and affect the decision of the passenger sensing system, resulting in serious injury or death in the event of a crash. Always sit upright against your seat back, with your feet on the floor.



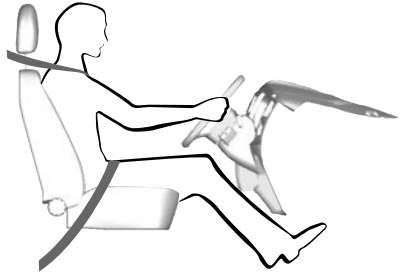
**WARNING:** Do not recline the seat backrest too far as this can cause the occupant to slide under the seatbelt, resulting in personal injury in the event of a crash.



**WARNING:** Do not place objects higher than the top of the seat backrest. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or crash.



**WARNING:** Do not adjust the driver seat or seat backrest when your vehicle is moving. This may result in sudden seat movement, causing the loss of control of your vehicle.



When you use them properly, the seat, head restraint, seatbelt and airbags will provide optimum protection in the event of a crash.

We recommend that you follow these guidelines:

- Sit in an upright position with the base of your spine as far back as possible.
- Do not recline the seat backrest so that your torso is more than 30 degree from the upright position.
- Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head and as far forward as possible. Make sure that you remain comfortable.
- Keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. We recommend a minimum of 25 cm (10 in) between your breastbone and the airbag cover.
- Hold the steering wheel with your arms slightly bent.
- Bend your legs slightly so that you can press the pedals fully.
- Position the shoulder strap of the seatbelt over the center of your shoulder and position the lap strap tightly across your hips.

## SITTING IN THE CORRECT POSITION



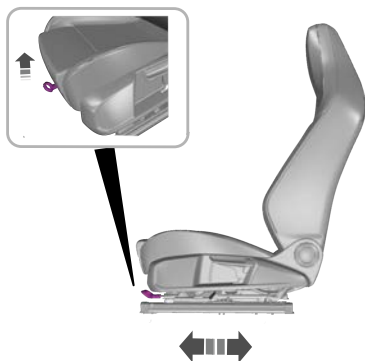
**WARNING:** Always sit upright against your seatback with your feet on the floor.

# Front Seats

Make sure that your driving position is comfortable and that you can maintain full control of your vehicle.

## MANUAL SEATS

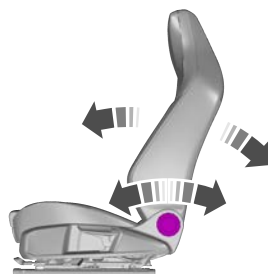
### MOVING THE SEAT BACKWARD AND FORWARD



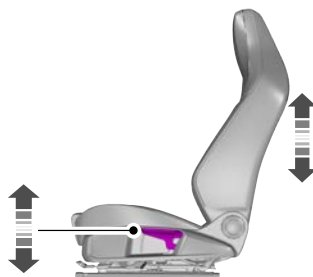
### ADJUSTING THE SEAT BACKREST



**WARNING:** Do not adjust the driver seat or seat backrest when your vehicle is moving. This may result in sudden seat movement, causing the loss of control of your vehicle.



### ADJUSTING THE SEAT HEIGHT



## POWER SEATS

### ADJUSTING THE HEAD RESTRAINT - VEHICLES WITH: FRONT 4-WAY HEAD RESTRAINTS



**WARNING:** Fully adjust the head restraint before you sit in or operate your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraint when your vehicle is moving.



## Front Seats



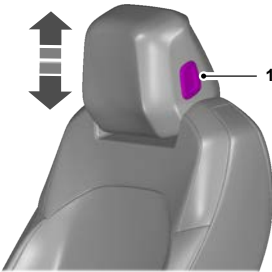
**WARNING:** The head restraint is a safety device. Whenever possible it should be installed and properly adjusted when the seat is occupied. Failure to adjust the head restraint properly could reduce its effectiveness during certain impacts.



**WARNING:** Adjust the head restraints for all passengers before you drive your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraints when your vehicle is moving.

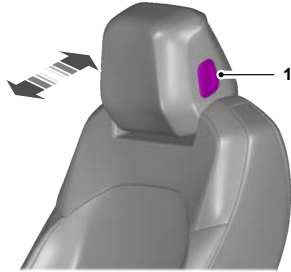
Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head.

### Adjusting the Height of the Head Restraint



1. Press the side button.
2. Push the head restraint upward or downward.
3. Make sure that the head restraint locks into place.

### Moving the Head Restraint Forward and Backward



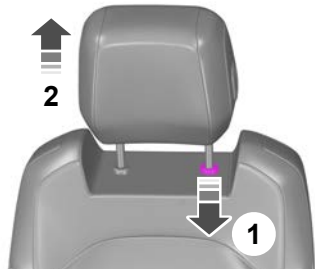
1. Press the side button.
2. Move the head restraint backward.
3. Make sure that the head restraint locks into place.

You can move the head restraint forward without pressing the side button.

### REMOVING THE HEAD RESTRAINT - VEHICLES WITH: FRONT 4-WAY HEAD RESTRAINTS



**WARNING:** Do not remove the head restraint from an occupied seat.

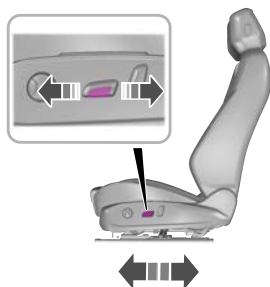


1. Press the ring around the head restraint to release it.

# Front Seats

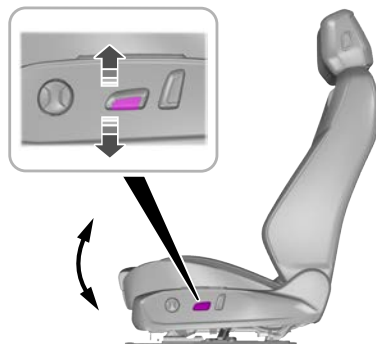
2. Remove the head restraint.

## MOVING THE SEAT BACKWARD AND FORWARD

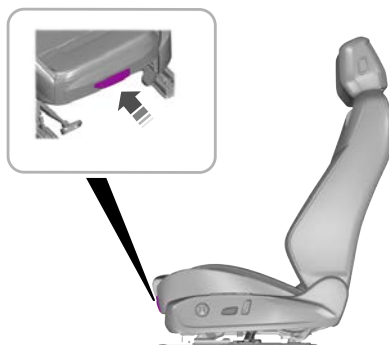


## ADJUSTING THE SEAT CUSHION

### Adjusting the Seat Cushion Angle



### Adjusting the Seat Cushion Length (If Equipped)



## Remotely adjusting the passenger seat



Press this icon.



Press this icon.

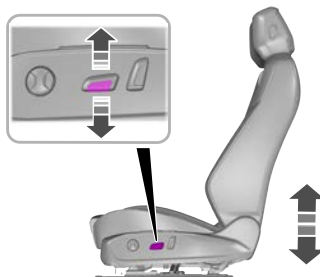
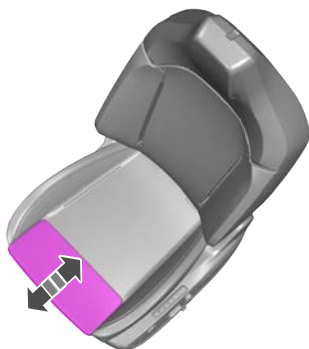


Press this icon.

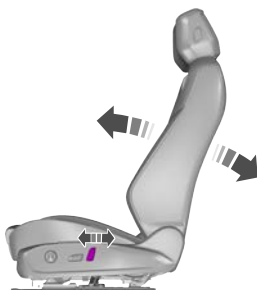
You can adjust the passenger seat using the driver seat controls or synchronize the passenger seat with the driver seat.

# Front Seats

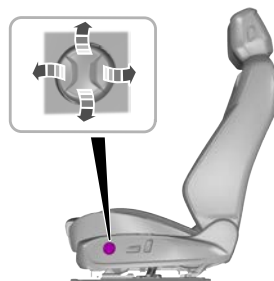
## ADJUSTING THE SEAT HEIGHT



## ADJUSTING THE SEAT BACKREST



## ADJUSTING THE LUMBAR SUPPORT



## MASSAGE SEATS

### SWITCHING THE MESSAGE SEATS ON AND OFF

 **WARNING:** Do not adjust the driver seat when your vehicle is moving.

## Front Seats



1. Start your vehicle.
2. Press the massage button on the outside of the driver and passenger seats.

The massage function is switched off automatically after approximately 20 minutes.

**Note:** If you want to switch the massage function off before 20 minutes, press the massage button again.

### ADJUSTING THE MASSAGE SEAT SETTINGS



Press this icon.



Press this icon.



Press this icon.

Select the preferred settings.

### HEATED SEATS

#### HEATED SEAT PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Use caution when using the heated seat if you are unable to feel pain to your skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, alcohol use, exhaustion or other physical conditions. The heated seat could cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



**WARNING:** Do not poke sharp objects into the seat cushion or seat backrest. This could damage the heated seat element and cause it to overheat. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



**WARNING:** Do not place anything on the seat that blocks the heat, for example a seat cover or a cushion. This could cause the seat to overheat. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Do not:

- Place heavy objects on the seat.
- Operate the heated seat if water or any other liquid spills on the seat. Allow the seat to dry.

### SWITCHING THE HEATED SEATS ON AND OFF

The heated seat button is on the climate control assembly.

The vehicle must be on to use this feature.

## Front Seats

---



Repeatedly press the button to adjust the temperature. The more indicators that display, the warmer the temperature of the seat.

**Note:** *The heated seats may turn on when you start your vehicle if they were on when you switched your vehicle off.*

### FRONT SEATS VIDEOS

Animations are shown to enhance the written content and not intended to replace it. We recommend that you read the Owner's Manual for full details.

[Explorer Adjusting the Front Seat Video Link](#)

For more information scan here:



[Explorer Adjusting The Power Seat Video Link](#)

For more information scan here:

# Rear Seats

## MANUAL SEATS

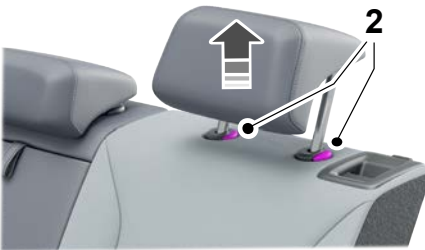
### ADJUSTING THE HEAD RESTRAINT



1. Press the button to push the head restraint down.
2. You can pull the head restraint up without pressing the button.

**Note:** The head restraint must engage securely into position.

### REMOVING THE HEAD RESTRAINT



1. Push the head restraint all the way up.
2. Press and hold both release buttons to remove the head restraint.

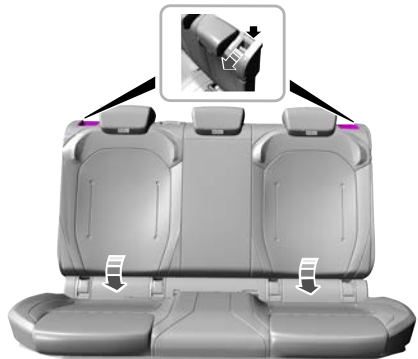
## FOLDING THE SEAT BACKREST



**WARNING:** To prevent possible damage to the seat or seatbelts, make sure that the seatbelts are not fastened before folding the seatback.



**WARNING:** When folding or unfolding the seats, take care not to get your fingers caught between the seat backrest and seat frame. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.



1. Push the head restraint all the way down.
2. Pull the release button and fold the rear seat backrest forward at the same time.

**Note:** The respective section of the rear seat backrest is unlocked when you can see the red indicator.

3. Fold back the rear seat backrest and push it firmly into the catch until it engages securely into place.

**Note:** The red indicator should no longer be visible.

# Rear Seats

---

## UNFOLDING THE SEAT BACKREST



**WARNING:** When unfolding the seat backrests, make sure that the seatbelts are not trapped behind the seat.



**WARNING:** Make sure that the seats and the seat backrests are secure and fully locked in their catches.

Lift the seat backrest up to unfold it. Make sure the seat latch engages.

## REAR SEATS VIDEOS

Animations are shown to enhance the written content and not intended to replace it. We recommend that you read the Owner's Manual for full details.

[Explorer Folding and Unfolding the Seat Backrest Video Link](#)

For more information scan here:



# Rear Occupant Alert System

## WHAT IS THE REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM

The rear occupant alert system monitors vehicle conditions and notifies you to check for rear seat occupants when you switch the vehicle off.

## HOW DOES THE REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM WORK

If you switch off the vehicle a message appears in the touchscreen to indicate the potential presence of an occupant in the rear seat.

The system also monitors when you open and close the rear doors to indicate the potential presence of an occupant in the rear seat.

A message appears in the instrument cluster display and an audible warning sounds when you switch the vehicle off if any of the following occurs:

- You open or close a rear door.
- You switch the vehicle on within 10 minutes of a rear door opening and closing.

**Note:** The audible warning can be switched on and off in the touchscreen.

## REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** On hot days, the temperature inside the vehicle can rise very quickly. Exposure of people or animals to these high temperatures for even a short time can cause death or serious heat related injuries, including brain damage. Small children are particularly at risk.



**WARNING:** Do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

## REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

The system does not detect the presence of objects or passengers in the rear seat. It monitors when rear doors are opened and closed.

**Note:** It is possible to receive an alert when there is no rear seat occupant, but alert conditions are met.

**Note:** It is possible to receive no alert when there is an occupant in the rear seat, if alert conditions are not met. For example, if a rear seat occupant does not enter the vehicle through a rear door.

## SWITCHING REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM ON AND OFF

You cannot switch the rear occupant alert system off, only the audible warning.

**Note:** If you switch the audible warning off, a warning message still displays for a short period of time.



# Rear Occupant Alert System

---

1.  Press this icon.
2.  Press this icon.
3. Press Interior.
4. Press Child Presence Detection.
5. Make the required adjustments.

# Memory Function

## WHAT IS THE MEMORY FUNCTION

The memory function recalls the position of these features:

- Driver seat and power mirrors.
- Passenger seat.

## MEMORY FUNCTION PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Before activating the memory seat, make sure that the area immediately surrounding the seat is clear of obstructions and that all occupants are clear of moving parts.



**WARNING:** Do not use the memory function when your vehicle is moving.

## LOCATING THE MEMORY FUNCTION BUTTONS



The memory function buttons are on the outside of the driver and passenger power seats.

## SAVING A PRESET POSITION

1. Power your vehicle on.
2. Adjust the front seats and exterior mirrors.

# Memory Function



3. **SET** Press this button for longer than one second.
4. Within approximately 10 seconds, press the memory function button 1 or 2.
5. A tone sounds to confirm that the settings are saved.

## RECALLING A PRESET POSITION

There are two possible ways to recall the preset position.

1. Vehicle is stationary, the vehicle is off and one door is open.

2. Press the desired memory button.

**Note:** The adjustment process is cancelled, if one of the memory buttons is pressed again.

Another way of recalling the Preset Position:

1. Vehicle is stationary, and the vehicle is on or all doors are closed.
2. Press the desired memory button, until the desired position has been reached.

**Note:** The front passenger exterior mirror leaves the position saved for reversing automatically if the vehicle drives forwards at a speed of at least around 10 km/h (6 mph) or if you turn the rotary knob for the exterior mirror out of the R position and into another position.

# USB Ports

## LOCATING THE USB PORTS

The following is a list of potential USB port locations across all our vehicles. Some may not apply to your specific vehicle.

- In the center console.
- On the interior mirror base.
- In the center console stowage compartment.
- In the compartment under the center armrest.
- Behind the movable touchscreen.
- On the rear of the center console.



USB Ports marked with this icon are charge only ports that do not have data transfer capabilities.



USB Ports marked with this icon have data transfer capabilities. These USB ports can also charge devices.

**Note:** Not all USB ports in your vehicle have data transfer capabilities.

**Note:** We recommend using only USB-IF certified cables and adapters. Non-certified cables and adapters may not work.

## PLAYING MEDIA USING THE USB PORT



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any

hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

1. Connect your device to a data transfer USB port.
2.  Press this icon on the touchscreen.
3. Press **Sources**.
4. Press **My media**.
5. Select your USB device.



Press to start or resume playback.

**Note:** If USB is your previously selected source, music starts automatically.



Press to pause playback.

**Note:** Not all sources can be paused. Mute function is available for sources that cannot be paused.



Press to skip to the next track.  
Press and hold to fast forward through the track.



Press once to return to the beginning of a track. Repeatedly press to return to previous tracks.

Press and hold to fast rewind through the track.



You can also control this vehicle feature with voice interaction. See **Voice Interaction**

**Examples** (page 363).

# USB Ports

---

## CHARGING A DEVICE

Connect your device to the USB port.

### Data Transfer USB Ports



You can charge your device through the data transfer USB port when the touchscreen is on.

### Charge Only USB Ports



You can charge your device through the charge only USB port when the vehicle is in accessory mode or when the vehicle is on.

# Power Outlet

## POWER OUTLET PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Do not use a power point for operating a cigar lighter. Incorrect use of the power points can cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty, and can result in fire or serious injury.



**WARNING:** If the electrical device gets too hot, switch off the device immediately and disconnect it from the socket.

## LOCATING THE POWER OUTLETS

The power outlet is on the right-hand side of the luggage compartment.

When you switch the vehicle on, you can use the socket to power 12 V appliances with a maximum current rating of 15 A. Do not use the power point over the vehicle capacity of 12 V DC 180 W or a fuse could blow. Do not plug in any device that supplies power to the vehicle through the power points. This could result in damage to vehicle systems. Do not hang any accessory from the accessory plug. Always keep the power point caps closed when not in use. Do not insert objects other than an accessory plug into the power point.

**Note:** *The 12V socket only works when the vehicle is switched on. If you move away from your vehicle, it switches off automatically after a short time.*

To prevent the battery from running out of charge:

- Do not use the power point longer than necessary when the vehicle is off.
- Do not leave devices plugged in overnight or when you park your vehicle for extended periods.

# Wireless Accessory Charger

## WHAT IS THE WIRELESS ACCESSORY CHARGER

The wireless accessory charger allows you to charge one compatible Qi wireless charging device on the charging area.

## WIRELESS ACCESSORY CHARGER PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Wireless charging devices can affect the operation of implanted medical devices, including cardiac pacemakers. If you have any implanted medical devices, we recommend that you consult with your physician.



**WARNING:** Remove all metal objects like coins and keys from the charging surface and remove any metal objects attached to your mobile phone before placing the device on the charging surface. Some mobile devices or cases may attract metal objects. Metal objects on the charging surface or attached to the phone may become hot while charging is active. If an object is left on or near the charging surface or attached to the phone while the device is charging, let the objects cool before removing to prevent personal injury.

Keep the charging area clean and remove foreign objects prior to charging a device.

Do not place items with a magnetic strip or radio-frequency identification chip, for example passports, parking tickets, transportation passes or credit cards, near the charging area when charging a device. Damage could occur to the magnetic strip or radio-frequency identification chip.

Do not place metal objects, for example remote controls, coins and candy wrappers, on or near the charging area when charging a device. Metal objects may heat up and degrade the charging performance, in addition to causing interruptions in charging.

Charging could be interrupted, degraded, or could stop if any of the following occur:

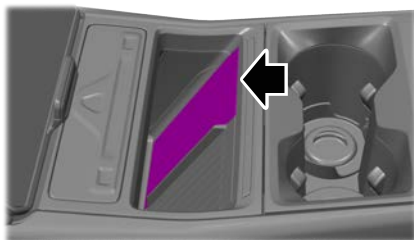
- The system detects a foreign object.
- The device is misaligned on the charging area.
- The device moves on the active charging area when the vehicle is in motion.
- The vehicle ambient temperature is too high.
- You attempt to charge a non-Qi compatible device on the wireless charger.

**Note:** During charging, the device and the charger could heat up, this is normal. If the battery gets hotter than usual, the device may stop charging.

## LOCATING THE WIRELESS ACCESSORY CHARGER



The charging area is on the center console, within the area shown.



# Wireless Accessory Charger

---

## CHARGING A WIRELESS DEVICE

Always place only one Qi-enabled mobile device with a maximum dimension of 80 mm (3.1 in) x 150 mm (5.9 in) on the center of the wireless charging surface with the charging side down. The charging stops after your device reaches a full charge.

**Note:** *Qi-enabled mobile devices with larger dimensions, small flip phones, mobile phones with a protruding camera or a protective case containing metal may not be charged robustly.*

You can use the charger when the vehicle is in accessory mode, when the vehicle is running or when the touchscreen is on.



Displays on the status bar when wireless charging is in progress.



Displays on the status bar when wireless charging has been interrupted.

**Note:** *The charging performance may be affected if your device is in a case. It may be necessary to remove the case to wirelessly charge your device.*

**Note:** *Software and firmware updates may affect device compatibility, including the use of unofficial software or firmware. You should verify charging functionality with your specific devices in-vehicle.*



# Storage

## CUP HOLDERS

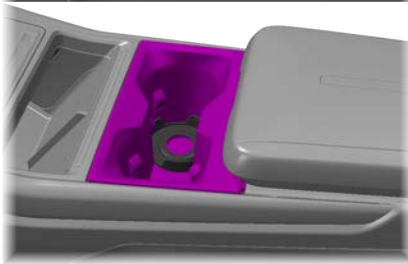
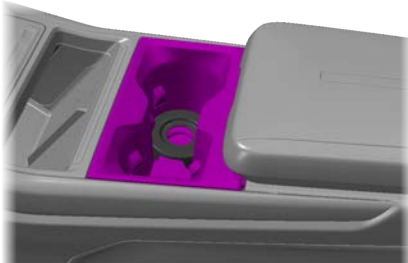
### CUP HOLDER PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Use caution when stowing items or hot drinks in the cup holders. Items could become loose or spill during hard braking, acceleration or crashes. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

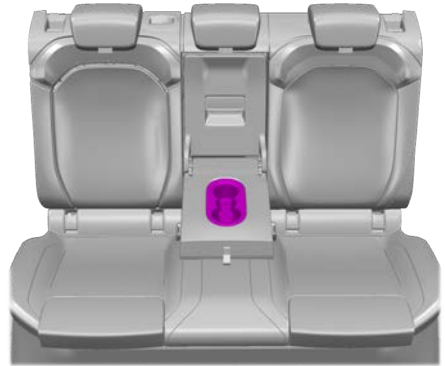
### LOCATING THE CUP HOLDERS

#### Center Console



Flip the cup holder insert over to accommodate shorter or longer cups.

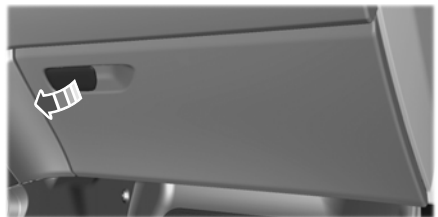
#### Rear Seat Armrest



Fold the armrest down to use the armrest and cup holder.

## GLOVE COMPARTMENT

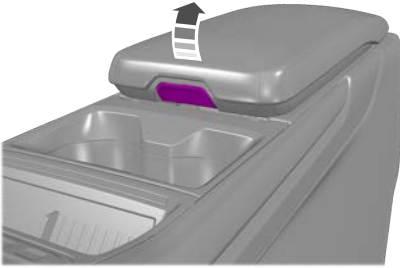
### OPENING THE GLOVE COMPARTMENT



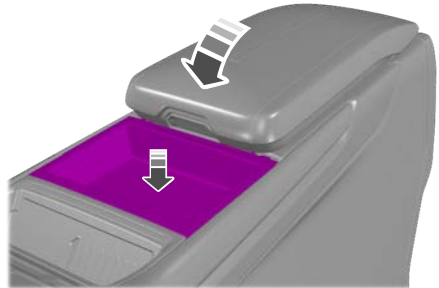
# Storage

## CENTER CONSOLE

### OPENING THE CENTER CONSOLE

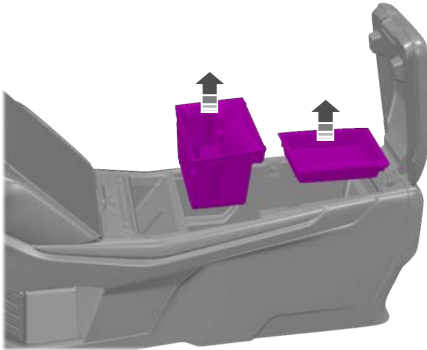


To open the center console push the button and lift up.

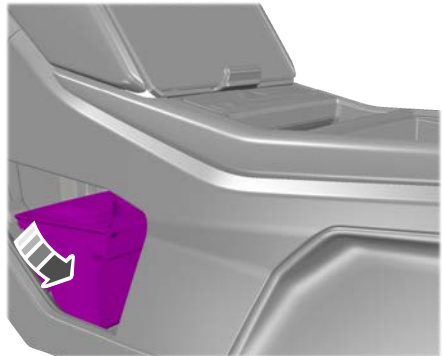


You can insert the tray in the place of the cup holder assembly.

### ADJUSTING THE CENTER CONSOLE

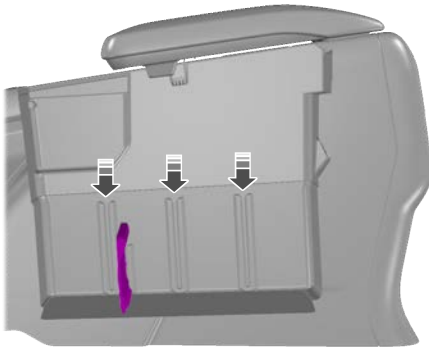


You can relocate the cup holder assembly and the tray to access the center console storage space.



You can stow the cup holder assembly in the front when not in use.

# Storage



You can divide the center console storage space by inserting the plastic ice scraper in one of the side retaining slots.

## CENTER CONSOLE VIDEOS

Animations are shown to enhance the written content and not intended to replace it. We recommend that you read the Owner's Manual for full details.

For more information scan here:

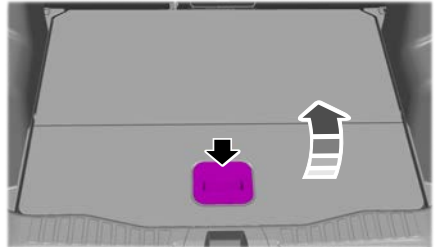
[Explorer Adjusting the Center Console Video Link](#)



## UNDER FLOOR STORAGE

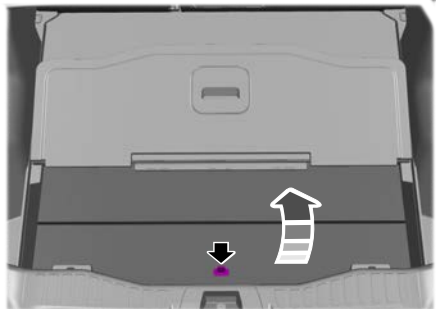
### LOCATING THE LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT UNDER FLOOR STORAGE

#### Below the Upper Load Floor



Space is available below the upper load floor to stow items.

#### Below the Lower Load Floor



Additional space is available below the lower load floor to stow items.

# Starting and Powering Off

## STARTING AND POWERING OFF PRECAUTIONS

- The system may not function if the remote control is close to metal objects or electronic devices, such as keys or a cell phone.
- A valid remote control must be inside your vehicle to switch the power on and start your vehicle.
- Remote controls left inside your vehicle when locked are disabled. A message may appear in the instrument cluster display indicating that there is no key detected when you try to start your vehicle. Press the unlock button on the remote control to enable it, and then start your vehicle.
- Make sure all occupants fasten their seat belt.
- Make sure the parking brake is on.
- Make sure the vehicle is in park (P).
- Make sure there is no charge cord coupler connected to the vehicle.

## STARTING THE VEHICLE

The push button start is located on the right-hand side of the steering column.



1. Press the push button start once.

**Note:** Do not touch the accelerator pedal.

2. Shift into the desired selector position with the brake pedal depressed.

**Note:** Your vehicle is ready to drive.

Alternatively, you can press and release the brake pedal to start the vehicle.

## POWERING OFF



**WARNING:** Do not switch off your vehicle when it is moving. This results in a significant decrease in braking and steering assistance. If the vehicle is switched off, some electrical circuits, for example airbags, could also turn off. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

**Note:** If you unintentionally switch your vehicle off, shift into neutral (N) and restart your vehicle.

When your vehicle stationary and powered on or in accessory mode:

- Press and release the push button start without pressing the brake pedal. This shuts off the vehicle and all electrical accessories and applies the parking brake.
- Leave the vehicle when its stationary and the electric parking brake is applied. This shuts off the vehicle and all electrical accessories.

## Emergency Power Off

Only in a case of emergency, when your vehicle is moving:

- Press the push button start and hold for at least one second.

The vehicle shifts into neutral (N) and brakes until it comes to a safe stop. After a complete stop, it shifts into park (P) automatically.

# Starting and Powering Off

## Automatic Power Off

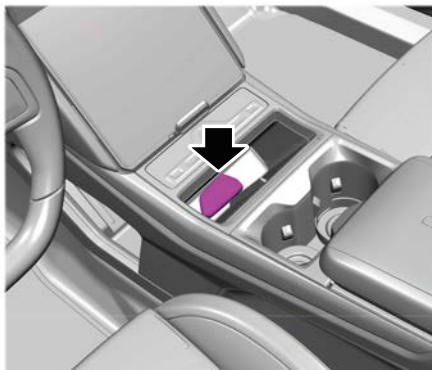
- If the vehicle is on and the driver moves away from the vehicle carrying the remote control, the vehicle switches off automatically after a short period of time.
- If the hood is opened when the vehicle power is on, the power will not be switched off automatically.

The vehicle automatically powers off if the electric parking brake is applied and two of the following occur:

- The driver door is open.
- The driver seatbelt is not fastened.
- The sensors do not detect the driver in the seat.

## ACCESSING THE PASSIVE KEY BACKUP POSITION

If you are unable to start your vehicle with an authorized remote control or the remote control battery is depleted, follow the steps below.



1. Place the remote control in the floor console storage tray as shown with the buttons facing upward.

2. Press and hold the brake pedal.
3. Press the push button start.

## STARTING AND POWERING OFF – TROUBLESHOOTING

### STARTING AND POWERING OFF – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

#### Why does the vehicle not start?

- The system does not function if the remote control frequencies are jammed, or if the remote control battery has no charge. See **Accessing the Passive Key Backup Position** (page 141).
- The system does not function if the 12-volt battery has no charge. 12-volt battery depletion can occur if the high voltage battery state of charge is low.

# High Voltage Battery

## WHAT IS THE HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY

The high voltage battery is a highly sophisticated lithium ion battery system, used to store electric energy to power your vehicle.

## HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** This battery pack should only be serviced by an authorized electric vehicle technician. Improper handling can result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not point the jet from a high-pressure sprayer straight at the orange high voltage cables or at components belonging to the high voltage battery system or the 12 volt battery system. The incorrect use of a high-pressure sprayer can cause damage and lead to personal injury.



**WARNING:** Keep your hands and clothing clear of the cooling fan.

Your vehicle consists of various high-voltage components and wiring. All of the high-voltage power flows through specific wiring assemblies labeled as such or covered with a solid orange convolute, or orange striped tape, or both. Do not come in contact with these components.

## PRESERVING YOUR HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY

When using the battery at a low state of charge, your vehicle could start disabling accessory features to protect battery life.

If your vehicle reaches a 0% state of charge, recharge your vehicle as soon as possible.

In everyday use it is acceptable to use the full state of charge window, however there are a few best practices we recommend in order to maintain the health and life of your battery.

## Overnight Charging

You can increase the longevity and performance of your high voltage battery by using the charge scheduling and departure and comfort settings on your touchscreen or in the FordPass app.

With Charge Scheduling you can improve the high voltage battery's longevity by delaying the start of charging and setting a maximum charging limit. We recommend to set your preferred charging times to start at least 2-3 hours after your typical plug in time. This allows the battery to cool before charging begins. Additionally, setting the maximum charge level to be less than 100% for everyday usage reduces strain on the battery.

You can improve driving range and performance by scheduling departure times and cabin comfort level with the Departure and Comfort features. This warms or cools the cabin and also conditions the battery to ensure best driving range and performance by the set departure time.

## DC Charging

Frequent use of DC charging could result in reducing your battery's efficiency and lifespan. See **DC Charging** (page 162).

## Storage Temperature

Storing your vehicle in temperatures between 1°C (34°F) and 45°C (113°F) is the most beneficial for the high voltage battery.

# High Voltage Battery

At temperatures just above the freezing point or lower, you should plug your vehicle in to maintain battery performance and maximize driving range.

## Storage State of Charge

You can increase the battery life by maintaining your state of charge below 100%. When you park your vehicle for an extended period of 30 days or more, we recommend your battery to be at approximately 50% state of charge. Storing your vehicle's high voltage battery at higher states of charge is less favorable than storing at lower states of charge.

**Note:** To achieve this state of charge for storage, you can drive your vehicle down to 50% and set a charge limit for your location. See **Charging Settings** (page 166).

## Battery Care Mode

The recommended upper battery charge limit depends on the ambient temperature of the vehicle and is automatically set to 80% or 90% by the Battery Care Mode. An individual setting above this value is automatically reset at the next charging process.

1.  Press this icon.

2.  Press this icon.

3.  Press this icon.

4. Activate the Battery Care Mode function.

**Note:** A battery charge limit that is higher than the recommended value can be used for charging with an active departure time in the Infotainment system. Battery Care Mode remains activated for other charging operations.

**Note:** The Battery Care Mode is only available for the extended range Nickel Cobalt Manganese (NCM) batteries. The standard range LFP battery does not require this function and can be charged regularly to 100%.

**Note:** After the vehicle is parked, the radiator fan may run audibly for some time. The temperature of the high voltage battery is optimised

**Note:** To protect the high voltage battery, Ford recommends using Battery Care Mode in everyday use.

## Vehicle Standing Times

- Park the vehicle with a charge level of between 40% and 70% if the vehicle will be left standing for a long time.
- In the case of long standing times, avoid high outside temperatures if possible, particularly with exposure to direct sunlight.
- Use the stationary air conditioning in good time before your journey to improve comfort and performance (depending on vehicle equipment), particularly at temperatures below around -15°C (5°F) See **Switching Air Conditioning On and Off** (page 112).

**Note:** If the vehicle is parked and left stationary for an extended period with low charge level, total discharge of the high voltage battery can occur. This can lead to irreversible damage to the high voltage battery.

**Note:** Charge the high voltage battery at the latest after four months if the vehicle is not used for an extended period.



Pay attention to the yellow indicator lamp on the instrument cluster. See **12V Battery – Warning Lamps** (page 311).

# High Voltage Battery

## Battery State of Health

Battery state of health is an indicator of the current maximum energy storage capacity of your vehicle's high voltage battery compared to its capacity when new and displays as a percentage.

- A 100% battery state of health means the battery can store its original certified energy.
- A lower battery state of health percentage indicates a decrease in the battery's maximum energy storage. This reduction is a normal process over your vehicle's life, occurring due to age and usage, and will affect your maximum driving range.

You can check the battery state of health on the center display.

1.  Press this icon.

2. Press Vehicle.

3. Press Vehicle Data.

 Battery State of Health is the same as State of Certified Energy (SOCE). For more information press this icon on the touchscreen.

## Manual refresh and update of the Battery State of Health Value

It is recommended to perform a manual calibration if the parameter "Distance since last calculated" shows a value higher than 10000 km (about 6214 mi) or this value was determined more than 6 months ago.

Preconditions:

- Longer rest period for the vehicle is planned.
- The state of charge of the high-voltage battery is between 3% and 10%.

- Ambient temperature is at least about +0 °C (about +32 °F).
  - Vehicle is at a charging station.
1. Park the vehicle in the immediate vicinity of a charging station if possible.
  2. Observe the rest period according to the ambient temperature: — at least about +0 °C (about +32 °F): 4 hours. — at least approximately +10 °C (approximately +50 °F): 2 hours. — at least about +25 °C (about +77 °F): 1 hour.
  3. After the rest period, charge the high-voltage battery to 100% state of charge.
  4. After the charging process has ended, park the vehicle in a nearby car park and observe a further rest period according to the ambient temperature: — at least about +0 °C (about +32 °F): 2 hours. — at least approximately +10 °C (approximately +50 °F): 1 hour. — at least about +25 °C (about +77 °F): 30 minutes.

If the calibration is successful, the value is last determined before reset.

## RECYCLING AND DISPOSING OF THE HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY

Please recycle in accordance with local regulations.



# High Voltage Battery

## ENERGY CONSUMPTION REGULATIONS

### Energy Consumption (Off-Vehicle Charging)

The declared WLTP energy consumptions and electric range are determined according to the technical requirements and specifications of the European Regulations (EC) 715/2007 and (EU) 2017/1151 as last amended. The applied standard test procedures enable comparison between different vehicle types and different manufacturers.

In accordance with the Worldwide Harmonized Light Vehicles Test Procedure (WLTP) the certified electric range can be achieved with a fully charged battery depending on the existing series and battery configuration. The actual electric range may vary due to various factors such as weather conditions, driving style, route profile, vehicle condition, age and condition of the lithium-ion battery.

### European Directive 1999/94/EC

In addition to the fuel/energy efficiency of a car, driving behaviour as well as other non-technical factors play a role in determining a car's fuel/energy consumption, CO<sub>2</sub> emissions and electric range. CO<sub>2</sub> is the main greenhouse gas responsible for global warming. A guide on fuel economy and CO<sub>2</sub> emissions which contains data for all new passenger car models is available at any point of sale free of charge.

## ENERGY CONSUMPTION FIGURES

| Electric Range City   | Electric Range        | Electric Energy Consumption | Weighted, Combined CO <sub>2</sub> |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------------|------------------------------------|
| km (mi)               | km (mi)               | kWh/100km (mi/kWh)          | g/km                               |
| 517 - 816 (320 - 507) | 369 - 640 (229 - 397) | 19.3 - 13.5 (3.2 - 4.6)     | 0                                  |

You can find the energy consumption figures for your vehicle in the Certificate of Conformity or in the online version of the Owner's Manual. See **About This Publication** (page 13).

# High Voltage Battery

## HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY – TROUBLESHOOTING



Illuminates when the powertrain requires service. Have the system checked as soon as

possible.

## HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY – WARNING LAMPS

## HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY – INFORMATION MESSAGES

| Message                                                                    | Details                                                                                                             |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Air conditioning for the vehicle interior switched off. Cooling battery... | Displays when the high voltage battery temperature is too high. If the problem persists, have your vehicle checked. |
| Stop safely now. Exit vehicle in safe area.                                | Safely stop and exit your vehicle as soon as possible, then seek roadside assistance.                               |

# Charging Your Vehicle

## CHARGING EQUIPMENT PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Read all instructions and warnings in this publication before using the charging equipment.



**WARNING:** Do not use an electrical outlet that is immersed or submerged in water, snow, or in an electrical storm. When using the charging equipment, avoid moisture, water and snow at all times. Failure to follow these instructions could result in fire, electric shock, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** The wall outlet and charging equipment must be in good condition and installed to comply with provisions of up-to-date local codes and regulations. Do not use an ungrounded wall outlet. Have a qualified, licensed electrician install and check the wall outlet, if you suspect that it is not properly grounded, the connection feels loose, or the outlet is damaged. The wall plug must fit firmly and fully into the outlet. Do not use extension cords, surge protectors, timers or other adapters. Failure to follow these instructions could result in electric shock, property damage, personal injury, or death.



**WARNING:** Do not drop the control box or coupler. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury, fire, electric shock, death or property damage.



**WARNING:** Visually inspect the charging equipment before each use. Do not use the charging equipment if it is damaged. Do not attempt to open or repair any part of the charging equipment components as it will not

operate. Charging equipment components contain critical safety devices in the wall outlet plug and connector that cannot be serviced. Contact your local dealer for assistance. Failure to follow these instructions could result in fire, electric shock, or personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not use the charging equipment in temperatures outside of the operation range of -30°C (-22°F) to 50°C (122°F). Store the charging equipment in a clean dry place between the temperatures of -30°C (-22°F) to 85°C (185°F). Stow the control box indoors on the hanger or all the charging equipment in the bag after use to prevent damage to the charging equipment and personal injury.



**WARNING:** Do not connect or disconnect any pluggable components of the charging equipment when in use or charging. Do not put fingers or any object into the electric charge coupler. Supervise any children in the vicinity of the charging equipment when plugged into the wall outlet. Failure to follow these instructions could result in damage to the charging equipment, fire, electric shock, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** This equipment has arcing or sparking parts. Do not expose to flammable vapors. Position this equipment at least 450 mm (18 in) above the floor.



**WARNING:** High voltage is present in your electric meter housing and power distribution panel. Contact with high voltage can result in fire, electric shock, personal injury or death.

# Charging Your Vehicle

Please note that you can trigger the power liftgate while swiping the charging cable under the rear bumper.

## CHARGING EQUIPMENT OVERVIEW

### Public Charge Cord

Your vehicle comes with a public charge cord located in the rear luggage compartment under the load floor.



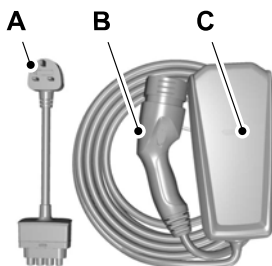
You can charge your high voltage battery with the public charge cord at a public AC charge station that has no cables attached. See **Charging Using Your Public Charge Cord** (page 160).

### Universal Home Charge Cord (If Equipped)

The universal home charge cord allows you to charge your vehicle's high-voltage battery using a standard household outlet. See **Charging at Home** (page 156).

The universal home charge cord can be purchased separately as an accessory. It has a low power connector to use with a 230V outlet. A high power connector can also be purchased separately. Connector type varies by market. For more information, contact your authorized dealer.

We recommend that you use genuine Ford equipment specifically designed for your vehicle. In any other cases, read and follow the manufacturer's instructions.



- A Connector.
- B Coupler.
- C Control Box.

You must plug the connector into the control box first. Then plug the connector into the household outlet, and then plug into the vehicle charge port.

The power indicator illuminates blue when the connector is properly inserted into the control box and dedicated wall outlet.

**Note:** To insert the connector, firmly grasp the connector by the cable or plug and push into the control box until an audible click is heard. Make sure the connector is fully inserted and flush with the control box before inserting it into the outlet. Improper insertion causes a longer charge session or faults.

**Note:** Follow the installation instructions provided with the charger.

**Note:** We recommend using the supplied plugs and connectors.

**Note:** Use the correct connector for the appropriate market in which you are charging your vehicle.

# Charging Your Vehicle

**Note:** If you do not use a dedicated circuit, the circuit breaker could trip or open. If a dedicated circuit is not available, contact a licensed professional electrician regarding the installation of a dedicated outlet.

**Note:** The universal home charge cord will not charge and give a fault indication, if ground is not present.

**Note:** Plug the connector for the universal home charge cord directly into the wall plug receptacle. Do not plug the universal home charge cord into any form of extension cord.

**Note:** If the wall bracket is not used for mounting the charging equipment, plug the charging equipment into an outlet closer to ground.

**Note:** Handle the coupler with care. Do not drop the coupler. The coupler and the cable should be mounted to the wall when not in use.

| Specification Type       | Specification Value           |
|--------------------------|-------------------------------|
| Charger Model            | IEC                           |
| Voltage                  | 230 VAC                       |
| Maximum Current          | 32 amps max continuous        |
| Frequency                | 50Hz                          |
| Power draw when idle     | < 2 Watts                     |
| Power draw when charging | < 4 Watts                     |
| Cable length             | 6.1 m (20 ft)                 |
| Weight                   | 4.2 kg (9.3 lb)               |
| Operating temperature    | -30°C (-22°F) to 50°C (122°F) |
| Storage temperature      | -30°C (-22°F) to 85°C (185°F) |

| Specification Type | Specification Value |
|--------------------|---------------------|
| Environmental      | IP65                |
| Ventilation        | Not required        |
| Maximum Altitude   | 4000m               |

## Universal Home Charge Cord Auto-Restart

Auto-restart helps make sure that your vehicle is charged and ready for use when needed. A charge could be interrupted if errors are detected. Charging resumes once the error is no longer detected. The red indicator illuminates during an error condition.

The exception to the immediate auto-restart is when the interruption is due to a charger ground fault circuit interruption (GFCI) event. The charger attempts to restart 15 minutes after a (GFCI) event. After the fourth attempt to restart, the charger shuts down and the red indicator stays on.

If the fault persists, do not continue to try to charge your vehicle. Contact your authorized dealer.

## MOVING AND STORAGE INSTRUCTIONS

Make sure you wrap the universal home charge cord after charging. Store the universal home charge cord in the storage bag supplied with the universal home charge cord when not in use.

When charging is complete, replace the universal home charge cord in the rear luggage compartment under the load floor.

**Note:** Do not hold the universal home charge cord by the power cable. Hold the complete unit and carefully place back in the storage bag.

# Charging Your Vehicle

**Note:** To remove the connector, firmly grasp the connector by the cable or plug and pull away from the control box.

## CARE INSTRUCTIONS

Do not use cleaners or solvents as this could damage the universal home charge cord. Do not place stress on the charger cables. If the unit overheats, remove the universal home charge cord from direct sunlight.

## SAFETY FEATURES

The charger includes the following safety features to protect against the risk of electric shock:

- **Service ground check:** The charger constantly checks for the presence of a service ground connection. If the service ground ever fails, the charger's red indicator illuminates and shuts down power to the vehicle.
- **Thermal event sensor:** Charger module senses out-of-ordinary thermal events and decreases charging current or shut the unit down if required.
- **GFCI protection:** The charger has a ground fault circuit interruption (GFCI) reaction system to protect against electric shock. If the charger module detects an output ground fault, it shuts down power to the output cable and the red indicator illuminates.
- **Insulation:** The charger module, connector, cable assembly, and charge coupler are completely insulated, no exposed live parts, to protect against electric shock.

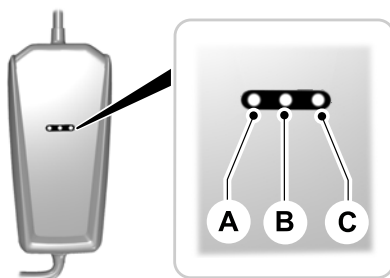
- **Unintentional disconnection:** The charge coupler is designed to minimize unintentional disconnection. A pilot signal wire in the cable and charge coupler eliminates the possibility of electric shock when not connected to a vehicle or if an unintended disconnect occurs during a charge. Disconnection during charging is safe.

## CHARGING EQUIPMENT INDICATORS (IF EQUIPPED)

The universal home charge cord has three LED indicators on the control box.

The universal home charge cord is an optional equipment. For more information, contact your authorized dealer.

We recommend that you use genuine Ford equipment specifically designed for your vehicle. In any other cases, read and follow the manufacturer's instructions.



- A Amber fault indicator.
- B Blue status indicator.
- C Red trouble indicator.

# Charging Your Vehicle

**Note:** When first plugged into a wall outlet the amber, blue and red indicators blink once. Then the blue indicator turns on, followed by a blink of the red indicator. After, the blue indicator turns off then back on. This cycle happens twice if a different connector is used from a previous charge.

## Unpowered

| AMBER | BLUE | RED | Details                                        |
|-------|------|-----|------------------------------------------------|
| OFF   | OFF  | OFF | The universal home charge cord is not powered. |

Make sure the outlet is operational, and the circuit breaker is in the ON position or try using another outlet. Ensure the connector is fully inserted into the universal home charge cord. Ensure the plug is not severely degraded. If the error persists, contact us.

## Charging

| AMBER | BLUE    | RED | Details                                     |
|-------|---------|-----|---------------------------------------------|
| OFF   | PULSING | OFF | The universal home charge cord is charging. |

No action required.

## Standby

| AMBER | BLUE | RED | Details                                                                                                                                        |
|-------|------|-----|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| OFF   | ON   | OFF | The universal home charge cord is powered and ready to charge. At the current time the universal home charge cord is not charging the vehicle. |

# Charging Your Vehicle

If you expect the universal home charge cord to be charging the vehicle, make sure the vehicle coupler is properly inserted into the vehicle. Check and adjust your charging

time preferences in the on screen display. If your vehicle is still not charging, contact us.

## Startup and Rebooting

| AMBER | BLUE | RED | Details                                                                   |
|-------|------|-----|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ON    | ON   | ON  | The universal home charge cord is recovering after encountering an error. |

The universal home charge cord is powering up or recovering after an error. If the universal home charge cord cycles for more than 2-3 minutes, unplug the vehicle coupler. Unplug and replug in the connector. If the issue persists, contact us.

## Charging Reduced, Internal Issue

| AMBER | BLUE    | RED | Details                                                                          |
|-------|---------|-----|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ON    | PULSING | OFF | The universal home charge cord is charging at a reduced rate due to overheating. |

Make sure the connector and the control box are properly connected. Unplug and replug in the connector. If the universal home charge cord is warm or in a hot environment, try charging in a cooler area. Try a different outlet. Try a different connector if you have one available. If the error persists, contact us.



# Charging Your Vehicle

## Charging Reduced, AC Plug Or Wall Outlet

| AMBER | BLUE    | RED | Details                                                                                                              |
|-------|---------|-----|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| BLINK | PULSING | OFF | The universal home charge cord is charging at a reduced rate due to overheating of the connector or the wall outlet. |

Make sure the connector and control box are properly connected. Unplug and replug in the connector. Ensure the connector is fully seated. If the universal home charge cord is warm or in a hot environment, try charging in a cooler area. Try a different outlet. Try a different connector if you have one available. Have a licensed electrician check for missing ground, utility under or overvoltage. If the error persists, contact us.

## User Troubleshooting

| AMBER | BLUE | RED | Details                                                                               |
|-------|------|-----|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ON    | OFF  | OFF | The universal home charge cord has encountered a fault that requires troubleshooting. |

Make sure the connector and control box are properly connected. Unplug and replug in the connector. If the universal home charge cord is warm or in a hot environment, try charging in a cooler area. Try a different outlet. Try a different connector if you have one available. If the error persists, contact us.

# Charging Your Vehicle

## Non - Recoverable Fault

| AMBER | BLUE | RED | Details                                                                                |
|-------|------|-----|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| OFF   | OFF  | ON  | There is an internal fault in the universal home charge cord that cannot be recovered. |

Try a different connector if you have one available. If error persists, contact us.

## Non - Recoverable Fault

| AMBER | BLUE | RED   | Details                                                               |
|-------|------|-------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| OFF   | OFF  | BLINK | There is an internal fault in the connector that cannot be recovered. |

Try using another connector if you have one available. If not, contact us about obtaining a replacement. If your warranty has expired, you can order a replacement from your dealer.

## Ground Leakage Fault

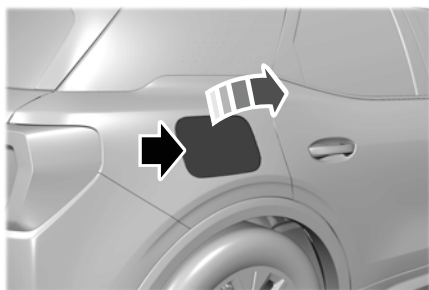
| AMBER | BLUE | RED     | Details                                                          |
|-------|------|---------|------------------------------------------------------------------|
| OFF   | OFF  | PULSING | Electrical current is leaking through a potentially unsafe path. |

**Note:** When plugging into an unfamiliar wall outlet, let the vehicle charge for several minutes before leaving it unattended. The red indicator illuminates if it is not charging. The unit turns off if the breaker or infrastructure ground fault circuit interrupter (GFCI) is tripped. You can view your vehicle charging status remotely via the Ford app.

## LOCATING THE CHARGE PORT

The charge port is above the rear wheel well on the right side of your vehicle. To open, press the center left-hand edge of the charge port door and then release.

# Charging Your Vehicle



**Note:** Do not apply excessive force. Forcing the door open or closed damages the charge port.

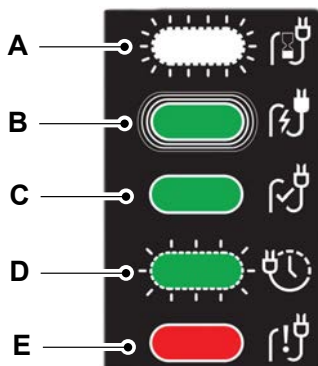
## CHARGE PORT INDICATORS



The charge status indicator is next to the charging port behind the charge port door. It indicates the charge status of the high voltage battery in your vehicle.

A label on the inside of the charge port door lists the indicator statuses.

## Indicator Statuses



- A **Lit up white:** no charging function is active. **Blinking white:** charging connector detected. **Flashing white:** the vehicle is establishing the connection with the charging infrastructure. Charging process is being prepared.
- B **Pulsating green:** the high-voltage battery is being charged.
- C **Lit up green:** charging completed successfully.
- D **Blinking green:** a timer-controlled charging operation is active but not yet started.
- E **Lit up red:** charging system is faulty. **Red and green light up alternately:** reduced charging speed to protect the vehicle due to a present fault. For example, charging connector is not fully inserted.

# Charging Your Vehicle

**Note:** Charging faults are identified by the color red on the charge status indicator. Faults can occur within the vehicle charging system or outside the vehicle, such as with the universal home charge cord, charge station or electrical supply.

## AC CHARGING

### CHARGING AT HOME

The universal home charge cord is an optional equipment. For more information, contact your authorized dealer.

We recommend that you use genuine Ford equipment specifically designed for your vehicle. In any other cases, read and follow the manufacturer's instructions.



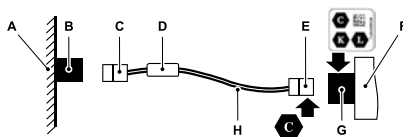
AC charging is the preferred method of charging. AC charging preserves the health of the high voltage battery for longer high voltage battery life.

When AC charging, keep your vehicle plugged in when outside temperatures are very high or low. This enables the system to maintain the high voltage battery for best performance.

**CAUTION: TO REDUCE THE RISK OF FIRE** - The plug must be properly grounded. Use a dedicated circuit. If you do not use a dedicated circuit, the circuit breaker could trip or open. If you do not have a dedicated circuit, contact a licensed professional electrician for proper installation.

You must unwrap the universal home charge cord completely before charging.

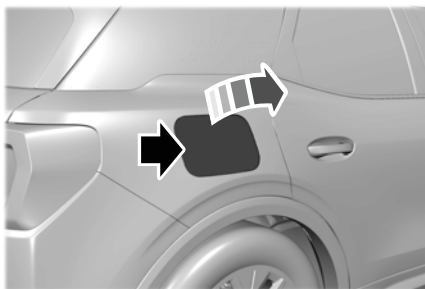
When using the universal home charge cord, plug the charge coupler into the vehicle charge port where the same identifier symbol can be seen.



- A Mains.
- B Socket Outlet (Household).
- C Plug.
- D Control box.
- E Charge coupler.
- F Vehicle.
- G Charge port receptacle.
- H Universal home charge cord.

1. Put your vehicle in park (P).

**Note:** Your vehicle must be in park (P).

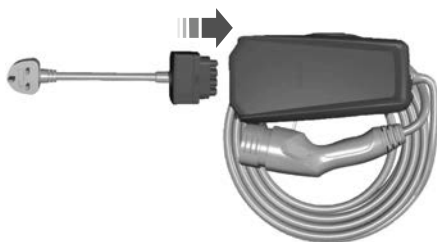


2. Press the center left-hand edge of the charge port door and then release to open the door.

**Note:** Your vehicle must be unlocked to open the charge port door.

3. Select the appropriate connector for the wall outlet you will use.

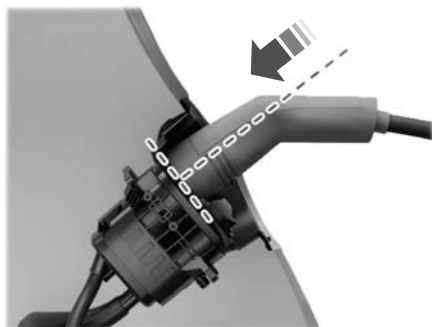
## Charging Your Vehicle



4. Plug the connector into the universal home charge cord control box.

**Note:** To insert the connector, firmly grasp the connector by the cable or plug and push into the control box until it clicks. Make sure the connector is fully inserted and flush with the outlet. Improper insertion will cause a longer charge session or faults.

5. Plug the connector into the wall outlet before connecting the charge coupler to your vehicle's charge port.
6. Confirm that the universal home charge cord's LEDs illuminate to the control box.
7. Plug the charge coupler into the charge port receptacle on your vehicle.



**Note:** Your vehicle locks to the charge coupler.

**Note:** When the handle is properly engaged the charge port indicator flashes in white. It pulses green when the high-voltage battery is charging.

**Note:** When you plug in your vehicle, it starts charging to 100% by default unless scheduled charging was previously set up for this location.

**Note:** Charge times vary depending on outside air temperature, power level, charger type, and location in which you are charging.

# Charging Your Vehicle

**Note:** If charging for your vehicle fails, please contact the Customer Relationship Center. To ensure superior service, please take note of the serial number when contacting customer support.

For more information, visit <https://www.owner.ford.com>.

## Stopping Charging

1. Unlock your vehicle with your key. See **Operating the Doors From Outside Your Vehicle** (page 54).

**Note:** The charge port indicator illuminates white when the coupler is ready to disconnect.

2. Remove the charge coupler handle from the vehicle.

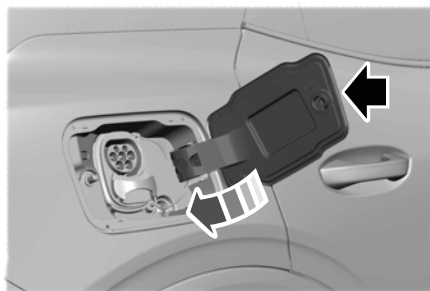
**Note:** If the charging equipment remains connected, the charge port relocks in 60 seconds and charging resumes.

**Note:** Do not attempt to remove the charge coupler before you unlock it. Do not use any kind of tool to try and remove a locked charge coupler. Doing so could damage your vehicle and the charge coupler.

**Note:** You cannot unlock the charge coupler handle unless the vehicle remote is near the vehicle.

**Note:** If the cord does not unlock, press the unlock button on the remote control once or try the manual release method. See **Charge Coupler Manual Release** (page 165).

**Note:** You cannot shift your vehicle out of park (P) until you remove the charge coupler handle.



3. Press the center left-hand edge of the charge port door to close.

## CHARGING IN PUBLIC

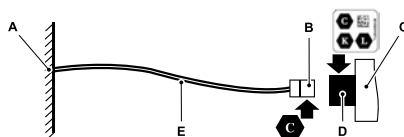
Charging at an AC charge station with cables attached.



AC charging is the preferred method of charging. AC charging preserves the health of the high voltage battery for longer high voltage battery life.

When AC charging, keep your vehicle plugged in when outside temperatures are very high or low. This enables the system to maintain the high voltage battery for best performance.

When using an AC charge station with cables attached, choose charge station cord coupler where the same identifier symbol can be seen.



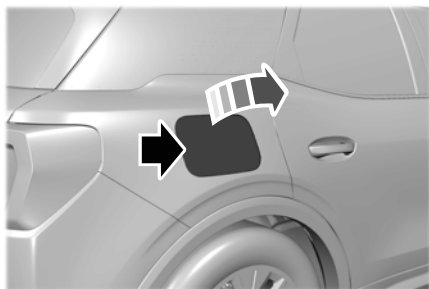
- A AC charge station.
- B Charge coupler.
- C Vehicle.

# Charging Your Vehicle

- D Charge port receptacle.
- E Cable.

1. Put your vehicle in park (P).

**Note:** Your vehicle must be in park (P) to charge.

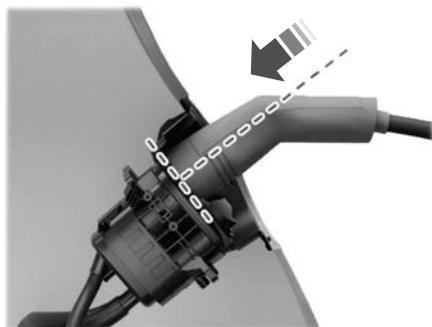


2. Press the center left-hand edge of the charge port door and then release to open the door.

**Note:** Your vehicle must be unlocked to open the charge port door.



3. Select the appropriate charge station coupler.
4. Plug the charge coupler into the charge port receptacle on your vehicle.



**Note:** Your vehicle locks to the charge coupler.

**Note:** When the handle is properly engaged the charge port indicator flashes in white. It pulses green when the high-voltage battery is charging.

**Note:** When you plug in your vehicle, it starts charging to 100% by default unless scheduled charging was previously set up for this location.

**Note:** Charge times vary depending on outside air temperature, power level, charger type, and location in which you are charging.

# Charging Your Vehicle

Information about public charge stations, pricing, power levels and real time availability is available on the touchscreen or the vehicle app. Rates for charging will vary by power level, provider, location, and time of day.

When charging your vehicle at a BlueOval Charge Network station, use the vehicle app or the BlueOval RFID charge card to activate and pay for charging. If the charging station is not in the BlueOval Charge Network, use the directions on the charge station to activate the charger.

For more information, visit <https://www.owner.ford.com>.

## Stopping Charging

1. Unlock your vehicle with your key. See **Operating the Doors From Outside Your Vehicle** (page 54).

**Note:** The charge port indicator illuminates white when the coupler is ready to disconnect.

2. Remove the charge coupler handle from the vehicle.

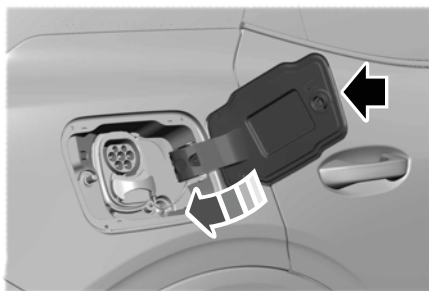
**Note:** If the charging equipment remains connected, the charge port relocks in 60 seconds and charging resumes.

**Note:** Do not attempt to remove the charge coupler before you unlock it. Do not use any kind of tool to try and remove a locked charge coupler. Doing so could damage your vehicle and the charge coupler.

**Note:** You cannot unlock the charge coupler handle unless the vehicle remote is near the vehicle.

**Note:** If the cord does not unlock, press the unlock button on the remote control once.

**Note:** You cannot shift your vehicle out of park (P) until you remove the charge coupler handle.



3. Press the center left-hand edge of the charge port door to close.

## CHARGING USING YOUR PUBLIC CHARGE CORD

Charging at an AC charge station without cables attached or at a wall box.

Charge wall boxes are optional equipment. For more information, contact your authorized dealer.



AC charging is the preferred method of charging. AC charging preserves the health of the high voltage battery for longer high voltage battery life.

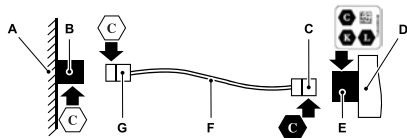
When AC charging, keep your vehicle plugged in when outside temperatures are very high or low. This enables the system to maintain the high voltage battery for best performance.

When using an AC charge station without cables attached, plug your public charge cord into the charge station and the vehicle charge port where the same identifier symbol can be seen.

You must unwrap the public charge cord completely before charging.



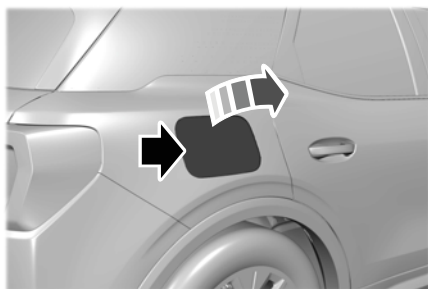
# Charging Your Vehicle



- A AC charge station.
- B Charge station port.
- C Vehicle charge coupler.
- D Vehicle.
- E Charge port receptacle.
- F Public charge cable.
- G Charge station charge coupler.

1. Put your vehicle in park (P).

**Note:** Your vehicle must be in park (P) to charge.



2. Press the center left-hand edge of the charge port door and then release to open the door.

**Note:** Your vehicle must be unlocked to open the charge port door.

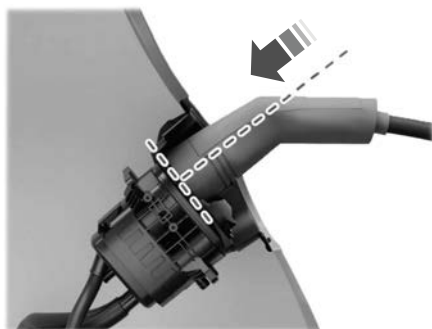
3. Select the appropriate charge station port.



4. Plug your public charge cord into the charge station port.

**Note:** To insert the coupler, firmly grasp the handle and push into the charge station port.

5. Plug the charge coupler into the charge port receptacle on your vehicle.



# Charging Your Vehicle

**Note:** Your vehicle locks to the charge coupler.

**Note:** When the handle is properly engaged the charge port indicator flashes in white. It pulses green when the high-voltage battery is charging.

**Note:** When you plug in your vehicle, it starts charging to 100% by default unless scheduled charging was previously set up for this location.

**Note:** Charge times vary depending on outside air temperature, power level, charger type, and location in which you are charging.

Information about public charge stations, pricing, power levels and real time availability is available on the touchscreen or the vehicle app. Rates for charging will vary by power level, provider, location, and time of day.

When charging your vehicle at a BlueOval Charge Network station, use the vehicle app or the BlueOval RFID charge card to activate and pay for charging. If the charging station is not in the BlueOval Charge Network, use the directions on the charge station to activate the charger.

For more information, visit <https://www.owner.ford.com>.

## Stopping Charging

1. Unlock your vehicle with your key. See **Operating the Doors From Outside Your Vehicle** (page 54).

**Note:** The charge port indicator illuminates white when the coupler is ready to disconnect.

2. Remove the charge coupler handle from the vehicle.

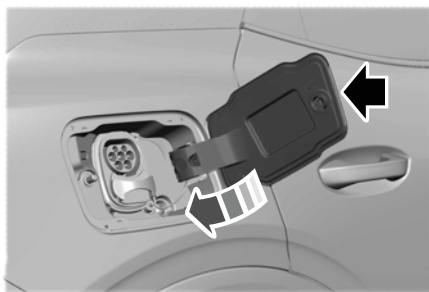
**Note:** If the charging equipment remains connected, the charge port relocks in 60 seconds and charging resumes.

**Note:** Do not attempt to remove the charge coupler before you unlock it. Do not use any kind of tool to try and remove a locked charge coupler. Doing so could damage your vehicle and the charge coupler.

**Note:** You cannot unlock the charge coupler handle unless the vehicle remote is near the vehicle.

**Note:** If the cord does not unlock, press the unlock button on the remote control once.

**Note:** You cannot shift your vehicle out of park (P) until you remove the charge coupler handle.



3. Press the center left-hand edge of the charge port door to close.

## DC CHARGING



DC charging allows you to charge the vehicle's high voltage battery in significantly less time than the standard charge method. You can charge on the go before the battery has exhausted all of its power, or when traveling using the trip planner as part of your vehicle App.

We recommend ending DC charges at 80% state of charge.

# Charging Your Vehicle

In cold temperatures, you may notice that DC charging takes longer when the ambient temperature drops below 10°C (50°F).

The rapid charging function heats up the battery to achieve the maximum rapid-charging capability. See **Charging Settings** (page 166). You can turn it on before you arrive at the rapid charger. If route guidance to a rapid charge is active, your vehicle will automatically optimize the high-voltage battery's charging capability until you arrive.

For the convenience of DC charging and time, there is a different fee structure depending on the charging station and network you choose.

**Note:** The system could reduce DC fast charging rate to preserve the battery. This is based on battery temperature, battery state of charge and battery health.

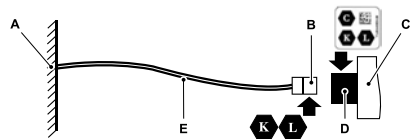
**Note:** When the temperature is below freezing, fully turning off cabin heat for the first 10 to 15 minutes of DC charging could significantly improve the charging rate.

**Note:** Charge times vary depending on outside air temperature, power level, charger type, and location in which you are charging.

**Note:** The system could reduce the DC charging rate to maximize the life of the battery.

To charge the high-voltage battery at a DC charge station:

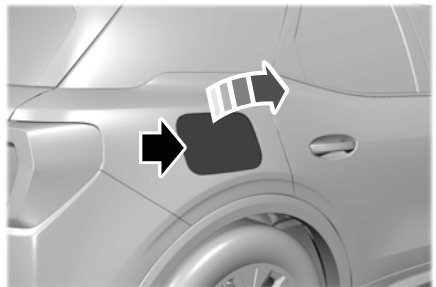
When using charge station with cables attached, choose the charge station cord coupler where the same identifier symbol can be seen.



- A DC charging station.
- B Charge coupler.
- C Vehicle.
- D Charge port receptacle.
- E Cable.

1. Put your vehicle in park (P).

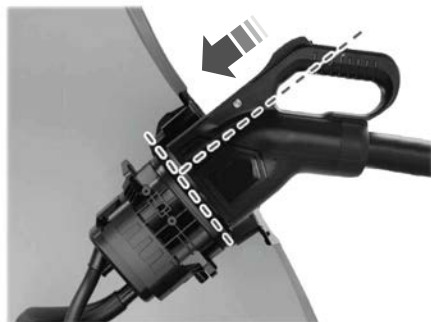
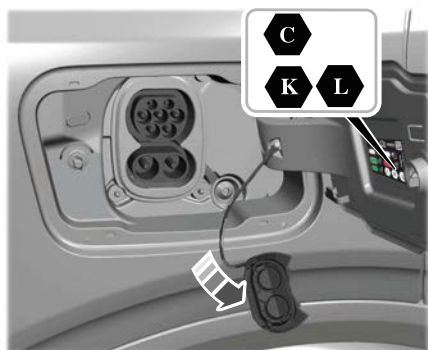
**Note:** Your vehicle must be in park (P) to charge.



2. Press the center left-hand edge of the charge port door and then release to open the door.

**Note:** Your vehicle must be unlocked to open the charge port door.

## Charging Your Vehicle



3. Open the dust cap cover on the charge port to expose lower connectors.
4. Plug the charge coupler into the charge port receptacle on your vehicle.



**Note:** Your vehicle locks to the charge coupler.

**Note:** When the handle is properly engaged the charge port indicator flashes in white. It pulses green when the high-voltage battery is charging.

**Note:** When you plug in your vehicle, it starts charging to 100% by default unless you change the charge limit in the vehicle charging screen. See **Charging Settings** (page 166).

# Charging Your Vehicle

Information about public charge stations, pricing, power levels and real time availability is available on the touchscreen or the vehicle app. Rates for charging will vary by power level, provider, location, and time of day.

## Stopping Charging

1. Stop the charging on the DC charge station's interface.

**Note:** Alternatively, enter your vehicle and stop charging on the vehicle touchscreen.

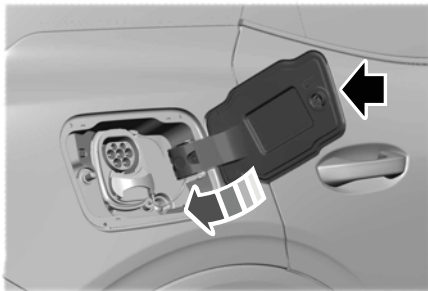
**Note:** The charge port indicator illuminates white when the coupler is ready to disconnect.

2. Remove the charge coupler handle from the vehicle.

**Note:** Do not attempt to remove the charge coupler before you unlock it. Do not use any kind of tool to try and remove a locked charge coupler. Doing so could damage your vehicle and the charge coupler.

**Note:** After a finished DC charge event the charge cord is released automatically.

**Note:** You cannot shift your vehicle out of park (P) until you remove the charge coupler handle.

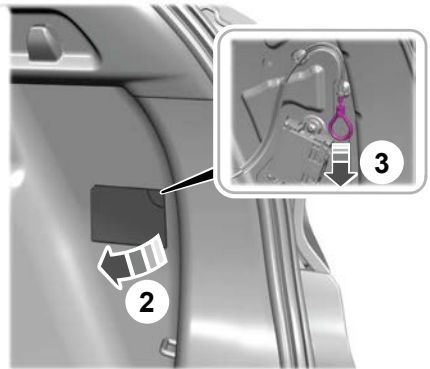


3. Press the center left-hand edge of the charge port door to close.

## CHARGE COUPLER MANUAL RELEASE

If your vehicle does not unlock the charge coupler, you can manually release it.

1. Open the luggage compartment.



2. Open the flap on the bottom right side of the luggage compartment trim.
3. Pull the ring down to manually release the charge coupler.
4. Close the flap.
5. Remove the charge coupler from the charge port.

**Note:** The next time you plug in to charge your vehicle, the locking mechanism re-engages and the pull ring resets.

**Note:** If the problem persists, have your vehicle checked.

# Charging Your Vehicle

## CHARGING SETTINGS

You can schedule charging to take advantage of lower cost electricity rates during off-peak hours if you have signed up for a time of use pricing plan with your utility provider. You can also set a maximum charge limit for your battery and a departure time and cabin temperature so your vehicle is ready to go when you are.

Scheduled charging can be set up on the touchscreen.

To view your charge settings:

1.  Press this icon.
2.  Press this icon.

## Maximum Charge Limit

Select to set a maximum charge limit.

To temporarily adjust the charge level at which charging stops, you can set a maximum charge limit. If the vehicle is already plugged in, the maximum charge limit applies to the current charging session.

## High Voltage Battery State of Charge

Displays the remaining charge percentage with 100% representing the total amount of energy you can get from an external charge. The estimated available driving range is also displayed.

## Estimated Driving Range

Displays the estimated available driving range with current state of charge.

## Charging Time Information

When charging, the estimated end time displays.

**Note:** Charging time information is estimated. Certain conditions could result in longer charging times.

## Charge Settings

You can select and adjust multiple charge settings in this menu:

- Battery care mode. See **Preserving Your High Voltage Battery** (page 142).
- Plug & Charge.
- Add charging stopovers automatically.
- Automatic rapid-charge optimization.
- Reduce AC charging current.
- Release AC charging connector automatically.

**Note:** Press the arrow icons next to the feature names for additional details.

## Rapid-Charging Optimization

You can select this feature to precondition the high voltage battery for the next DC charging when possible. This reduces charge times.

## Charging Locations

Using your current location, you can add up to five charging locations. Within the touchscreen, each location can have various charging time options. The vehicle automatically recognizes a stored charging location and adopts the settings when charging.

**Note:** Charging locations do not apply to DC fast chargers.

## Advanced Charge Time Options

### Charging for Departure Time

By setting departure times you control charging schedules and the option to warm or cool your cabin when your vehicle is plugged in.

# Charging Your Vehicle

You can program up to three departure times for each saved charging location, then apply them individually to the desired days of the week. The next activated departure time will be used.

By setting a departure time and customized times, and then selecting to charge for departure time, your vehicle can use your charging time preferences to minimize your electricity costs but still prioritize finishing charging before your scheduled departure.

**Note:** *By using energy from your charging source while plugged in, less energy is needed for heating or cooling the cabin at the start of your drive. This helps maximize your driving range. Cabin conditioning comfort level may vary depending on whether you plug into a normal household outlet or a higher power outlet or charging station. The power available for conditioning is limited to the charging station power available. At low ambient temperatures and low charge power, a small amount of high voltage battery power in addition to the charging power could be used to heat the cabin.*

## Charging at Customized Times

You can set up to four preferred time windows. When activated they apply to all days.

This feature allows you to take advantage of electric utility rate plans that offer lower pricing during certain times of day. Contact your utility company to see what plans are available.

**Note:** *When selecting this option, your vehicle only charges during your preferred time windows.*

## Charging Location Setup

1.  Press this icon on the charge settings screen.
2. Add the current vehicle position as a charging location.

**Note:** *You can add only your current position as a charging location. When saved, you can edit the settings for all existing charging locations.*

3. Enter a name for the current position and press save.
4. Select to reduce AC charging current if the charging location requires it.

**Note:** *Depending on the country, the vehicle is charged at a reduced charging current of 8A or approximately 1.8 kW (1-phase chargers) or 5.0 kW (3-phase chargers). The setting is recommended if several large electrical consumers are operated simultaneously via the same circuit.*

5. Select to automatically release the AC charging coupler at the current charging location when charging is stopped or completed.
6. Select one of the three departure time settings shown for each saved location.
7. On the departure times settings screen, set your desired departure time. Select either the individual day of your departure or the applicable days of the week for recurring days.
8. When returning to the charging settings screen for your charging location, your settings are now shown on the departure times schedule screen.
9. Activate and deactivate the departure times as needed.

**Note:** *At least one departure time must be activated to enable departure time-based options.*

10. Select your lower battery charge limit.

# Charging Your Vehicle

**Note:** A minimum charge level of up to 50% can be set. The vehicle starts charging immediately after power is connected and charges to this minimum setting. No other charge settings apply until the minimum charge level is reached.

11. Select your upper battery charge limit.

**Note:** The upper battery charge limit limits the maximum charge level of the high voltage battery to a value between 50% and 100%. Full charging of the high voltage battery is not normally necessary in daily vehicle use. Charging stops when your vehicle reaches the maximum charge limit setting.

12. Set preferred charging times by editing the start and end times. You can set up four blocks of time charge windows.

**Note:** At least one preferred time must be activated to enable the preferred times option or to take advantage of low electricity tariffs when charging for a departure time.

13. The charging settings screen now displays your settings for this location.

Whenever your vehicle is at a saved charging location, the charge settings overview screen will display the location name, reflect your settings and enable the advanced charge time options drop down menu.

**Note:** The charge time option can also be selected in the exit menu when powering off the vehicle.

## Plug & Charge

The high-voltage battery is charged at a suitable home or public charging station as soon as the charging connector is plugged in. Manual activation for billing purposes is not necessary.

This function depends on the vehicle equipment and country.

## Prerequisites

- The charging station supports the Plug & Charge charging function in accordance with ISO 15118.
- A vehicle electricity contract is stored in the vehicle by activation of BlueOval Charge Network.
- Transmission of location data was allowed in the Infotainment system before charging. See **Connected Vehicle Data** (page 23).
- Plug & Charge was activated in the Charge Settings.

## Activating a vehicle electricity contract

To be able to activate a vehicle electricity contract the following requirements must be met:

- Ford BlueOval Charge Network is available.
- Vehicle electricity provider supports Plug & Charge.

You can activate a vehicle electricity contract the following way:

1. Register as the authorized user in the vehicle, if not already done. See **How Do Personal Profiles Work** (page 370).
2. For BlueOval Charge Network contracts, activate the Plug & Charge service in the FordPass app. Or activate Plug & Charge for the vehicle electricity contract with the provider. The vehicle identification number (VIN) must be communicated to third-party providers for activation.

## Installing the vehicle electricity contract

To be able to install the vehicle electricity contract the following requirements must be met:



# Charging Your Vehicle

- The vehicle is online and able to send data. See **Connected Vehicle Data** (page 23).
- The 12V Battery is appropriately charged.

You can install the vehicle electricity contract the following way:

1. As the authorized user, open the Plug & Charge menu in the FordPass app.
2. Select desired contract and tap the installation button.

**Note:** *If you have any questions about the installation and activation of Plug & Charge or online services, please use Ford's Help resource.*

## Switching on and off

1.  Press this icon.
2.  Press this icon.
3.  Press this icon.

4. Activate the Plug & Charge function.

**Note:** *The function can be used by the authorized user and a guest user of the Ford BlueOval Charge Network service. The authorized user can switch the function on and off in the vehicle. A guest user can only switch off the function.*

## USING YOUR VEHICLE APP AND CHARGING

The vehicle app allows you to do the following:

- Monitor and manage your vehicle's charging, including settings and preferences.
- Locate a charger and activate a charger on the Charging Network.
- Check charging station plug availability.

For more information, visit [www.owner.ford.com](http://www.owner.ford.com).

## BIDIRECTIONAL CHARGING

### DC Bidirectional Charging

The high voltage battery can be used as an additional buffer for your home energy system (e.g. surplus power from a solar system). If desired, the vehicle can supply energy back into the home to reduce electricity drawn from the grid.

**Note:** *A specific DC Bi-Directional wallbox is required to use this feature. A standard wallbox will not work.*

**Note:** *The specific DC Bi-Directional wallbox currently only available for selected regions. For more information contact your authorized dealer.*

**Note:** *The DC Bi-Directional wallbox should only be installed by a qualified and licensed professional electrician.*

**Note:** *AC Bi-Directional Charging is not available.*

### Prerequisites

The availability of bidirectional charging in the vehicle is country-dependent. This also applies with respect to a suitable home energy management system.

- Compatible home energy management system (HEMS) with energy storage unit.
- A charging location has been created in the infotainment system.

# Charging Your Vehicle

**Note:** First ask a suitably qualified workshop for information on home energy management systems that are suitable for this. Ford recommends using a Ford dealership.

## Setting bidirectional charging and discharging in the infotainment system

1.  Press this icon in the main menu.
2.  Press this icon.
3. Add a location, save and go back to the Charging menu.
4. Plug in the vehicle to the DC Bi-Directional wallbox.
5. Tap the drop down list for the charging method in the Charging menu.
6. Select Bidirectional charging or Discharge.

**Note:** The charging or discharging operation starts automatically.

7. Check the desired battery charge limits in the profile of the charging location and adjust if necessary.

The upper battery charge limit for charging is restricted to a maximum of 80%.

**Note:** Delayed charging for a departure time is not possible with bidirectional charging.

**Note:** Emergency power mode is displayed only in the home energy management system.

**Note:** Discharging is possible only when the temperature of the high-voltage battery is between approx. -15°C (5.0°F) and approx. 40°C (103.9°F). The temperature restriction does not apply if the home energy management system is in emergency power mode.

## Restricting power extraction from the high voltage battery

1.  Press this icon in the main menu.
2.  Press this icon.
3. Set the lower battery charge limit to the desired value in the charging location profile.

**Note:** The charge level drops to a maximum of 20% during discharging.

**Note:** You can view the amount of power extracted and the current charging or discharging power on the home energy management system. The vehicle discharges with a maximum power of around 10 kW.

**Note:** Bidirectional discharging adds mileage to the virtual mileage counter in the vehicle. The mileage adds up the driven mileage and the mileage through energy transfer like Bidirectional charging or Vehicle to Load.

## Malfunctions

In the event of a malfunction, e.g. in the communication with the home energy management system, bidirectional charging may be cancelled. Alternatively, the vehicle can switch automatically to the Charge now charging method.

In the event of malfunction, we recommend the following actions:

1. Remove the charging connector.
2. Connect the vehicle to the charging station again.
3. If the error persists, contact the customer service of the HEMS manufacturer or consult a suitably qualified workshop. Ford recommends using an authorized Ford dealer.

# Charging Your Vehicle

## Vehicle To Load (V2L)

The high voltage battery can be used to power devices or specific appliances. The 230V socket is in trunk on the right-hand side. The socket is an optional equipment.

Alternatively, a vehicle-to-load adapter can be used and plugged into the charger port of the vehicle. The V2L adapter is optional accessory or can be purchased separately at the Ford dealer.

**Note:** Only use Ford approved adapters in the charge port.

## Vehicle To Load Socket

| Specification Type | Specification Value              |
|--------------------|----------------------------------|
| Voltage            | 230 V                            |
| Continuous power   | 2.3 kW (10 A)                    |
| Total peak power   | Up to 3.6 kW (16 A single phase) |

The vehicle to load socket can be used while driving, stationary with vehicle on or off, and charging.

The socket can be controlled via the center display. The actions includes the following:

- Initial activation.
- On/off soft switch including energy flow graphic.
- Selecting minimum high voltage battery state of charge.

A status led can be found at the socket.

**Note:** Do not use power strip behind the vehicle to load socket to run more than one device.

**Note:** The socket has a replaceable fuse built in.

## Vehicle To Load Adapter

| Specification Type | Specification Value              |
|--------------------|----------------------------------|
| Voltage            | 230 V                            |
| Continuous power   | 2.3 kW (10 A)                    |
| Total peak power   | Up to 3.6 kW (16 A single phase) |

**Note:** Total peak power is defined as the total peak power of the both outlets together.

The vehicle to load adapter can only be used while stationary with vehicle on or off.

The adapter can be controlled via the center display. The actions includes the following:

- Initial activation.
- On/off soft switch including energy flow graphic.
- Selecting minimum high voltage battery state of charge.

A status led can be found on the adapter.

The adapter locks automatically after connecting to the vehicle. You can unlock the adapter using your key fob.

**Note:** Do not try to remove the adapter before you unlock it.

## Prerequisites

- State of charge must be higher than 20% or above the selected minimum state of charge in the Charging menu.
- The function must be activated in the Charging menu.

**Note:** The function is ready to use after activation.

# Charging Your Vehicle

**Note:** Bidirectional discharging adds mileage to the virtual mileage counter in the vehicle. The mileage adds up the driven mileage and the mileage through energy transfer like Bidirectional charging or Vehicle to Load.

## CHARGING EQUIPMENT IDENTIFICATION SYMBOLS



Identifier symbol visible on vehicle cord couplers, charge station cord couplers and vehicle charge ports.

| Supply Type | Standard   | Configuration | Type of Accessory                                                | Voltage Range                  |
|-------------|------------|---------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| AC          | EN 62196-2 | Type 2        | Vehicle coupler, charge station coupler and vehicle charge port. | Lower or equal to 480 volt RMS |



Identifier symbol visible on charge station ports and your public charge cord coupler.

| Supply Type | Standard   | Configuration | Type of Accessory                                | Voltage Range                  |
|-------------|------------|---------------|--------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| AC          | EN 62196-2 | Type 2        | Charge station port, public charge cord coupler. | Lower or equal to 480 volt RMS |



Charge station coupler identifier symbol.

| Supply Type | Standard   | Configuration | Type of Accessory                                                 | Voltage Range       |
|-------------|------------|---------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|
| DC          | EN 62196-3 | FF            | Vehicle coupler, vehicle charge port, and charge station coupler. | 50 volt to 500 volt |



Charge station coupler identifier symbol.

# Charging Your Vehicle

| Supply Type | Standard   | Configuration | Type of Accessory                                                 | Voltage Range        |
|-------------|------------|---------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------|
| DC          | EN 62196-3 | FF            | Vehicle coupler, vehicle charge port, and charge station coupler. | 200 volt to 920 volt |

## CHARGING YOUR VEHICLE – TROUBLESHOOTING

### CHARGING YOUR VEHICLE – WARNING LAMPS



It illuminates when your vehicle is plugged in.

## CHARGING YOUR VEHICLE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

| Message                                                                              | Details                                                                                                                               |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Charging cable is too hot and cannot be unlocked yet. Please let it cool down first. | Please wait until the charging cable is ready to be disconnected.                                                                     |
| Please follow instructions on the charging station or use different station.         | A problem occurred during connecting to the charge station. Follow the instructions of the charge station or try a different station. |
| Driving range low. Please charge your vehicle.                                       | Displays when the high voltage battery state of charge is low. Charge your vehicle as soon as possible.                               |
| No range remaining. Charge vehicle now.                                              |                                                                                                                                       |
| Charge vehicle now! Otherwise the battery may be damaged.                            |                                                                                                                                       |
| Only manoeuvring possible! Please charge. Refer to Owner's Manual.                   |                                                                                                                                       |
| Emergency charging active. Reconnect charging cable. Owner's Manual!                 |                                                                                                                                       |

## Charging Your Vehicle

| Message                                                                                 | Details                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Outside temperature is too low. Please charge and heat vehicle before you next set off. | Displays when your heating is temporarily unavailable due to low outside temperature.                                                                                                                                     |
| Please use manual release for charging cable. Refer to Owner's Manual.                  | A problem occurred with the charge port unlock mechanism. Use the manual release method. See <b>Charge Coupler Manual Release</b> (page 165). If the problem persists, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer. |
| Unable to fully charge vehicle. Refer to Owner's Manual.                                | If there are no maximum charge settings applied and the problem persists, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer. See <b>Charging Settings</b> (page 166).                                                     |

# Charging Your Vehicle

---

## CHARGING YOUR VEHICLE – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

### **My vehicle does not charge, what can I do?**

Ensure you properly connect the charging equipment. Unplug the charging equipment from both the vehicle charge port and the charge station, wall box or outlet. If you use the universal home charge cord, check the connector to be sure that it is properly connected into the universal home charger control box. If the charging equipment is warm, or in a hot environment, try charging in a cooler area. Try a different outlet or a different connector if you have one available. If the problem persists, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

## CHARGING YOUR VEHICLE VIDEOS

Animations are shown to enhance the written content and not intended to replace it. We recommend that you read the Owner's Manual for full details.

[Explorer Charging Your Vehicle Video Link](#)

For more information scan here:



# Electric Motor

## ELECTRIC MOTOR PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Apply the parking brake, switch the vehicle off and remove the key before you leave your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** When your vehicle is stationary, keep the brake pedal fully pressed when shifting gears. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury, death or property damage.



**WARNING:** Do not apply the brake pedal and accelerator pedal simultaneously. Applying both pedals simultaneously for more than a few seconds limits vehicle performance, which may result in difficulty maintaining speed in traffic and could lead to serious injury.

**Note:** Your vehicle may not release the electric parking brake if the vehicle battery has run out of charge.

**Note:** Your vehicle may not release the electric parking brake if a fuse is blown. See **Fuses** (page 294).

**Note:** Your vehicle may not release the electric parking brake unless the key or remote control is inside your vehicle.

**Note:** Your vehicle automatically applies the electric parking brake if you attempt to exit your vehicle without pressing the electric parking brake button. See **Roll-Away Protection** (page 178).

**Note:** A tone could sound when you press the electric parking brake button.

## REVERSE (R)



**WARNING:** Shift into reverse (R) only when your vehicle is stationary.

In reverse (R) power is transmitted to the driven wheels.

## NEUTRAL (N)



**WARNING:** In neutral (N) your vehicle is free to roll.

In neutral (N) power is not transmitted to the driven wheels.

Your vehicle is free to roll as long as you remain in the driver seat.

Roll-away protection is active in neutral (N) and automatically applies the electric parking brake if the driver leaves the vehicle.

## SELECTOR POSITIONS

### PARK (P)

#### Park By Brake

This feature replaces the transmission park (P) position on the selector with the electric parking brake button.



Pressing the electric parking brake button on the selector applies the electric parking brake and also prevents power from being transmitted to the driven wheels. See **Applying the Electric Parking Brake** (page 192).

**Note:** A tone could sound if you attempt to exit your vehicle without applying the parking brake.



# Electric Motor

If you want to keep your vehicle in a free rolling state, roll-away protection needs to be deactivated. See **Roll-Away Protection** (page 178).

## DRIVE (D)

In drive (D) power is transmitted to the driven wheels.

**Note:** Various levels of brake energy recuperation are available when in drive (D). See **Efficient Drive Mode** (page 184).

## BRAKE (B)

In brake (B) power is transmitted to the driven wheels.

In brake (B) your vehicle is in the highest brake energy recuperation mode.

**Note:** In brake (B) your vehicle decelerates more noticeably than in drive (D) when the accelerator pedal is released.

**Note:** We recommend using this mode for driving on hilly or mountainous roads or when towing a trailer. See **Towing a Trailer** (page 277).

## SHIFTING YOUR VEHICLE INTO GEAR



The position selector is on the right-hand side of the steering column.

1. Power your vehicle on. See **Starting the Vehicle** (page 140).
2. Press and hold the brake pedal.
3. To select drive (D), rotate the selector forward.
4. To select neutral (N), rotate the selector one position backward.

**Note:** When you select neutral (N), an instructional message appears, asking if you want to turn roll-away protection off or not. See **Roll-Away Protection** (page 178).

5. To select reverse (R), rotate the selector two positions backward.
6. To select brake (B), rotate the selector forward once more when in drive (D).

**Note:** The selector always returns to its initial position. Rotate it forward once more to switch between brake (B) and drive (D).

# Electric Motor

7. To apply the electric parking brake, press the electric parking brake button on the selector when the vehicle is stationary. See **Applying the Electric Parking Brake** (page 192).

## SELECTOR POSITION INDICATORS

The instrument cluster displays the current position.



## ELECTRIC MOTOR AUDIBLE WARNINGS

### Electric Parking Brake Audible Warning

- Sounds when you press the electric parking brake button on the selector.
- Sounds if you attempt to exit your vehicle without applying the electric parking brake.

## ROLL-AWAY PROTECTION

### HOW DOES ROLL-AWAY PROTECTION WORK

Roll-away protection is always active by default. It secures the vehicle by automatically applying the electric parking brake if the driver leaves the vehicle without pressing the electric parking brake button.

Roll-away protection can be temporarily deactivated. In this case the vehicle is free to roll even if the driver leaves the vehicle, for example in an automatic car wash or when towing your vehicle. See **Emergency Towing** (page 291).

### ROLL-AWAY PROTECTION LIMITATIONS

When roll-away protection is deactivated, the vehicle is free to roll. Make sure to avoid unwanted vehicle movement. Failure to follow these instructions could result in vehicle damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

Your vehicle reactivates roll-away protection if any of the following occur:

- You power off your vehicle.
- You select a position other than neutral (N).

Roll-away protection may not work if any of the following occur:

- The driver seat sensor is malfunctioning.
- The driver seatbelt sensor is malfunctioning.
- The driver door ajar sensor is malfunctioning.

# Electric Motor

---

See an authorized dealer if any of the following occur:

- Seatbelt indicator illuminates or tone sounds with the driver seatbelt fastened.
- Door ajar indicator does not illuminate with the driver door open.
- Door ajar indicator illuminates with the driver door closed.
- A message appears advising to apply the parking brake after selecting drive (D), neutral (N) or reverse (R).

## SWITCHING THE ROLL-AWAY PROTECTION ON AND OFF

### Switching the Roll-Away Protection Off

1. Press the brake pedal.
2. Shift into neutral (N).

- Note:** *An instructional message appears.*
3. Confirm the message to turn roll-away protection off.

**Note:** *A permanent confirmation message appears when your vehicle enters the mode.*

**Note:** *A tone could sound when you deactivate roll-away protection.*

4. Release the brake pedal.

**Note:** *Your vehicle is free to roll.*

### Switching the Roll-Away Protection On

1. Press the brake pedal.
2. Shift into a position other than neutral (N) or press the electric parking brake button to turn roll-away protection on.

**Note:** *If drive (D), brake (B) or reverse (R) is selected, the vehicle is ready to drive.*

**Note:** *Alternatively, you can also manage the feature settings on the touchscreen.*

# Electric Motor

## ELECTRIC MOTOR – TROUBLESHOOTING

### ELECTRIC MOTOR – INFORMATION MESSAGES

| Message                                                                                     | Details                                                                                                                                                                 |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Your vehicle may roll away.                                                                 | A reminder during driving that neutral (N) position is selected or when deactivating roll-away protection.                                                              |
| Heating temporarily activated to increase recuperation capacity.                            | The system releases battery energy through heating to provide battery capacity for brake energy recuperation when the high voltage battery state of charge is too high. |
| Error: selector lever. You can drive on.                                                    | The system has detected a fault. If the problem persists, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.                                                            |
| Error: selector lever. You can drive on in the current gear until you switch the drive off. |                                                                                                                                                                         |
| Electric drive too hot. Stop vehicle safely! Owner's Manual!                                |                                                                                                                                                                         |
| Electric drive too hot. Performance is restricted.                                          |                                                                                                                                                                         |
| Electric drive too hot. Please slow down.                                                   |                                                                                                                                                                         |
| Electric drive not working properly. Stop vehicle safely!                                   | The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.                                                                   |
| Electric drive not working properly. Please visit workshop.                                 |                                                                                                                                                                         |
| Error: selector lever. Driving not possible. Contact workshop!                              |                                                                                                                                                                         |

# All-Wheel Drive

## HOW DOES ALL-WHEEL DRIVE WORK

The all-wheel drive system is designed to continuously monitor and adjust power delivery to the front and rear wheels to optimize both traction and handling.

There is further information on driving in unique driving conditions. See **Driving Hints** (page 281).

## ALL-WHEEL DRIVE PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Do not become overconfident in the ability of all-wheel drive vehicles. Although an all-wheel drive vehicle may accelerate better than a two-wheel drive vehicle in low traction situations, it won't stop any faster than two-wheel drive vehicles. Always drive at a safe speed.

- Drive slower in strong crosswinds that can affect the normal steering characteristics of your vehicle.
- When driving your vehicle on surfaces made slippery by loose sand, water, gravel, snow or ice, proceed with care.

## ALL-WHEEL DRIVE LIMITATIONS

The all-wheel drive system is not intended for use with mismatched tires.

For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer regarding the allowed tire sizes.

## ALL-WHEEL DRIVE – TROUBLESHOOTING

### ALL-WHEEL DRIVE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

| Message                                                             | Details                                                           |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| All-wheel drive is restricted. Please adapt your driving behaviour. | The system stopped. It has reduced power. Please drive carefully. |

# Drive Mode Control

## WHAT IS DRIVE MODE CONTROL

Your vehicle has various drive modes that you can select for different driving conditions. Depending on the drive mode that you select, the system adjusts various vehicle settings.

## HOW DOES DRIVE MODE CONTROL WORK

Selectable drive modes change various electronic settings within your vehicle to tailor its performance and driving characteristics to on-road or off-road conditions. The following controls are automatically altered to a predetermined setting depending on the drive mode that is selected.

- Steering feel and effort.
- Traction control.
- Chassis controls.
- Powertrain response.
- Ambient lighting.
- Climate control.

**Note:** Your vehicle reverts to normal mode each time you start it.

## SELECTING A DRIVE MODE

1.  Press this icon.

2.  Press this icon.

3. Select the desired drive mode.

 You can also control this vehicle feature with voice interaction.

See **Voice Interaction**

**Examples** (page 363).

**Note:** Drive mode changes may not be available when your vehicle is off.

## DRIVE MODES

### ECO



For efficient driving. This mode helps to deliver maximum energy-efficiency and driving

range.

### INDIVIDUAL



For a unique driving experience. You can tailor the individual vehicle systems to suit your personal requirements.

### NORMAL



For everyday driving. This mode is a perfect balance of excitement, comfort and convenience. This is the default mode after each time you switch the vehicle on.

### SPORT



For sporty driving with improved performance handling and response. This mode increases accelerator pedal response, enhances steering to provide a sportier feel and quicker vehicle acceleration.

### TRACTION - AWD



For improved vehicle traction on less-than-ideal road conditions, such as snowy or icy roads or firm surfaces that are covered with loose or slippery materials.

## **DRIVE MODE CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING**

### **DRIVE MODE CONTROL – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS**

#### **Why did the system default to normal mode?**

If a mode is unavailable due to a system fault, it defaults to normal mode.

# Efficient Drive Mode

## WHAT IS EFFICIENT DRIVE MODE

Efficient Drive Mode helps you drive more efficiently. It uses predictive route information based on the vehicle navigation data and driving assist system sensors. It provides situation dependent recommendations when to stop accelerating and adjusts brake energy recuperation for the driving situation ahead.

## HOW DOES EFFICIENT DRIVE MODE WORK



When you approach a speed limit or a road event, the symbol displays in the instrument cluster display with a second symbol indicating the type of event.

As soon as you take your foot off the accelerator, the vehicle adjusts the brake energy recuperation and the speed. The vehicle takes into account the selected driving profile and the distance to the event.

The system does not use the vehicle brake. When you are driving downhill, the system also cannot sufficiently brake the vehicle in all driving situations.

**Note:** When the system is active, Efficient Drive Mode can increase deceleration even without a displayed message, thereby adapting the speed to a detected vehicle ahead.

**Note:** You can override Efficient Drive Mode at any time by accelerating.

## EFFICIENT DRIVE MODE PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Always adapt your speed and driving style to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.



**WARNING:** Road signs, traffic signals, traffic regulations and local conditions have priority over the recommendations and displays provided by the navigation system.

## SWITCHING EFFICIENT DRIVE MODE ON AND OFF

-  Press this icon on the touchscreen.
  -  Press this icon.
  -  Press this icon or select it from the list.
  - Make the required adjustments.
- Efficient Drive Mode automatically turns off temporarily in the following cases:
- Your vehicle is in Sport mode.
  - Adaptive cruise control is active.



# Efficient Drive Mode

**Note:** Your vehicle may still display efficient drive mode icons, depending on the situation and your driving behavior.

**Note:** If efficient drive mode is off and selector position Drive (D) is selected, your vehicle coasts when you take your foot off the accelerator.

Efficient drive mode turns on again when the reason for deactivation is no longer present, or if you switch it on.

**Note:** The displayed symbols may differ from the ones displayed in your vehicle. Future system updates may alter or update the symbols.

## EFFICIENT DRIVE MODE INDICATORS

The instrument cluster displays the following symbols, depending on the driving situation:



Take your foot off the accelerator.



Vehicle ahead.



Junction ahead.



Highway exit ahead.



Roundabout ahead.



Bend to the left ahead.



Bend to the right ahead.



Slope ahead.



Speed limit ahead.

# One Pedal Drive

## WHAT IS ONE PEDAL DRIVE

One pedal drive allows you to accelerate, slow down and stop using only the accelerator pedal. Pressing the accelerator down accelerates your vehicle, releasing pressure on the accelerator with your foot still on the pedal slows down your vehicle and releasing the pedal completely allows your vehicle to come to a complete stop if the road grade is not excessively steep. See **One Pedal Drive Precautions** (page 186).

## ONE PEDAL DRIVE PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** This system does not automatically brake your vehicle. This system is an extra driving aid. It does not replace your attention and judgment, or the need to apply the brakes. If you do not apply the brakes when necessary, you may collide with another vehicle or other objects.

Shifting into neutral (N) does not hold your vehicle at a standstill.

Shifting into drive (D), neutral (N) or reverse (R) deactivates one pedal drive.

**Note:** Always check the transmission selection before accelerating.

**Note:** High brake energy recuperation can cause loss of traction and skidding, particularly on slippery roads. This can cause you to lose control of the vehicle and lead to accidents and serious injuries.

## ONE PEDAL DRIVE LIMITATIONS

One pedal drive is unavailable when any of the following occur:

- Shifting into an incorrect transmission position or applying the electric parking brake when driving.
- Using active park assist.
- Using adaptive cruise control.
- Selecting traction control off or ESC sport mode.

Releasing the accelerator pedal may not bring your vehicle to a complete stop on steep grades.

Increased vehicle load may reduce accelerator pedal ability to slow the vehicle.

## SWITCHING ONE PEDAL DRIVE ON AND OFF

Select brake (B) on the position selector to activate one pedal drive. See **Shifting Your Vehicle Into Gear** (page 177). See **Brake (B)** (page 177).

Select drive (D) on the position selector to deactivate one pedal drive. See **Shifting Your Vehicle Into Gear** (page 177). See **Drive (D)** (page 177).

## One Pedal Drive Settings

You can adjust the settings on the touchscreen.

1.  Press this icon.
2.  Press this icon.
3. Press Exterior.

# One Pedal Drive

---

4. Swipe to rotate the image of the vehicle, then press Electric Drive.
5. Select the desired setting.

## ONE PEDAL DRIVE INDICATORS



When one pedal drive is active, the indicator for standard or high recuperation level displays on the instrument cluster.



# Brakes

## BRAKE PRECAUTIONS

Wet brakes result in reduced braking efficiency. Gently press the brake pedal a few times when leaving a car wash or driving from standing water to dry the brakes.

**Note:** Depending on applicable laws and regulations in the country for which your vehicle was originally built, your brake lamps may flash during heavy braking. Following this, your hazard lights may also flash when your vehicle comes to a stop.

## ANTI-LOCK BRAKING SYSTEM

### ANTI-LOCK BRAKING SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

The anti-lock braking system does not eliminate the risk of a crash when:

- You drive too close to the vehicle in front of you.
- Your vehicle is hydroplaning.
- You take corners too fast.
- The road surface is poor.

## BRAKE OVER ACCELERATOR

If your accelerator pedal becomes stuck or trapped:

- Apply steady and firm pressure to the brake pedal to slow the vehicle and reduce power.
- Bring your vehicle to a complete stop and place it in park (P).
- Switch the power off.

Inspect the accelerator pedal for any interference. If none are found and the condition persists, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. If your vehicle has to be towed, we recommend that you contact a professional towing service.

## LOCATING THE BRAKE FLUID RESERVOIR

See **Under Hood Overview** (page 304).

## CHECKING THE BRAKE FLUID



**WARNING:** Do not use any fluid other than the recommended brake fluid as this will reduce brake efficiency. Use of incorrect fluid could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Only use brake fluid from a sealed container. Contamination with dirt, water, petroleum products or other materials may result in brake system damage or failure. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not allow the fluid to touch your skin or eyes. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and contact your physician.



**WARNING:** The brake system could be affected if the brake fluid level is below the **MIN** mark or above the **MAX** mark on the brake fluid reservoir.

1. Park your vehicle on a level surface.

# Brakes



2. Look at the brake fluid reservoir to see where the brake fluid level is relative to the **MIN** and the **MAX** marks on the reservoir.

**Note:** To avoid fluid contamination, the reservoir cap must remain in place and fully tight, unless you are adding fluid.

Only use fluid that meets our specifications. See **Brake Fluid Specification** (page 189).

## BRAKE FLUID SPECIFICATION

### Materials

| Name                                                  | Specification |
|-------------------------------------------------------|---------------|
| Brake Fluid DOT 4 LV High Performance RU7J-M6C65-xxxx | WSS-M6C65-A2  |

**Note:** We recommend using DOT 4 LV (Low Viscosity) High Performance Brake Fluid meeting WSS-M6C65-A2 or ISO 4925 Class 6 standards. Use of any fluid other than the recommended fluid could cause reduced brake performance and not meet our performance standards. Keep brake fluid clean and dry. Contamination with dirt, water, petroleum products or other materials could result in brake system damage and possible failure.

## BRAKES – TROUBLESHOOTING

### BRAKES – WARNING LAMPS



**WARNING:** Driving your vehicle with the warning lamp on is dangerous. A significant decrease in braking performance may occur. It may take you longer to stop your vehicle. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. Driving extended distances with the parking brake engaged can cause brake failure and the risk of personal injury.

# Brakes



If the ABS indicator illuminates when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. Your vehicle continues to have normal braking without the anti-lock braking system function. See an authorized dealer.

It also momentarily illuminates when you switch your vehicle on to confirm the lamp is functional. If it does not illuminate when you switch your vehicle on, or begins to flash at any time, have the system checked by an authorized dealer.



The brake indicator momentarily illuminates when you switch your vehicle on to confirm the lamp is functional. It may also illuminate when you apply the parking brake and your vehicle is on. If it illuminates when your vehicle is moving, stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## BRAKES – INFORMATION MESSAGES

| Message                                              | Details                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Brake servo is restricted.                           | The brake system requires service. You can drive on carefully but have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.                                                                        |
| Brake servo failure.                                 | The brake system requires service. You can drive on very slowly and carefully but have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.                                                        |
| Brake too hot. Stop vehicle safely!                  | Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Allow the brakes to cool down.                                                                                                        |
| Brake has overheated. Please visit workshop.         | Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Allow the brakes to cool down. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.                                                         |
| Check brake fluid level!<br>Refer to Owner's Manual. | Driving with low brake fluid level may cause a significant decrease in braking performance. It may take you longer to stop your vehicle. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |
| Please check brake pad.                              | You can drive on carefully. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.                                                                                                              |

## **BRAKES – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS**

Occasional brake noise is normal. If a metal-to-metal, continuous grinding or continuous squeal sound is present, the brake linings could be worn-out. Have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

**Note:** *Brake dust could accumulate on the wheels, even under normal driving conditions. Some dust is inevitable as the brakes wear, and does not contribute to brake noise. See **Cleaning Wheels** (page 315).*

# Electric Parking Brake

## WHAT IS THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE

The electric parking brake is used to hold your vehicle on slopes and flat roads.

## APPLYING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE



**WARNING:** Apply the parking brake, switch the vehicle off and remove the key before you leave your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** The electric parking brake does not operate if the vehicle battery has run out of charge.

**Note:** Pressing the electric parking brake button on the selector also prevents power from being transmitted to the driven wheels. See **Park (P)** (page 176).

**Note:** The electric parking brake automatically applies if you attempt to leave your vehicle without pressing the button. See **Roll-Away Protection** (page 178).

## Automatic activation of the electric parking brake

The vehicle automatically activates the electric parking brake when the vehicle is stationary or rolling under 5 km/h (3 mph), and two of the following occur:

- The driver door is open.
- The driver seatbelt is not fastened.
- The sensors do not detect the driver in the seat.

## APPLYING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE IN AN EMERGENCY

You can use the electric parking brake to slow or stop your vehicle in an emergency.



Push the button and hold it.

The red warning lamp illuminates, a tone sounds and the stoplamps turn on when you use the electric parking brake in an emergency.

The electric parking brake continues to slow your vehicle down unless you release the button.

**Note:** Do not apply the electric parking brake when your vehicle is moving, except in an emergency. If you repeatedly use the electric parking brake to slow or stop your vehicle, you could cause damage to the brake system.



The electric parking brake button is on the position selector on the right-hand side of the steering column.



Press the button or power off when your vehicle is stationary.



# Electric Parking Brake

## AUTOMATICALLY RELEASING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE

1. Close the driver door.
2. Press and hold the brake pedal.
3. Shift into gear or neutral.

## ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE AUDIBLE WARNING

Sounds when the parking brake is on and your vehicle is moving with at least 5 km/h. If the warning tone continues after you have released the parking brake, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## RELEASING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE IF THE VEHICLE BATTERY HAS RUN OUT OF CHARGE

See **Jump Starting the Vehicle** (page 286).

## ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE – TROUBLESHOOTING

### ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE – WARNING LAMPS

#### Brake System



It illuminates red when you apply the parking brake and your vehicle is on. If the lamp flashes when the parking brake is not applied, this indicates the parking brake system requires service. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

**Note:** Lamps may vary depending on region.

#### Electric Parking Brake



When the lamp illuminates yellow, it indicates a malfunction in the electric parking brake. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

**Note:** Lamps may vary depending on region.

## ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

| Message                                                                   | Details                                  |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| Caution: electronic parking brake is not activated.                       | Apply the parking brake.                 |
| Electronic parking brake: gradient is too steep. Refer to Owner's Manual. | Park your vehicle on a less steep slope. |

# Reverse Brake Assist

## WHAT IS REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST

Reverse brake assist is designed to reduce impact damage or assist in avoiding a collision while in reverse (R).

## HOW DOES REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST WORK

Reverse brake assist functions when in reverse (R) and traveling at a speed of 2–10 km/h (1–6 mph).

If the system detects an obstacle behind your vehicle, it provides a warning through the rear parking aid or cross traffic alert system.

## REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** To help avoid personal injury, always use caution when in reverse (R) and when using the sensing system.



**WARNING:** The system may not operate properly during severe weather conditions, for example snow, ice, heavy rain and spray. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.



**WARNING:** Traffic control systems, fluorescent lamps, inclement weather, air brakes, external motors and fans may affect the correct operation of the sensing system. This may cause reduced performance or false alerts.



**WARNING:** Some situations and objects prevent hazard detection. For example low or direct sunlight, inclement weather, unconventional vehicle types, and pedestrians. Apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not use the system with accessories that extend beyond the front or rear of your vehicle, for example a trailer hitch or bike rack. The system is not able to make corrections for the additional length of the accessories.

The system only applies the brakes for a short period of time when an event occurs. Act as soon as you notice the brakes apply to remain in control of the vehicle. If you do not intervene the vehicle may start to move again.

**Note:** *Certain add-on devices around the bumper or fascia may create false alerts. For example, large trailer hitches, bicycle or surfboard racks, license plate brackets, bumper covers or any other device that may block the normal detection zone of the system. Remove the add-on device to prevent false alerts.*

**Note:** *The system does not react to small or moving objects, particularly those close to the ground.*

**Note:** *The system does not operate during hard acceleration or steering.*

# Reverse Brake Assist

**Note:** If your vehicle sustains damage to the bumper or fascia leaving it misaligned or bent, it could alter the sensing zone causing inaccurate measurement of obstacles or false alerts.

**Note:** Vehicle loading and suspension changes can impact the angle of the sensors and may change the normal detection zone of the system resulting in inaccurate measurement of obstacles or false alerts.

**Note:** When you connect a trailer, the system may detect the trailer and provide an alert, or the system turns off. If the system does not turn off, manually switch the system off after you connect the trailer.

**Note:** You may experience reduced system performance on road surfaces that limit deceleration. For example, roads with ice, loose gravel, mud or sand.

## SWITCHING REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST ON AND OFF

1.  Press this icon.
2.  Press this icon.
3.  Press this icon.

4.  Press this icon to switch the feature on or off.

**Note:** The system is unavailable when the rear parking aid is off.

**Note:** The reverse brake assist relies on input from the rear parking aid sensors.

**Note:** The default setting is on in some regions.

## OVERRIDING REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST

There could be instances when unexpected or unwanted braking occurs. Firmly pressing the accelerator pedal or switching the feature off overrides the system.

## REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST INDICATORS

If the system determines that a collision with an obstacle may occur, full braking may apply.

 A message and warning indicator appear when the system applies the brakes.

# Reverse Brake Assist

---

## REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST – TROUBLESHOOTING

### REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST – INFORMATION MESSAGES

| Message                                         | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|-------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Emergency braking triggered. Take over braking! | Displays when the system applies the brakes.                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| Reverse Brake Assist is currently unavailable.  | Make sure that all doors, liftgate and hood are closed. Drive the vehicle on a straight road for a short period. Make sure the parking aids and reverse brake assist systems are on. If the message remains on, have the system checked as soon as possible. |

# Reverse Brake Assist

---

## REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

### Why is reverse brake assist unavailable?

- Make sure the reverse brake assist is on. See **Switching Reverse Brake Assist On and Off** (page 195).
- Make sure that all doors, liftgate or tailgate and hood are closed. Drive the vehicle on a straight road for a short period. If the message remains, have the system checked.
- Make sure the rear parking aid system is on. See **Parking Aids** (page 205).
- Make sure the traction control is on. See **Switching Traction Control On and Off** (page 200).
- Your vehicle may have sustained a rear end impact. Have the sensors checked for proper coverage and operation.
- An anti-lock brake, traction control or stability control event may have occurred. Reverse brake assist resumes operation when the event is complete.
- Make sure the cross traffic alert, rear parking aid and side parking aid sensors are not blocked or faulty. See **Locating the Cross Traffic Alert Sensors** (page 251). See **Locating the Rear Parking Aid Sensors** (page 206). See **Locating the Side Parking Aid Sensors** (page 208).
- You recently had your vehicle serviced, or the battery disconnected. Drive your vehicle a short distance to resume system operation.
- Reverse brake assist does not function when you connect a trailer. Operation resumes when you disconnect the trailer.

**Note:** *If the answers to why the system is unavailable do not assist in returning reverse brake assist to available, have the system checked as soon as possible.*

# Auto Hold

## HOW DOES AUTO HOLD WORK

Auto hold applies the brakes to hold your vehicle after you bring the vehicle to a stop. This can help when waiting on a hill or in traffic.

## SWITCHING AUTO HOLD ON AND OFF



**WARNING:** You must remain in your vehicle when the system turns on. At all times you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system, and intervening if required. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

1.  Press this icon on the touchscreen.
2.  Press this icon.
3.  Press this icon.
4. Press **Exterior**.
5. Swipe to rotate the image of the vehicle until the preferred settings appear.
6. Press **Brakes**.
7. Make the required Auto Hold adjustments.

**Note:** The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

## Activate the deactivated Auto Hold Once

If Auto Hold feature is switched off permanently, it can be activated by pressing the brake pedal.

1. Bring your vehicle to a complete stop with the brake pedal.
2. Press the brake pedal again.
- 3.



The feature turns on, and the symbol illuminates green in the instrument cluster display.

**Note:** After drive off, Auto Hold is switched off again.

## USING AUTO HOLD

1. Bring your vehicle to a complete stop. The auto hold active indicator illuminates in the information display.
2. Release the brake pedal. The system holds your vehicle at a standstill. The auto hold active indicator remains illuminated in the information display.
3. Apply the accelerator and drive off in a normal manner. The system releases the brakes and the auto hold active indicator switches off.

**Note:** The system only activates if you apply enough brake pressure on the brake pedal to bring the vehicle to a standstill.

**Note:** Under certain conditions, the system could apply the electric parking brake. The brake system warning lamp illuminates. The electric parking brake releases when you shift into gear or neutral. See **Automatically Releasing the Electric Parking Brake** (page 193).

**Note:** The system turns off if you shift into neutral (N) and press the brake pedal.

# Auto Hold

---

Auto hold system does not function if any of the following occur:

- You use active park assist.
- The driver door is open.
- You shift into neutral (N) before the system is active.
- Your vehicle is in temporary neutral mode.

## AUTO HOLD INDICATORS



Illuminates gray when the system is on.

Illuminates green when the system is active and holds your vehicle at a standstill.

# Traction Control

## WHAT IS TRACTION CONTROL

The traction control system helps to avoid drive wheel spin and loss of traction.

## HOW DOES TRACTION CONTROL WORK

If your vehicle begins to slide, the system applies the brakes to individual wheels and, when needed, reduces power at the same time. If the wheels spin when accelerating on slippery or loose surfaces, the system reduces power in order to increase traction.

## SWITCHING TRACTION CONTROL ON AND OFF



**WARNING:** Operating your vehicle with the traction control disabled could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

The traction control system turns on each time you switch your vehicle on. If your vehicle is stuck in mud or snow, switching traction control off may be beneficial as this allows the wheels to spin.

1.  Press this icon on the status bar of the touchscreen.
2.  Press this icon and switch the feature off.

**Note:** When you switch traction control off, stability control remains fully active.

## TRACTION CONTROL INDICATOR



Flashes yellow during operation.

Shortly illuminates when you switch your vehicle on. If it does not illuminate when you switch your vehicle on, or continuously illuminates, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## TRACTION CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING

### TRACTION CONTROL – WARNING LAMPS



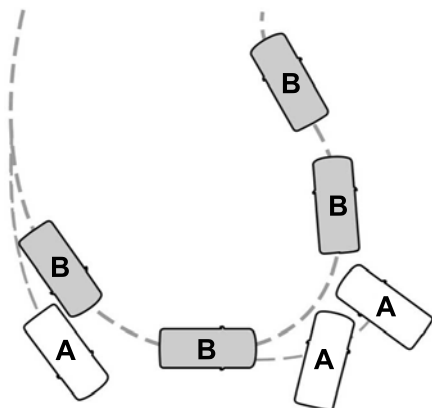
It illuminates when you switch the system off.



# Stability Control

## WHAT IS STABILITY CONTROL

The system is designed to support stability when your vehicle starts to slide away from your intended path.



- A Without stability control.  
B With stability control.

## HOW DOES STABILITY CONTROL WORK

The system works by braking individual wheels and reducing electric motor output.

## SWITCHING STABILITY CONTROL ON AND OFF - AWD



**WARNING:** Do not switch off stability control or select sport mode, when using a temporary spare wheel or after repairing a tire using the temporary mobility kit.

The system turns on when you switch your vehicle on and you cannot switch the system off.

**Note:** The system is disabled when you shift into reverse (R).

## ESC Sport

-  Press this icon on the status bar of the touchscreen.
-  Press this icon and switch the feature on.

 Illuminates yellow in the instrument cluster when you switch ESC Sport on.

**Note:** Stability control only reduces and is not fully switched off.

## SWITCHING STABILITY CONTROL ON AND OFF - RWD

The system turns on when you switch your vehicle on and you cannot switch the system off.

**Note:** The system is disabled when you shift into reverse (R).

## STABILITY CONTROL INDICATOR



Flashes yellow during operation. Shortly illuminates when you switch your vehicle on. If it does not illuminate when you switch your vehicle on, or continuously illuminates, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

# Stability Control

---

## STABILITY CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING

### STABILITY CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

| Message                                         | Details                                                                                                                 |
|-------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ESC Sport: directional stability is restricted. | Displays the status of the stability control system when you switch ESC Sport on. The system turns into a reduced mode. |

# Steering

## ELECTRIC POWER STEERING

### HOW DOES ELECTRIC POWER STEERING WORK

The electric power steering system assists the brake system to help operate advanced stability control and accident avoidance systems.

If your vehicle loses electrical power or detects a concern when you are driving, the system switches to reduced steering assist or manual steering. Additionally, whenever disconnecting the battery or installing a new one, you must drive your vehicle a short distance before the system relearns the strategy and reactivates all systems.

### ELECTRIC POWER STEERING PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** The electric power steering system has diagnostic checks that continuously monitor the system. If a fault is detected, a message displays in the information display. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Switch the vehicle off. After at least 10 seconds, switch the vehicle on and watch the information display for a steering system warning message. If a steering system warning message returns, have the system checked as soon as possible.



**WARNING:** If the system detects an error, you may not feel a difference in the steering, however a serious condition may exist. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. Failure to do so may result in loss of steering control.

Adapt your speed and driving behavior according to reduced steering assist.

Extreme continuous steering may increase the effort to steer. This occurs to prevent internal overheating and damage to the steering system. If this occurs, you will not lose the ability to steer your vehicle manually nor will it cause damage to the system. Normal steering and driving allows the system to cool down and steering assist returns to normal.

**Note:** *There is no fluid reservoir to check or fill.*

When your vehicle is still moving, a significant decrease in steering assistance or a loss of steering assistance could occur if:

- You switch your vehicle off.
- Your vehicle loses electrical power.
- Your vehicle detects a concern.

When your vehicle is off and your vehicle begins moving, there is no steering assistance.

## STEERING – TROUBLESHOOTING

### STEERING – WARNING LAMPS



If it illuminates yellow, a fault is present within the vehicle's steering system. If it flashes, restart your vehicle. If it continues to flash, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



If it illuminates or flashes red, a fault is present within the vehicle's steering system. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

# Steering

---

## STEERING – INFORMATION MESSAGES

| Message                                                | Details                                                                                               |
|--------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Power steering not working properly. You can drive on. | The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |
| Power steering not working. Visit workshop!            | The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |
| Steering lock: unable to restart.                      | You cannot restart your vehicle, it requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.  |

# Parking Aids

## PARKING AID PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** To help avoid personal injury, always use caution when in reverse (R) and when using the sensing system.



**WARNING:** The system may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb reflection. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.



**WARNING:** Traffic control systems, fluorescent lamps, inclement weather, air brakes, external motors and fans may affect the correct operation of the sensing system. This may cause reduced performance or false alerts.



**WARNING:** The system may not detect small or moving objects, particularly those close to the ground.



**WARNING:** The parking aid system can only assist you to detect objects when your vehicle is moving at parking speeds. To help avoid personal injury you must take care when using the parking aid system.



**WARNING:** The system may not function if the sensor is blocked.



**WARNING:** In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.



**WARNING:** If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

**Note:** If your vehicle is damaged and the sensors are misaligned, it can cause inaccurate measurements or false alerts.

When you connect a trailer to your vehicle, the rear parking aid detects the trailer and provides an alert. Disable the parking aid when you connect a trailer to prevent the alert.

**Note:** In some cases when a trailer is connected to the vehicle the parking aid automatically turns off.

**Note:** Certain add-on devices installed around the bumper or fascia may create false alerts, for example, large trailer hitches, bike or surfboard racks, license plate brackets, bumper covers or any other device that could block the normal detection zone of the parking aid system.

**Note:** Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt. If the sensors are covered, the accuracy of the system can be affected.

Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.

## SWITCHING PARKING AID ON AND OFF

The parking aid system remains on at all times. You can only switch the audible tone on and off.

The system can not be muted when you are in reverse (R).

The parking aids can be muted in the parking menu.

-  Press to open the settings.
-  Press to open the parking menu.

# Parking Aids

3.  Press to mute or unmute the parking aid.

**Note:** When the parking aids are muted, the automatic audible warning does not sound when your vehicle is approaching an obstacle.

## REAR PARKING AID

### WHAT IS THE REAR PARKING AID

Rear parking sensors detect objects behind your vehicle when in reverse (R).

### REAR PARKING AID LIMITATIONS

There is a decreased coverage area at the outer corners.

The rear parking aid sensors are active when your vehicle is in reverse (R) and the vehicle speed is less than 15 km/h (9 mph).

The rear parking aid detects large objects when your vehicle is in reverse (R) and moving backward at a low speed.

## LOCATING THE REAR PARKING AID SENSORS



The rear parking aid sensors are in the rear bumper.

## REAR PARKING AID AUDIBLE WARNINGS

A warning tone sounds when your vehicle approaches an object. As your vehicle moves closer to an object, the rate of the tone increases. The warning tone continuously sounds when an object is 30 cm (12 in) or less from the rear bumper.

If your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds, the volume of the audible warning decreases. If your vehicle moves backward, the tone increases again.

**Note:** When the parking aid system sounds a tone, the audio system could reduce the set volume.

**Note:** An automatic braking intervention can take place if the driver does not react when an obstacle is approaching.

## Rear Parking Aid Audio Settings

1.  Press this icon.

# Parking Aids

2.  Press this icon.
3.  Press this icon.
4.  Press this icon.

Select your preferred settings.

## FRONT PARKING AID

### WHAT IS THE FRONT PARKING AID

Front parking sensors detect objects in front of your vehicle.

### FRONT PARKING AID LIMITATIONS

The front parking aid sensors are active when your vehicle is in any position other than park (P) and the vehicle speed is less than 15 km/h (9 mph).

The front parking aid detects objects when your vehicle is moving at a low speed or an object is moving toward your vehicle and provides an audible warning, for example another vehicle at a low speed.

If your vehicle is in any forward gear, the front parking aid provides audible warnings and visual indication when your vehicle is moving at a speed of 15 km/h (9 mph) or below and the system detects an object within the detection zone.

When parking aids are muted by the driver, the automatic audible warning does not sound when approaching an obstacle.

## LOCATING THE FRONT PARKING AID SENSORS



The front parking aid sensors are in the front bumper.

## FRONT PARKING AID AUDIBLE WARNINGS

A warning tone sounds when your vehicle approaches an object. As your vehicle moves closer to an object, the rate of the tone increases. The warning tone continuously sounds when an object is 30 cm (12 in) or less from the rear bumper.

If your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds, the volume of the audible warning decreases. If your vehicle moves forward, the tone increases again.

**Note:** When the parking aid system sounds a tone, the audio system could reduce the set volume.

**Note:** An automatic braking intervention can take place if the driver does not react when an obstacle is approaching.

## Front Parking Aid Audio Settings

1.  Press this icon.

# Parking Aids

2.  Press this icon.

3.  Press this icon.

4.  Press this icon.

Select your preferred settings.

## SIDE PARKING AID

### WHAT IS THE SIDE PARKING AID

The front and rear outermost parking aid sensors map objects that are near to the sides of your vehicle.

### SIDE PARKING AID LIMITATIONS

The sensor coverage is up to 90 cm (35 in) from the sides of your vehicle.

The side parking aid may not function if:

- Your vehicle remains stationary for over three minutes.
- The anti-lock brake system activates.
- The traction control system activates.
- Your vehicle is in park (P).
- The steering wheel angle information is not available. You must drive at least 150 m (492 ft) above 30 km/h (19 mph) to reset the steering wheel angle information.

**Note:** If you switch traction control off, the side sensing system also turns off.

To reinitialize the system, drive the length of your vehicle.

The side parking aid does not detect an object that is moving toward the side of your vehicle, for example another vehicle moving at a low speed, if it does not pass a front or rear parking aid sensor.

If the parking aid is on, the side sensing system provides visual indication and audible warning if an obstacle is within 90 cm (35 in) of the side and inside the driving path of your vehicle.

## LOCATING THE SIDE PARKING AID SENSORS



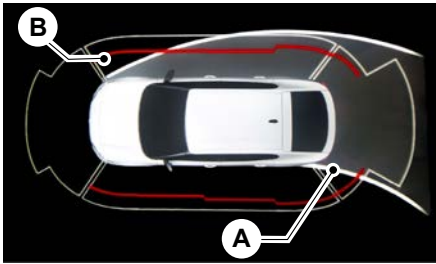
The side parking sensors are in the front and rear bumpers.

## SIDE PARKING AID AUDIBLE WARNINGS

When the side parking aid detects an object within the coverage area and the driving path of your vehicle, an audible warning sounds. As your vehicle moves closer to the object, the rate of the tone increases.



## PARKING AID INDICATORS



- A Steering wheel angle.
- B Object detection.

The system provides object distance indication through the information display.

- As the distance to the object decreases, the indicator lines illuminate and move toward the vehicle image.
- If there is no object detected, the distance indicator lines are gray.

Visual indication remains on when the position selector is in reverse (R).

If the parking aids are not available, the side distance indicator lines do not display.

# Rear View Camera

## WHAT IS THE REAR VIEW CAMERA

The rear view camera provides a video image of the area behind your vehicle when your vehicle is in reverse (R). During operation, active guide lines appear on the Camera screen that represent the path of your vehicle.

## REAR VIEW CAMERA PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** The rear view camera system is a reverse aid supplement device that still requires the driver to use it in conjunction with the interior and exterior mirrors for maximum coverage.



**WARNING:** Objects that are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper, might not be seen on the screen due to the limited coverage of the camera system.



**WARNING:** Objects above the camera may not be visible. Check the area behind your vehicle when necessary.



**WARNING:** Reverse your vehicle slowly. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



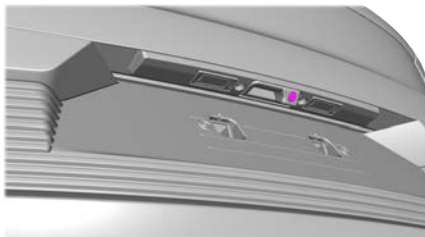
**WARNING:** Use caution when the rear cargo door is ajar. If the rear cargo door is ajar, the camera will be out of position and the video image could be incorrect. All guide lines disappear when the rear cargo door is ajar. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



**WARNING:** Do not switch the camera features on or off when your vehicle is moving.

**Note:** When towing, the camera only sees what you are towing. This might not provide adequate coverage and you might not see some objects. In some vehicles, the guide lines may disappear when you connect the trailer tow connector.

## LOCATING THE REAR VIEW CAMERA



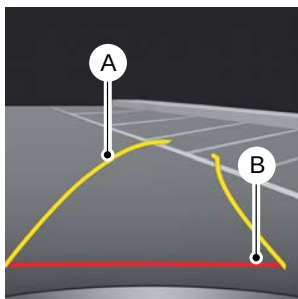
The rear view camera is next to the liftgate switch.

## REAR VIEW CAMERA GUIDELINES



**WARNING:** Objects above the camera may not be visible. Check the area behind your vehicle when necessary.

# Rear View Camera



- A Yellow: Active guide lines.
- B Red: Boundary or vehicle safety clearance.

Rear view touch buttons:

- Rear Cross Traffic View: Shows a wide-angle view to monitor the cross traffic behind the vehicle. See **Active Park Assist** (page 214).
- Rear Normal View: Shows the rear camera default view. See **Rear View Camera** (page 210).
- Trailer Hitch View: The centerline shows the drive path of the trailer hitch. See **360 Degree Camera** (page 212).

## REAR VIEW CAMERA VIDEOS

Animations are shown to enhance the written content and not intended to replace it. We recommend that you read the Owner's Manual for full details.

For more information scan here:

[\*Explorer Rear View Camera Video Link\*](#)

# 360 Degree Camera

## HOW DOES THE 360 DEGREE CAMERA WORK

The 360 degree camera system consists of front, side and rear cameras.

The 360 Degree Camera system:

- Allows you to see what is directly in front of or behind your vehicle.
- Provides a cross traffic view in front of and behind your vehicle.
- Allows you to see a top-down view of the area outside your vehicle, including the blind spots and obstacles near your vehicle.

## 360 DEGREE CAMERA PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** The 360 degree camera system still requires the driver to use it in conjunction with looking out of the windows, and checking the interior and exterior mirrors for maximum coverage.



**WARNING:** Objects that are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper, might not be seen on the screen due to the limited coverage of the camera system.



**WARNING:** Do not switch the camera features on or off when your vehicle is moving.



**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

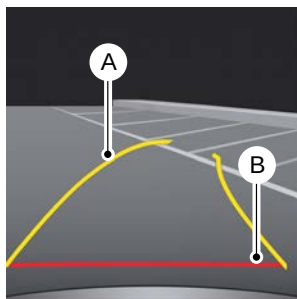
## 360 DEGREE CAMERA LIMITATIONS

**Note:** Use caution if a door is ajar. The camera could be out of position and the image could be incorrect.

## 360 DEGREE CAMERA GUIDELINES



**WARNING:** Objects above the camera may not be visible. Check the area behind your vehicle when necessary.



- A Yellow line: Shows the drive path of the vehicle.
- B Red line: Show the vehicle safety clearance.

# 360 Degree Camera

---

## 360 DEGREE CAMERA SETTINGS

### SWITCHING THE 360 DEGREE CAMERA ON AND OFF

#### Switching the 360 Degree Camera On

To switch the 360 degree camera on, perform any of the following actions:

- Change the gear to reverse (R).
- Press the camera button in the center console.
- Press the parking button "P" on the display touchscreen.

#### Switching the 360 Degree Camera Off

To switch the 360 degree camera off, perform any of the following actions:

- Drive faster than 10 km/h (6 mph).
- Press the camera button in the center console.
- Press the parking button "P" on the display touchscreen.

### SWITCHING THE 360 DEGREE CAMERA VIEW

To change the camera view, press the icons located in the upper left corner of the camera image or press one of the four areas around the top view vehicle icon.

- Front normal view.
- Front cross traffic view.
- Rear normal view.
- Rear cross traffic view.
- Trailer hitch view.

**Note:** Depending on your vehicle options and region not all options are available.

# Active Park Assist

## WHAT IS ACTIVE PARK ASSIST

Assists you with parking in and out of parking spaces.

## HOW DOES ACTIVE PARK ASSIST WORK

Active park assist uses sensors to detect parking spaces. The system steers, accelerates, brakes and shifts gears as necessary to maneuver into or out of a parking space.

## ACTIVE PARK ASSIST PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** You must remain in your vehicle when the system turns on. At all times you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system, and intervening if required. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** The sensors may not detect objects in heavy rain or other conditions that cause interference.



**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not use the system with accessories that extend beyond the front or rear of your vehicle, for example a trailer hitch or bike rack. The system is not able to make corrections for the additional length of the accessories.

**Note:** Park Assist cannot be activated if a trailer is electrically connected to the vehicle. Park Assist must be deactivated manually if you tow a trailer with a towing bracket that was not fitted at the factory.

## SWITCHING ACTIVE PARK ASSIST ON AND OFF

1. Start your vehicle.

2.



Press to open the parking menu.

3.



Press to switch park assist on.

**Note:** You can activate park assist retrospectively after driving past a suitable parking space.

## Cancelling Active Park Assist

To cancel parking assistance at any time press the active park assist button or turn the steering wheel.

## SEARCHING FOR A PARKING SPACE

1.



Press to open the settings.

2.



Press to open the parking menu.

## Active Park Assist

3. Drive your vehicle parallel to the other parked vehicles.

**Note:** Park assist automatically searches for possible parking spaces displaying them on the touchscreen, and highlights the preferred parking space.

**Note:** In case of multiple parking spaces select the desired parking space.

4.  Press to select the parking mode.

**Note:** The selected parking space is marked by the blue colored vehicle.

**Note:** A circular arrow sign appears if the parking mode can be changed.

5. Stop your vehicle and press the brake pedal.

**Note:** You can activate park assist after passing a suitable parking space.

### ENTERING A PARKING SPACE

1. Select a parking space on the touchscreen.
2. Hold your vehicle with the brake pedal.
3. Press Start on the touchscreen.
4. Release the steering wheel.
5. Release the brake.

**Note:** The parking procedure starts.

6. Park assist independently changes your vehicle's direction of travel.
7. Wait until park assist finishes turning the steering wheel at the end of the parking.

**Note:** When the parking procedure is complete, a message appears on the touchscreen and an acoustic signal sounds.

8. The electric parking brake automatically switches on.

**Note:** You can slow down your vehicle at any time during the parking maneuver by pressing the brake pedal.

In a situation when the front or rear of the vehicle is driven into a parking space, but the parking is not completed, park assist can take control of the parking procedure and guide the vehicle into the parking space.

### Guiding the vehicle into the parking space

1. Hold your vehicle with the brake pedal.

2.  Press to open the settings.

3.  Press to open the parking menu.

4.  Press to switch park assist on.

**Note:** The selected parking space appears on the touchscreen.

5. Press start to begin the parking procedure.
6. Release the steering wheel.
7. Release the brake.

**Note:** The parking procedure starts.

8. Park assist independently changes the vehicle's direction of travel.
9. Wait until park assist finishes turning the steering wheel at the end of the parking.

**Note:** When the parking procedure is complete, a message appears on the touchscreen and an acoustic signal sounds.

10. The electric parking brake automatically switches on.

# Active Park Assist

## EXITING A PARKING SPACE

To exit a parallel parking space follow the instructions below.

1. Start your vehicle.
2. Press and hold the brake pedal.
3. Activate park assist.
4. Use the turn signal lever to select the direction in which you want to drive out of the parallel parking space.
5. Press start on the touchscreen.
6. Release the steering wheel.
7. Release the brake pedal.
8. Park assist starts to guide the vehicle out of the parking space but does not fully drive the vehicle out of it.
9. Take over control and completely drive the vehicle out of the parking space.

## ACTIVE PARK ASSIST WITH MEMORY FUNCTION

### ACTIVE PARK ASSIST WITH MEMORY FUNCTION PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** You must remain in your vehicle when the system turns on. At all times you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system, and intervening if required. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** The sensors may not detect objects in heavy rain or other conditions that cause interference.



**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not use the system with accessories that extend beyond the front or rear of your vehicle, for example a trailer hitch or bike rack. The system is not able to make corrections for the additional length of the accessories.

## HOW DOES ACTIVE PARK ASSIST WITH MEMORY FUNCTION WORK

Active park assist with memory function is an extension of active park assist. It assists when parking in frequently used parking spaces. The vehicle maneuvers automatically on a previously stored route to the parking space.

Active park assist with memory function uses the front camera to detect the surrounding area and stores the path into the parking space, with a maximum distance of about 50 m (54.7 yd). Once you store the parking procedure, the vehicle can automatically drive the route to or from the parking space.

## PROGRAMMING ACTIVE PARK ASSIST WITH MEMORY FUNCTION

Up to five stored parking procedures can be stored as favorites in the menu of active park assist with memory function.



# Active Park Assist

## Programming the driving into a parking space

1. Drive to the selected parking space as usual.
2. Park your vehicle safely.

3.  Press to open the parking menu.

4.  Press to open active park assist with memory function.

5. Press the save parking icon.
6. Name the new parking procedure and select an icon for it.

**Note:** You may also save the parking procedure when leaving your vehicle. The exit menu will display a message asking if you want to save the parking procedure.

## Programming the driving out of a parking space

The vehicle should be in a parking space for which a procedure for driving into a parking space is already stored.

1. Start your vehicle.
2.  Press to open the parking menu.

3.  Press to open active park assist with memory function.

4. Select the stored parking space in which your vehicle is currently parked.

**Note:** At the top of the screen a message appears, showing that the training for driving out of a parking space can be started.

5. Press the function button for exiting displayed on the touchscreen.

**Note:** Your vehicle starts recording the exit route.

6. Drive out of the parking space.
7. Confirm the end of the procedure for driving out of the parking space by pressing the complete button on the touchscreen.

The procedure for exiting the parking space is also stored in the current parking space.

**Note:** The programming operation is automatically saved if the speed is too high or if the distance covered exceeds 25 m (27.3 yd).

To reprogram the procedure of driving in and out of a parking space, delete the selected procedure, and program it again.



Press this icon to delete an existing procedure.



Press this icon to edit a selected parking procedure when in the active park assist with memory function menu.

**Note:** Always maintain awareness and pay attention to system messages appearing on the touchscreen during the parking procedure.

## ENTERING AND EXITING A PARKING SPACE

### Entering a parking space

When your vehicle approaches a stored parking space, the active park assist with memory function will show a notification.

1. Stop the vehicle and hold it stationary with the brake.

# Active Park Assist

2.  If necessary, open the parking system menu on the touchscreen and press the available parking space. The parking space recognised by the system is marked with this icon.

3. Press Start and release the brakes.

**Note:** *The parking procedure for driving into a space starts.*

4. To ensure the best parking result, always wait until the steering wheel movements are completed.

At the end of the parking maneuver, a text message is displayed on the touchscreen and an acoustic signal sounds. The electric parking brake is switched on.

**Note:** *Stop as close as possible, at most 1 m (1.1 yd) away from the stored vehicle path. Always approach the starting position from the same direction of travel.*

**Note:** *Try to avoid using active park assist with memory function during poor visibility conditions, as there may be functional restrictions.*

## Exiting a parking space

Your vehicle should be parked in one of the parking spaces for which the driving out of parking space procedure is already programmed.

1. Start your vehicle.

2.  Press to open the parking menu.

3.  Press to open active park assist with memory function.

4.  Select the saved parking slot where your vehicle is currently parked.

5. Hold the vehicle with the brake.

**Note:** *The parking procedure for driving out of a space starts.*

6. Press Start on the touchscreen and release the brakes.

7. To ensure the best parking result, always wait until the steering wheel movements are completed.

8. Take control of the vehicle.

## REVERSING ASSIST

### REVERSING ASSIST PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** You must remain in your vehicle when the system turns on. At all times you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system, and intervening if required. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** The sensors may not detect objects in heavy rain or other conditions that cause interference.



**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive, stop and park with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** To help avoid personal injury always use caution when in reverse (R) and when using the rear view camera.



**WARNING:** Do not use the system with accessories that extend beyond the front or rear of your vehicle, for example a trailer hitch or bike rack. The system is not able to make corrections for the additional length of the accessories.

## HOW DOES REVERSING ASSIST WORK

Reversing assist helps you reverse when it is not possible to turn your vehicle.

If you activate the feature, the system records the last 50 m (54.7 yd) of the path you drive forward if the vehicle speed is below 35 km/h (21.7 mph). A counter on the touchscreen shows the reducing distance while reversing.

You can follow the path up to a maximum speed of approximately 10 km/h (6.2 mph).

The recorded path is also stored after a power cycle.

## ACTIVATING REVERSING ASSIST



Press this button on the center console to open the parking menu.

When your vehicle is in (R) the parking menu automatically opens in the touchscreen.

1. Select Reversing Assist.
2. Bring your vehicle to a complete stop.
3. Press Start.

**Note:** A display message appears in the cluster and on the touchscreen as well to remind you that the feature is activated.

4. Release the steering wheel.
5. Release the brake and take control of the speed.

The vehicle reverses the last 50 meters of the path you driven forward.

## REVERSING USING REVERSING ASSIST

Reversing assist only helps steer your vehicle. It is your responsibility to control the speed of the vehicle.

**Note:** A message appears in the cluster to remind you to take control of the steering after the maneuver.

You can deactivate the feature on the touchscreen or by taking over the steering control. If your vehicle exceeds the maximum speed of 10 km/h (6.2 mph) the feature automatically deactivates.

Reversing assist cannot be activated if a trailer is electrically connected to the vehicle.

Reversing assist must be deactivated manually if you tow a trailer with a towing bracket that was not fitted at the factory.

# Adaptive Cruise Control

## HOW DOES ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WITH STOP AND GO WORK

Adaptive cruise control with stop and go uses radar and camera sensors to maintain a set gap between your vehicle and the vehicle in front of you while following it to a complete stop. Stop and go can also be set to follow a vehicle directly in front of you and adjust the set speed, while you are at a complete stop.

## ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL PRECAUTIONS

 **WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

 **WARNING:** Do not use adaptive cruise control on winding roads, in heavy traffic or when the road surface is slippery. This could result in loss of vehicle control, serious injury or death.

 **WARNING:** Pay close attention to changing road conditions such as entering or leaving a highway, on roads with intersections or roundabouts, roads without visible lanes of travel, roads that are unpaved, or steep slopes. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

 **WARNING:** The system is not a crash warning or avoidance system.

 **WARNING:** Do not use the system when towing a trailer that has aftermarket electronic trailer brake controls. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

 **WARNING:** Do not use tire sizes other than those recommended because this can affect the normal operation of the system. Failure to do so may result in a loss of vehicle control, which could result in serious injury.

 **WARNING:** Do not use the system with a snow plow blade installed.

 **WARNING:** In situations with poor visibility, such as fog, heavy rain or other inclement weather, you may need to override or completely switch off the system.

## When Following a Vehicle

 **WARNING:** When following a vehicle that is braking, your vehicle does not always decelerate quickly enough to avoid a crash without driver intervention. Apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

# Adaptive Cruise Control

## ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL LIMITATIONS

### Sensor Limitations

**WARNING:** On rare occasions, detection issues can occur due to the road infrastructures, for example bridges, tunnels and safety barriers. In these cases, the system may brake late or unexpectedly. At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required.

**WARNING:** If the system malfunctions, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

**WARNING:** Large contrasts in outside lighting can limit sensor performance.

**WARNING:** The system only warns of vehicles detected by the radar sensor. In some cases there may be no warning or a delayed warning. Apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** The system may not detect stationary or slow moving vehicles below 10 km/h (6 mph).

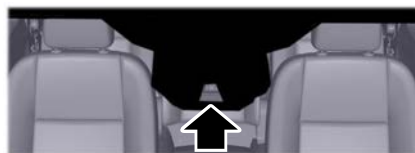
**WARNING:** The system does not detect pedestrians or objects in the road.

**WARNING:** The system does not detect oncoming vehicles in the same lane.

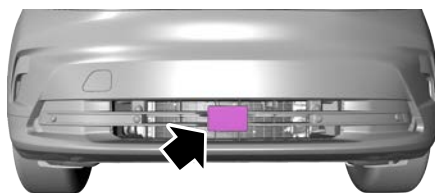
**WARNING:** The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.

**WARNING:** The sensor may incorrectly track lane markings as other structures or objects. This can result in a false or missed warning.

**WARNING:** If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



The camera is mounted behind the interior mirror.



The radar is behind the front grille below the license plate.

**Note:** You cannot see the sensor. It is behind a fascia panel.

**Note:** Keep the front of your vehicle free of dirt, metal badges or objects. Vehicle front protectors, aftermarket lights, additional paint or plastic coatings could also degrade sensor performance.

# Adaptive Cruise Control

A message displays if something obstructs the camera or the sensor. When something blocks the sensor, the system cannot detect a vehicle ahead and does not function.

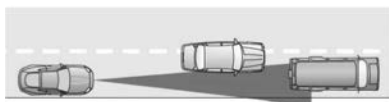
The radar sensor has a limited field of view.

It may not detect vehicles at all or detect a vehicle later than expected in some situations.

The lead vehicle image does not illuminate if the system does not detect a vehicle in front of you.

## Detection Issues Can Occur:

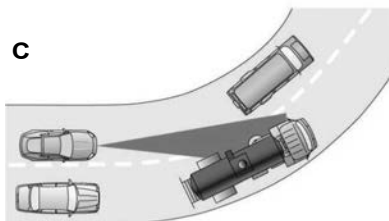
**A**



**B**



**C**



**D**



- A Vehicles that change into your lane directly in front of your vehicle.
- B Vehicles that are driving outside the sensor range in close proximity to your vehicle.
- C Vehicles in tight bends.
- D The system reacts to stationary vehicles to a limited extent. If it detects a stationary vehicle, your vehicle brakes behind the stationary vehicle within the limits of the system.

# Adaptive Cruise Control

In these cases, the system may brake late or unexpectedly.

If something hits the front end of your vehicle or damage occurs, the radar-sensing zone may change. This could cause missed or false vehicle detection.

Optimal system performance requires a clear view of the road by the windshield camera.

Optimal performance may not occur if:

- The camera is blocked.
- There is poor visibility or lighting conditions.
- There are bad weather conditions.
- There are road works, tunnels or toll stations ahead.
- Driving on windy roads.
- Driving on difficult terrain.
- Driving in multi-storey car parks.
- Approaching a railway crossing.

## SWITCHING ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL ON AND OFF

1.  Press the mode selector button on the left-hand side of the steering-wheel until adaptive cruise control is selected in the instrument cluster display.

2.  The system turns on in standby mode, and the symbol illuminates gray in the instrument cluster display.

**Note:** To activate the system, resume the set speed. See **Resuming the Set Speed** (page 225).

To turn the system off, select a different driving assist system by pressing the mode selector button with the system in standby.

## ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL AUTOMATIC CANCELLATION

The system could cancel if any of the following occur:

- The tires lose traction.
- The system automatically applies the parking brake.
- Traction control is active.

Automatic parking brake application and cancellation occurs if any of the following occur:

- You unfasten the seatbelt and open the door after you stop your vehicle.
- Your vehicle remains stationary for longer than three minutes.

The system could deactivate or prevent activating when requested if:

- The vehicle has a blocked sensor.
- The brake temperature is too high.
- There is a failure in the system.

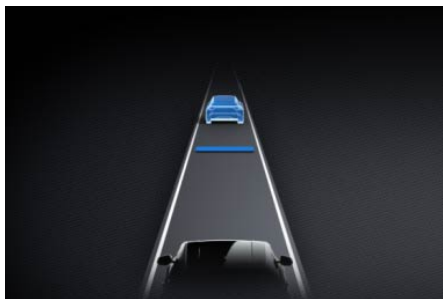
## SETTING THE ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL SPEED

**SET** Press the button to set the current speed.

Adaptive cruise control stores the current speed and maintains the set distance.

The indicator, current gap setting and set speed appear in the instrument cluster display.

# Adaptive Cruise Control



A vehicle graphic appears in the instrument cluster display if the system detects a vehicle in front of you.

**Note:** When adaptive cruise control is active, the speedometer could vary slightly from the set speed displayed in the instrument cluster display.

## Setting the Adaptive Cruise Speed When Your Vehicle is Stationary

1. Keep the brake pedal fully pressed.
2.  Press and release the button.

The set speed adjusts to 20 km/h (12 mph).

The indicator and the set speed appear in the instrument cluster display.

## Changing the Set Speed

You can adjust the set speed in small or large increments.



Gently press to increase the speed in small increments.



Gently press to decrease the speed in small increments.

Strongly press either of the buttons to adjust the set speed in large increments.

Press and hold the corresponding button to continuously change the stored speed.

If the system detects a speed limit different from the set speed, a message appears in the instrument cluster display. Press either button to set it as the new speed.

If necessary, the system applies the brakes to slow your vehicle to the new set speed. The set speed continuously displays in the instrument cluster display when the system is active.

## SETTING THE ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL GAP

1.  Press the button.
2.  Press the button to increase the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle in front.
3.  Press the button to decrease the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle in front.

Alternatively:



Press the button repeatedly to select the required distance.

**Note:** It is your responsibility to select a gap appropriate to the driving conditions.

The selected gap appears in the instrument cluster display as shown by the bars in the image. You can select five gap settings.

When you start your vehicle, the system automatically selects the last chosen gap setting.



# Adaptive Cruise Control

## Following a Vehicle

When a vehicle ahead of you enters the same lane or a slower vehicle is ahead in the same lane, the vehicle speed adjusts to maintain a preset gap distance.

A vehicle graphic appears in the instrument cluster display.

**Note:** *When you are following a vehicle and you switch on a turn signal indicator, adaptive cruise control may provide a small temporary acceleration to help you pass.*

Your vehicle maintains a consistent gap from the vehicle ahead until:

- The vehicle in front of you accelerates to a speed above the set speed.
- The vehicle in front of you moves out of the lane you are in.
- You set a new gap distance.

The system applies the brakes to slow your vehicle to maintain a safe gap distance from the vehicle in front. The system only applies limited braking. You can override the system by applying the brakes.

If the system determines that its maximum braking level is not sufficient, an audible warning sounds when the system continues to brake. Take immediate action.

## Following a Vehicle to a Complete Stop

If your vehicle follows a vehicle to a complete stop and remains stationary for a short period of time, the system remains active. The instrument cluster display shows that the adaptive cruise control is ready to start. If your hands are on the steering wheel, your vehicle automatically accelerates from a stationary position to follow the vehicle ahead within a short period of time.

**RES**

If your vehicle does not accelerate automatically, you have to press and release the button or press the accelerator pedal to follow the vehicle ahead.

## CANCELING THE SET SPEED



Press the button or tap the brake pedal.

The indicator lamp lights up gray, the speed and distance remain stored.

## RESUMING THE SET SPEED

**RES**

Press the button.

Your vehicle speed returns to the previously set speed and gap setting. The set speed displays continuously in the instrument cluster display when the system is active.

**Note:** *Only use resume if you are aware of the set speed and intend to return to it.*

Press the button again within a short period of time to set the speed to the previously detected speed limit.

**Note:** *This feature works only after the system detects a new speed limit.*

## OVERRIDING THE SET SPEED



**WARNING:** If you override the system by pressing the accelerator pedal, it does not automatically apply the brakes to maintain a gap from any vehicle ahead.

When you press the accelerator pedal, you override the set speed and gap distance.

# Adaptive Cruise Control

Use the accelerator pedal to intentionally exceed the set speed limit.

When you override the system, the part of indicator changes to gray.

The system resumes operation when you release the accelerator pedal. The vehicle speed decreases to the set speed, or a lower speed if following a slower vehicle.

## ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL INDICATORS



Illuminates when you switch adaptive cruise control on. The icon changes to indicate the system status.

Indicates the system is on, the system detects no vehicle ahead.



The color of the symbol changes to indicate that the system is on and detects a vehicle ahead.

White indicates that the system is on, but passive.

Blue indicates that the system is active.

## LANE CENTERING

### HOW DOES LANE CENTERING WORK

Adaptive cruise control with lane centering uses the vehicle's front radar sensor and front windshield camera sensor, together with the steering sensor to operate.

Using these sensors, the system applies continuous steering assistance towards driving in the middle of the lane you choose on highway roads.

**Note:** *The gap setting for adaptive cruise control with lane centering operates in the same way as normal adaptive cruise control.*

If your vehicle is equipped with lane-biasing and you drive off-center within the lane, the system sets and maintains that preferred lane position. The system provides continuous assistance steering torque input toward the preferred position.

**Note:** *The system can only set preferred lane positions within the lane.*

**Note:** *If the system cancels, the preferred position erases. On the next activation, the system provides continuous assistance steering torque input toward the lane center.*

## LANE CENTERING PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Do not use the system when towing a trailer. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not use the system if any changes or modifications to the steering wheel have been made. Any changes or modifications to the steering wheel could affect the functionality or performance of the system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

Adaptive cruise control precautions apply to lane centering unless stated otherwise or contradicted by a lane centering precaution. See **Adaptive Cruise Control Precautions** (page 220).

## LANE CENTERING REQUIREMENTS

You must keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times.

# Adaptive Cruise Control

Lane centering only activates when all of the following occur:

- You activate lane centering using the button on the left side of the steering wheel. See **Switching Lane Centering On and Off** (page 227).
- The steering wheel sensor detects your hands on the steering wheel.
- The system detects lane markings.
- Your vehicle is initially centered in the driving lane.

**Note:** *If the system does not detect a valid lane, the system will remain in standby until a valid lane is available.*

## LANE CENTERING LIMITATIONS

Adaptive cruise control limitations apply to lane centering unless stated otherwise or contradicted by a lane centering limitation.

Lane centering may not correctly operate in any of the following conditions:

- The lane width is too narrow or wide.
- The curve in the road is too small.
- The system does not detect the minimum required lane markings or when lanes merge or split.
- When the required steering effort to maintain lane center exceeds the lane centering system limit.
- When driving in areas that are under construction or when road work is in progress.
- If you wear gloves while driving, your hands are not detected on the steering wheel.
- If the front windshield camera and/or the front radar are blocked.
- Inclement weather conditions including, but not limited to, high wind, heavy rain, and fog.
- Driving into direct sunlight.

- When modification to the steering system has been made, including alterations to the steering wheel.
- When towing a trailer.
- Never use the system offroad or on unsurfaced roads. It is designed solely for use on surfaced roads.
- The system does not react to people, animals, crossing vehicles or vehicles that approaching in the same lane from the opposite direction.

See **Lane Centering Precautions** (page 226).

**Note:** *The system steering assistance is limited and may not have sufficient effort for all driving situations and/or conditions, such as driving through tight curves or driving through curves at high speeds.*

## SWITCHING LANE CENTERING ON AND OFF

You must keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times.

The controls are on the left hand side of the steering wheel.



The indicator appears in the instrument cluster display. When the lane centering system is on, the color of the indicator changes to indicate the system status.

You can override the system at any time by steering your vehicle.

**Note:** *The lane centering requirements must be met before you can enable the feature. See **Lane Centering Requirements** (page 226).*

# Adaptive Cruise Control

## Enabling and Disabling Lane Centering

-  Press the mode selector button on the left-hand side of the steering wheel until adaptive cruise control with lane centering is selected in the instrument cluster display.
-  The system turns on in standby mode, and the symbol illuminates gray in the instrument cluster display.
-  Press the button.

Lane Centering switches to active or passive system status according to the driving situation.

## Switching to Adaptive Cruise Control

-  Press the button with the system in standby.
-  Select adaptive cruise control in the instrument cluster display.

The vehicle switches from lane centering to adaptive cruise control.

## LANE CENTERING ALERTS

You must keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times.

When the system is active and detects no steering activity for a period of time, the system alerts you to put your hands on the steering wheel. If you fail to do so, the system cancels and driver state assist activates. See **Driver State Assist** (page 46).

The system also alerts you if your vehicle crosses lane markings without detected steering activity.

**Note:** The system could detect a light grip or light touch on the steering wheel as hands-off driving.

## LANE CENTERING AUTOMATIC CANCELLATION

When an external condition cancels the system, and your hands are on the steering wheel, the color of the indicator changes.

When an external condition cancels the system, and your hands are not on the steering wheel, the system immediately alerts you to take control of the vehicle.

Automatic cancellation can also occur if:

- The lane becomes too wide or narrow.
- The system cannot detect valid lane markings.
- Lane markings cross over one another.
- The curve of the road is too sharp.

## LANE CENTERING MANUAL CANCELLATION

When you perform the following actions, adaptive cruise control with lane centering will cancel:

- The brake pedal is pressed.
- Adaptive cruise control button on the steering wheel is switched off.

The lane centering system is momentarily suppressed when either of the following actions are performed:

# Adaptive Cruise Control

- The turn signal indicator is on.
- You steer the vehicle out of lane.

## LANE CENTERING INDICATORS



Illuminates when you switch lane centering on. The color of the indicator changes to indicate the system status.

Gray lane lines indicate lane centering is passive.

Blue lane lines indicate lane centering is active.

If the system detects a fault, the symbol illuminates yellow and a message appears in the instrument cluster display. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## LANE CENTERING – TROUBLESHOOTING

### LANE CENTERING – INFORMATION MESSAGES

| Message             | Details                                                    |
|---------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|
| Take over steering! | The system requests that you take over the steering wheel. |

## PREDICTIVE SPEED ASSIST

### HOW DOES PREDICTIVE SPEED ASSIST WORK

Predictive speed assist works with adaptive cruise control and adjusts the vehicle speed to the road geometry and to the speed limit detected by the traffic sign recognition system and the navigation data. As the system identifies turns, roundabouts, curves and highway ramps, the vehicle speed temporarily decreases ahead of and during the changing road geometry. When passing new speed signs, the set speed updates. See **Predictive Speed Assist Precautions** (page 229).

There are limitations that affect the accuracy of the traffic sign recognition system and its ability to determine the current speed limit. Predictive speed assist and its ability to determine the current speed limit shares these limitations. See **Traffic Sign Recognition** (page 262).

**Note:** *The adaptive cruise control gap setting operates normally when the feature is enabled.*

### PREDICTIVE SPEED ASSIST PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Pay close attention to changing road conditions. You may need to override the system by pressing the brake or accelerator pedal if the adjusted speed becomes higher or lower than necessary.

# Adaptive Cruise Control



**WARNING:** The system only provides limited braking. Your vehicle may not always decelerate quickly enough to avoid a crash without driver intervention. Apply the brakes when necessary.



**WARNING:** The system does not activate the turn signal.

Adaptive cruise control precautions apply to predictive speed assist unless stated otherwise or contradicted by a predictive speed assist precaution. See **Adaptive Cruise Control Precautions** (page 220).

The system only applies limited braking. You can override the system with the accelerator pedal or cancel the system by applying the brakes.

The system may adapt to various factors such as time of day, lane width. This could influence speed adjustments and accelerations.

The system may adapt to various drive modes. See **Drive Mode Control** (page 182). This could influence speed adjustments and accelerations.

**Note:** *The system does not activate the turn signal automatically.*

## PREDICTIVE SPEED ASSIST LIMITATIONS



**WARNING:** The system may not always adjust vehicle speed in certain road or weather conditions such as crossing traffic, yield or stop signs, right of way, traffic lights, speed bumps, rain, snow, fog. You must always apply the brake or accelerator pedal when necessary.

The road geometry and speed limit information provided by the navigation map data could be inaccurate or out of date.

The system may not detect and read speed limit signs with conditional information, for example, when a sign is flashing, during specific time ranges, or when children are present.

**Note:** *The system may not set the vehicle speed to speed limits shown with a supplementary traffic sign.*

Under certain conditions, the system may not adjust the vehicle speed until after your vehicle passes the speed limit.

Detection of road geometry operates only where related information is available. Road geometry information may not be available in some areas.

## SWITCHING PREDICTIVE SPEED ASSIST MODE ON AND OFF

1.  Press this icon.
2.  Press this icon.
3. Select driving support.
4. Make the required adjustments.

## PREDICTIVE SPEED ASSIST ALERTS

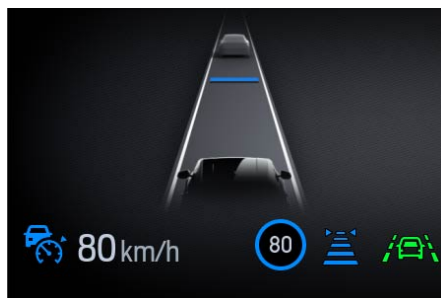
If the speed sign recognition system detects a speed limit below the minimum adaptive cruise control set speed, a tone sounds and the system returns to standby mode.

# Adaptive Cruise Control

## PREDICTIVE SPEED ASSIST INDICATORS

When the system detects a sign, curve, turn, roundabout, highway exit or traffic light a grey indicator appears in the instrument cluster display. When the system reacts, the indicator turns blue and a message appears in the instrument cluster display. See **Switching Predictive Speed Assist Mode On and Off** (page 230).

### Speed Sign Indicator



When the system detects a new speed sign, a blue indicator and a message appear in the instrument cluster display. When the speed limit is reached, the set speed updates unless you cancel it by pressing the **RES** button on the steering wheel.

### Road Geometry Indicator

When the system detects a curve, turn, roundabout, or highway exit a message appears, the indicator color changes from gray to blue, and the vehicle starts to slow down.

### Road Geometry Indicator Symbols



Left curve.



Right curve.



Curve.



Intersection.



Roundabout.



Highway exit.

**Note:** The displayed symbols may differ from the ones displayed in your vehicle. Future system updates may alter or update the symbols.

### Traffic Light Indicator



When the system detects a yellow or a red traffic light, a message appears, the indicator color changes from gray to blue, and the vehicle starts to slow down and stops. When the traffic light turns green, you need to either press the accelerator pedal or press the **RES** button on the steering wheel.

### Stop Sign Indicator



When the system detects a stop sign, a message appears, the indicator color changes from gray to blue, and the vehicle starts to slow down and stops. Press the accelerator pedal or press the **RES** button to continue your journey.

# Adaptive Cruise Control

---

## ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING

### ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL – WARNING LAMPS



Illuminates in the instrument cluster, if the system is not available. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



If the system cannot brake sufficiently while following a vehicle, the symbol appears on the instrument cluster and an audible warning sounds, prompting you to apply the brakes. Take immediate action.



# Lane Change Assist

## HOW DOES LANE CHANGE ASSIST WORK



**WARNING:** Do not use the lane change assist system as a replacement for using the interior and exterior mirrors or looking over your shoulder before changing lanes. The lane change assist system is not a replacement for careful driving.

Lane change assist requirements:

- Adaptive cruise control is active.
- Lane centering is active.
- Lane change assist is only available on roads with multiple driving lanes in the same direction and structural separation between lanes of different driving direction.



Lane change assist can automatically perform a single lane change when you request the lane change using the turn signal lever. This feature is available at 65 km/h (40 mph) and above.

**Note:** Make sure the lane you are requesting is clear of traffic or obstacles.

## LANE CHANGE ASSIST PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** The system will not operate if the sensor cannot track the road lane markings.



**WARNING:** The sensor may incorrectly track lane markings as other structures or objects. This can result in a false or missed warning.



**WARNING:** In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.



**WARNING:** The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.



**WARNING:** If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



**WARNING:** Do not use the system when towing a trailer. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

# Lane Change Assist



**WARNING:** Do not use the system if any changes or modifications to the steering wheel have been made. Any changes or modifications to the steering wheel could affect the functionality or performance of the system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Large contrasts in outside lighting can limit sensor performance.

See **Adaptive Cruise Control Precautions** (page 220).

See **Lane Centering Precautions** (page 226).

## LANE CHANGE ASSIST LIMITATIONS

Lane change assist will not perform the requested maneuver if traffic is identified in the selected lane.

## SWITCHING LANE CHANGE ASSIST ON AND OFF

1.  Press this icon.
2.  Press this icon.
3. Select driving support and make the required adjustments.

## ACTIVATING AND DEACTIVATING LANE CHANGE ASSIST

### Activating Lane Change Assist

If all preconditions are met, and adaptive cruise control is on, lane change assist activates automatically. Always activate adaptive cruise control first by using the button on the steering wheel.

### Deactivating Lane Change Assist



Press this button on the steering wheel.

Alternatively:

Press the brake pedal. Lane change assist and lane centering are deactivated.

**Note:** You can also deactivate the lane change assist by using the touchscreen.

## LANE CHANGE ASSIST CANCELLATION

You can cancel lane change assist by choosing any of the following steps:



Press this button on the steering wheel.

- Press the brake pedal.
- Steer your vehicle to the opposite direction.
- Move your turn signal lever in the opposite direction.

# Lane Change Assist

---

## LANE CHANGE ASSIST – TROUBLESHOOTING

### LANE CHANGE ASSIST – INFORMATION MESSAGES

| Message                                                | Details                                          |
|--------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| Lane Change Assist stopped. Take control of vehicle!   | The system stopped. Take control of the vehicle. |
| Lane Change Assist stopped. Please take over steering. | The system stopped. Take control of the vehicle. |
| Lane Change Assist stopped. Brake!                     | The system stopped. Press the brake pedal.       |

# Local Hazard Information

## WHAT IS LOCAL HAZARD INFORMATION

The system is designed to provide near real-time information about the road in front of you.

## LOCAL HAZARD INFORMATION PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

## ENABLING LOCAL HAZARD INFORMATION

Local hazard information is an extension of the connected navigation feature. Make sure that you enable connected navigation See **Navigation** (page 371).

## LOCAL HAZARD INFORMATION INDICATORS

When the feature is active, the system may display the following icons on the navigation screen depending on the driving situation.



Broken down vehicle.



Accident.



Slippery road.

# Intelligent Speed Limiter

## WHAT IS THE INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER

Intelligent speed limiter is a driving aid that limits the vehicle speed to the maximum speed limit detected by the speed sign recognition system.

## HOW DOES THE INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER WORK

The system allows you to limit the vehicle speed to the maximum speed limit detected by the speed sign recognition system. For example, if the speed sign recognition system detects a 80 km/h speed limit, the vehicle speed is limited to 80 km/h. You can temporarily exceed the set speed if required, for example to overtake.

The controls are on the steering wheel.

A warning appears in the instrument cluster display if any of the following occur:

- The vehicle speed exceeds the current set speed.
- The system detects a maximum speed limit that is lower than the current vehicle speed.
- You intentionally exceed the set speed.
- You unintentionally exceed the set speed, for example when you are going downhill.

## INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** When you are going downhill, your vehicle speed could increase above the set speed. The system does not apply the brakes.



**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

## SWITCHING THE INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER ON AND OFF

1.  Press the mode selector button on the left-hand side of the steering wheel until speed limiter is selected in the instrument cluster display.
2.  The system turns on in standby mode, and the symbol illuminates gray in the instrument cluster display.

**Note:** To activate the system, resume set speed. See **Resuming the Set Speed Limit** (page 238).

To turn the system off, select a different driving assist system by pressing the mode selector button with the system in standby.

**Note:** The system is off and the set speed is deleted.

## SETTING THE SPEED LIMIT



Press the button while driving.

**Note:** The current speed is stored as the maximum speed.

# Intelligent Speed Limiter

**Note:** When your vehicle is stationary, 30 km/h (19 mph) is set as the default speed limit.

## CHANGING THE SET SPEED LIMIT

You can adjust the set speed in small or large increments.



Gently press to increase the speed in small increments.



Gently press to decrease the speed in small increments.

Strongly press either of the buttons to adjust the set speed in large increments.

Press and hold the corresponding button to continuously change the stored speed.

If the system detects a speed limit different from the set speed, a message appears in the instrument cluster. Press either button to set it as the new speed.

The set speed is stored as the maximum speed and displayed in the instrument cluster display.

**Note:** The set speed limiter adjusts when the system detects a different maximum speed limit.

**Note:** If the system cannot detect a maximum speed limit, the system returns to standby mode.

If the system detects a higher speed than the stored speed, a message appears in the instrument cluster. To adjust the maximum speed limit to that speed during that prompt, press either of the buttons.

## CANCELING THE SET SPEED LIMIT



Press to cancel the set speed limiter.

The system returns to standby mode and the set speed remains in the memory.

**Note:** The system does not limit the vehicle speed in standby mode.

## RESUMING THE SET SPEED LIMIT



Press the button to resume the set speed limiter. The system sets the speed limiter to the

detected maximum speed limit at the time it resumes.

Press the button again within a short period of time to set the speed limiter to the previously detected speed limit.

**Note:** This feature works only after the system detects a new speed limit.

## INTENTIONALLY EXCEEDING THE SET SPEED LIMIT

Press the accelerator pedal all the way down, then firmly press the accelerator pedal further down to exceed the set speed limit.

**Note:** The system will not resume speed limitation, while you are pressing the pedal in this position.



Press the button to set the current speed as speed limit.

The system resumes when the vehicle speed drops below the set speed limit.

# Intelligent Speed Limiter

If you intentionally exceed the set speed, a warning appears in the instrument cluster display and a tone sounds.

The set speed remains stored in the memory.

## INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER INDICATORS



It illuminates green in the instrument cluster display when you switch the system on.

It illuminates gray if the system is not active.

## INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER AUDIBLE WARNINGS

A tone sounds, if the system detects a speed limit outside the operational speed range.

**Note:** *The system stays active.*

## SWITCHING FROM INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER TO SPEED LIMITER

You can change between intelligent speed limiter and normal speed limiter using the touchscreen.

1.  Press this icon.

2.  Press this icon.

3.  Press this icon.

4. Make the required adjustments.

**Note:** *If you switch intelligent speed limiter off, the system defaults to normal speed limiter.*

Normal speed limiter allows you to manually limit the vehicle speed using controls on the steering wheel.

## INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER – TROUBLESHOOTING

### INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why does a warning appear in the instrument cluster display?

- The vehicle speed exceeds the current set speed.
- The system detects a maximum speed limit that is lower than the current vehicle speed.
- You intentionally exceed the set speed.

# Lane Keeping System

## WHAT IS THE LANE KEEPING SYSTEM

The lane keeping system is a driving aid designed to provide temporary steering assistance when it detects an unintended lane departure.

## HOW DOES THE LANE KEEPING SYSTEM WORK

The system is designed to alert you by providing temporary steering assistance when it detects an unintended lane departure. The lane keeping system uses a forward looking camera mounted on the windshield to monitor vehicle movement within the travel lane. The lane keeping system is always on when the vehicle is turned on. A system indicator appears in the instrument cluster display.

## LANE KEEPING SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** The system may not function if the sensor is blocked.



**WARNING:** The sensor may incorrectly track lane markings as other structures or objects. This can result in a false or missed warning.



**WARNING:** In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.



**WARNING:** Large contrasts in outside lighting can limit sensor performance.



**WARNING:** The system will not operate if the sensor cannot track the road lane markings.



**WARNING:** If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



**WARNING:** The system may not correctly operate if your vehicle is fitted with a suspension kit not approved by Ford.

## LANE KEEPING SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

The system is active if lane markings are detected and the vehicle speed is greater than approximately 65 km/h (40 mph).

The system may not correctly operate in any of the following conditions:

- The system does not detect at least one lane marking or the edge of the road.
- You switch the turn signals on before changing lane manually.
- You apply direct steering, accelerate fast or brake hard.
- You do not react to the driver intervention prompt.
- The vehicle speed is less than 60 km/h (37 mph).



# Lane Keeping System

- The anti-lock brake, stability control or traction control system activates.
- Narrow lane width and tight bends.

The system may not correct lane positioning in any of the following conditions:

- High winds.
- Uneven road surfaces.
- Heavy or uneven loads.
- Incorrect tire pressure.

## SWITCHING THE LANE KEEPING SYSTEM ON AND OFF

The system always turns on when you start your vehicle.

1.  Press this icon.
2.  Press this icon.
3.  Press this icon or select it from the list.
4. Make the required adjustments.

## Switching the Steering Wheel Vibration On and Off

1.  Press this icon.
2.  Press this icon.
3.  Press this icon or select it from the list.

**Note:** Only if the lane keeping system is active, you can activate steering wheel vibration.

4. Make the required adjustments.

## LANE KEEPING SYSTEM INDICATORS



When the system is on and available, a green symbol and white lane markings appear in the instrument cluster display.



The lane markings and the symbol illuminate yellow if the system provides assistance. They illuminate grey if the system is unavailable or in standby mode, for example when the vehicle speed is too low.

# Lane Keeping System



When you switch the system off a yellow off symbol illuminates and the lane markings do not appear.

## BLIND SPOT ASSIST

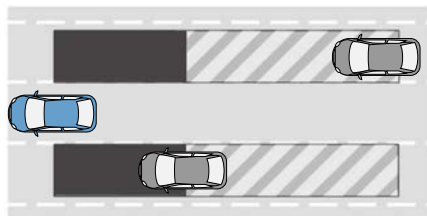
### WHAT IS BLIND SPOT ASSIST

Blind spot assist is an extension of the lane keeping system that detects vehicles that may have entered the blind spot zone. The system provides a blind spot warning and steering assistance during lane changes if it detects adjacent vehicles.

### HOW DOES BLIND SPOT ASSIST WORK

#### Alert mode

If you switch the lane-keeping system off, blind spot assist only works in alert mode. It detects vehicles that may have entered the blind spot zone, and alerts you with a warning lamp. The detection area is on both sides of your vehicle, extending rearward from the exterior mirrors to approximately 4 m (13 ft) beyond the rear bumper. The detection area extends to approximately 18 m (59 ft) beyond the rear bumper when the vehicle speed is greater than 48 km/h (30 mph) to alert you of faster approaching vehicles.



### Alert and Aid mode

This mode is active when both the lane-keeping system and the blind spot assist are switched on. During lane changes, the system detects vehicles in, or approaching your blind spot and provides a warning, plus steering assistance to direct your vehicle back into your lane. See **Blind Spot Assist Indicators** (page 244).

When active, this system functions with or without the use of turn signals and hazard flashers.

You must keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times.

### Switching Blind Spot Assist On and Off

You can adjust the settings on the touchscreen.

-  Press this icon.
-  Press this icon.
-  Press this icon or select it from the list.
- Make the required adjustments.

# Lane Keeping System

If you switch the lane-keeping system off, blind spot assist does not provide steering assistance. The lane-keeping system switches on every time you start your vehicle.

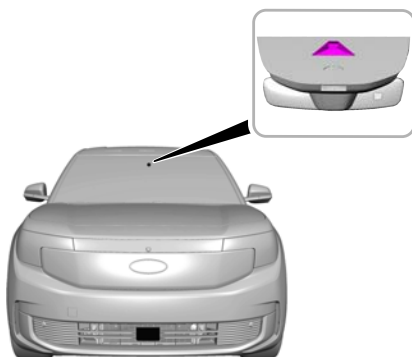
When you switch blind spot assist on, a warning lamp illuminates in the exterior mirror. If you switch it off, the lane keeping system remains on. In this case the blind spot assist indicators remain off as well.

**Note:** You can adjust the brightness of the alert indicator in the touchscreen menu.

**Note:** The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

## Locating the Blind Spot Assist System Sensors

The blind spot assist system uses the front camera and rear radar sensors.



The rear sensors are behind the rear bumper on both sides of your vehicle.

**Note:** Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.

**Note:** Do not cover the sensors with bumper stickers, repair compound or other objects.

**Note:** Blocked sensors could affect system performance.

If the sensors are blocked, a message may appear in the instrument cluster display. The alert indicators remain illuminated but the system does not alert you.

If a message regarding a blocked sensor or camera appears in the instrument cluster display, something is obstructing the radar signals or camera images.

## BLIND SPOT ASSIST LIMITATIONS



**WARNING:** Do not use the blind spot information system as a replacement for using the interior and exterior mirrors or looking over your shoulder before changing lanes. The blind spot information system is not a replacement for careful driving.

# Lane Keeping System



**WARNING:** The system may not operate properly during severe weather conditions, for example snow, ice, heavy rain and spray. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.

All system limitations present in the basic lane keeping system also apply to blind spot assist.

Blind spot assist does not function under the following conditions:

- When none or only one of the two lane markings are detected.
- One or both rear radar sensors become blocked or faulty.
- A trailer is attached to your vehicle.

**Note:** *Bike carriers and cargo racks could cause false alerts due to obstruction of the sensor. We recommend switching the feature off when using a bike carrier or a cargo rack.*

Blind spot assist could have difficulty detecting hazards under the following conditions:

- If a vehicle is approaching in an adjacent lane at a relative speed much higher than your vehicle.
- Bad weather conditions are present that obstruct the sensors.

The system does not operate in park (P) or reverse (R).

**Note:** *The system does not prevent contact with other vehicles. It is not designed to detect parked vehicles, pedestrians, animals or other infrastructures.*

**Note:** *The system could not alert you if a vehicle quickly passes through the detection zone.*

**Note:** *Blocked sensors could affect system performance.*

**Note:** *The system may not correctly operate when towing a trailer. For vehicles with a trailer tow module and tow bar approved by us, the system turns off when you attach a trailer. For vehicles with an aftermarket trailer tow module or tow bar, we recommend that you switch the system off when you attach a trailer.*

## Blind Spot Assist System Requirements

The system turns on when all of the following occur:

- You start your vehicle.
- You shift into drive (D).
- The vehicle speed is greater than 10 km/h (6 mph).

**Note:** *The system does not operate in park (P) or reverse (R).*

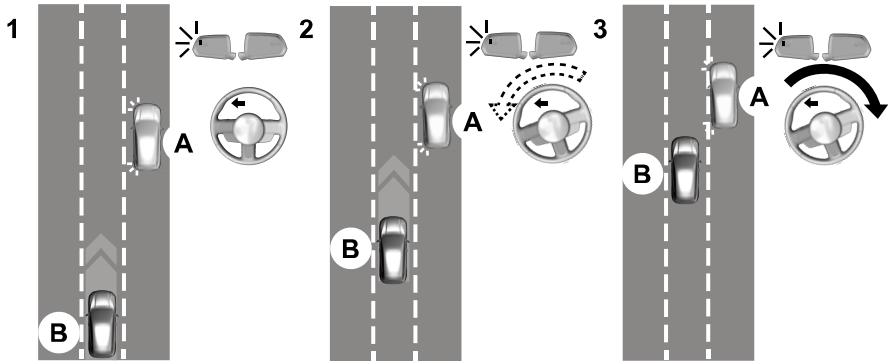
## BLIND SPOT ASSIST INDICATORS



When the system detects a vehicle, an alert indicator illuminates in the exterior mirror on the side the approaching vehicle is coming from. If you turn the turn signals on for that side of your vehicle, the alert indicator flashes.

**Note:** *The system could not alert you if a vehicle quickly passes through the detection zone.*

# Lane Keeping System



**Diagram 1:** Vehicle A uses its left turn signal preparing to change from the right lane to the middle lane. Vehicle B is already in the middle lane and just entered Vehicle A's blind spot causing the blind spot assist system alert indicator to flash on the exterior mirror.

**Diagram 2:** The driver of Vehicle A begins to steer into the center lane not aware of Vehicle B.

**Diagram 3:** Blind spot assist counter steers to help alert the driver of Vehicle A to direct their vehicle back into the right lane to help avoid a possible collision with Vehicle B.

The lane-keeping system warning lamp or yellow lane marking in your instrument cluster indicate blind spot assist activation. In addition, the alert indicator flashes on the exterior mirror on the same side as the detection.

## Blind Spot Assist - Warning Lamps



If the system detects a fault, it illuminates in the instrument cluster and a message appears in the instrument cluster display. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## BLIND SPOT ASSIST – INFORMATION MESSAGES

| Message                                                 | Details                                                                                               |
|---------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Rear carrier/trailer: Blind Spot Assist is unavailable. | Displays if you attach bike carrier, cargo racks or a trailer to your vehicle.                        |
| Blind Spot Assist is unavailable. Sensor impaired.      | Displays if the blind spot assist system sensors are blocked.                                         |
| Error: Blind Spot Assist                                | The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |

# Lane Keeping System

**Note:** If a message regarding BLIS appears in the information display, the same details apply as for the Blind Spot Assist System.

## LANE KEEPING SYSTEM – TROUBLESHOOTING

### LANE KEEPING SYSTEM – INFORMATION MESSAGES

#### Lane Keeping System - Warning Lamps



Illuminates in the instrument cluster display if the system is not available due to a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

### Lane Keeping System – Information Messages

| Message                                                           | Details                                                                                                            |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Error: Lane-Keeping System                                        | The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.              |
| Lane-Keeping System is currently unavailable.                     | The system has detected a condition that has caused the system to be temporarily unavailable.                      |
| Driver Assistance is currently restricted. Front sensor impaired. | The system has detected a condition that requires you to clean the windshield in order for it to operate properly. |
| Please drive in the centre of the lane.                           | The system requests that you keep the vehicle in the center of the lane.                                           |
| Take over steering!                                               | The system requests that you take over the steering wheel.                                                         |

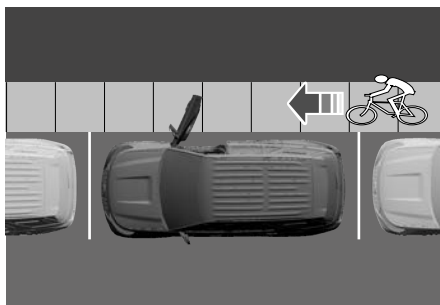
# Exit Warning

## WHAT IS EXIT WARNING

Exit warning provides a visual and audible alert when a vehicle occupant opens a door into approaching traffic. It uses radar sensors to alert you to traffic objects.

## HOW DOES EXIT WARNING WORK

Exit warning detects traffic objects such as vehicles, cyclists, scooters and motorcycles that approach your vehicle from the rear and cross into the exit warning zone. The exit warning zones are along the left and right sides of your vehicle, extending past a fully open door.



**Note:** *The system cannot detect animals, slow moving pedestrians or any type of stationary object.*

## EXIT WARNING PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** The system is not a crash warning or avoidance system.



**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** The exit warning system becomes active once you have started your vehicle and the vehicle is not moving. Exit warning is only active when your vehicle is on.



**WARNING:** Always pay attention to the traffic situation and the area around the vehicle.



**WARNING:** In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.



**WARNING:** If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



**WARNING:** The system may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb reflection. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.

## EXIT WARNING LIMITATIONS

Exit warning shuts off approximately three minutes after your vehicle is switched off, or immediately after you lock your doors. When the vehicle battery is low and your vehicle is switched off, exit warning shuts off to conserve battery power. When exit warning turns off, a message appears in the instrument cluster display.

# Exit Warning

**Note:** Do not use exit warning as a replacement for paying attention when exiting your vehicle.

**Note:** The system does not prevent contact with other vehicles by closing the doors automatically.

**Note:** The system may not inform and/or alert you if a traffic object is approaching too quickly or if the parking position prevents detection.

## EXIT WARNING INDICATORS



Exit Warning has two stages to indicate an approaching traffic object. If you open a door and exit warning detects an approaching traffic object, the corresponding alert indicator in the exterior mirror flashes and an audible alert sounds. If you open a door before exit warning detects an approaching traffic object the same alert indicator illuminates. In this case there is no audible alert. See **Blind Spot Assist Indicators** (page 244).

## SWITCHING EXIT WARNING ON AND OFF

You can switch off the exit warning system by using the touchscreen.

1.  Press this icon.

2.  Press this icon.

3.  Press this icon and enter the relevant menu to switch the feature on or off.

**Note:** You can only turn the system on or off when your vehicle is stationary.

**Note:** The system turns on automatically the next time you switch your vehicle on.

## LOCATING THE EXIT WARNING SENSORS



The sensors are mounted behind the rear bumper on both sides of your vehicle.

**Note:** Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.

**Note:** Do not cover the sensors with bumper stickers, repair compound or other objects.

**Note:** Blocked sensors may affect system accuracy.



# Exit Warning

---

## EXIT WARNING – TROUBLESHOOTING

### EXIT WARNING – INFORMATION MESSAGES

| Message                                                                  | Details                                                       |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| Exit Warning, Blind Spot Assist and Cross-Traffic Alert are unavailable. | Displays if you attach a trailer to your vehicle.             |
| Error: Blind Spot Assist, Exit Warning and Cross-Traffic Alert           | Displays if the exit warning system detects any system error. |

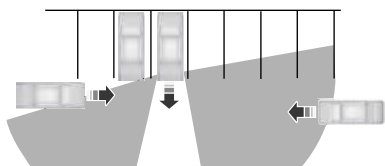
# Cross Traffic Alert

## WHAT IS CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT

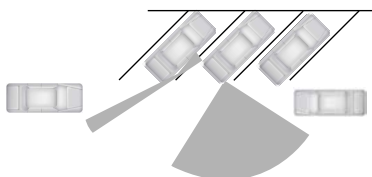
The system is designed to alert you of vehicles approaching from the sides behind your vehicle when you shift into reverse (R). If you continue to reverse after the system alerts you, the system is designed to apply the brakes if it still detects an approaching vehicle. If the system applies the brakes, a message appears in the instrument cluster display.

## HOW DOES CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT WORK

Coverage decreases when the sensors are partially, mostly or fully obstructed. Slowly reversing helps increase the coverage area and effectiveness.



The sensor on the left-hand side is only partially obstructed and zone coverage on the right-hand side is maximized.



Zone coverage also decreases when parking at narrow angles. The sensor on the left-hand side is mostly obstructed and zone coverage on that side is severely reduced.

## CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Do not use the cross traffic alert system as a replacement for using the interior and exterior mirrors or looking over your shoulder before reversing out of a parking space. The cross traffic alert system is not a replacement for careful driving.



**WARNING:** The system may not operate properly during severe weather conditions, for example snow, ice, heavy rain and spray. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.



**WARNING:** If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT LIMITATIONS

The system may not correctly operate when any of the following occur:

- The sensors are blocked.
- Adjacently parked vehicles or objects are obstructing the sensors.
- You reverse out of an angled parking space.

# Cross Traffic Alert

**Note:** The system may not correctly operate when towing a trailer. For vehicles with a Ford approved trailer tow module and tow bar, the system turns off when you attach a trailer. For vehicles with an aftermarket trailer tow module or tow bar, we recommend that you switch the system off when you attach a trailer.

## SWITCHING CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT ON AND OFF

1.  Press this icon.
2.  Press this icon.
3.  Press this icon and enter the relevant menu to switch the feature on or off.

**Note:** You can only turn the system on or off when your vehicle is stationary.

**Note:** The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

## LOCATING THE CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT SENSORS



The sensors are behind the rear bumper on both sides of your vehicle.

**Note:** Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.

**Note:** Do not cover the sensors with bumper stickers, repair compound or other objects.

**Note:** Blocked sensors could affect system performance.

## CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT INDICATORS



When the system detects an approaching vehicle the obstacle area appears in color in the center display. A yellow colored arrow indicates a lower warning level. A red colored arrow together with an audible warning indicates an increased warning level.

**Note:** In exceptional conditions, the system could alert you or apply the brakes, even when there is nothing in the detection zone, for example a vehicle passing further away from your vehicle.

# Cross Traffic Alert

---

## CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT – TROUBLESHOOTING

### CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT – INFORMATION MESSAGES

| Message                                                                  | Details                                                              |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Exit Warning, Blind Spot Assist and Cross-Traffic Alert are unavailable. | Displays if you attach a trailer to your vehicle.                    |
| Error: Blind Spot Assist, Exit Warning and Cross-Traffic Alert           | Displays if the cross traffic alert system detects any system error. |

# Pre-Collision Assist

## WHAT IS PRE-COLLISION ASSIST

Pre-collision assist detects and warns of approaching hazards in the roadway. If your vehicle is rapidly approaching another stationary vehicle, a vehicle traveling in the same direction as yours, or a pedestrian within your driving path, the system

provides multiple levels of assistance to help avoid a collision.

## HOW DOES PRE-COLLISION ASSIST WORK

The system warns the driver of potential hazards by providing five levels of assistance.

| Level of Assistance  | Details                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|----------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Distance warning     | The system detects when safety is endangered by driving too close to the vehicle in front. The indicator lamp lights up. Increase the distance.                                                                                                                   |
| Advance warning      | The system detects a possible collision and prepares the brakes for rapid braking. An acoustic warning sounds and the red warning lamp lights up. Brake or take avoiding action.                                                                                  |
| Urgent warning       | If the driver does not react to the advance warning, the system may initiate a short braking jolt in order to draw attention to the increasing collision risk. Brake or take avoiding action.                                                                     |
| Automatic braking    | The system can brake the vehicle automatically in several stages with increasing braking force. The reduced speed means that it is possible to reduce impact or avoid the crash.                                                                                  |
| Braking intervention | If the system detects that the driver brakes insufficiently when there is a risk of collision, it increases the braking force and helps to prevent a collision. The braking intervention takes place only for as long as the driver presses the brake pedal hard. |

Pre-collision assist includes the following additional functions:

- Evasive steering assist.
- Intersection assist.
- Pre-collision assist - oncoming vehicles.

The listed functions are automatically active when pre-collision assist is switched on.

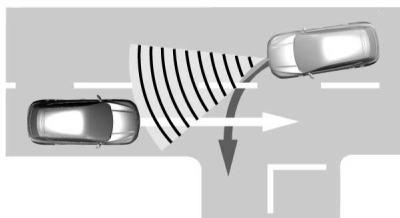
# Pre-Collision Assist

## Pre-Collision Assist - Oncoming Vehicles

Pre-collision assist - oncoming expands the function of pre-collision assist to oncoming vehicles within your same lane. The system can help to reduce the severity of a crash by providing a warning to you as well as automatically applying the brakes. Detection of oncoming vehicles is active if you are driving your vehicle above 30 km/h (19 mph).

## HOW DOES PRE-COLLISION ASSIST WITH INTERSECTION ASSIST WORK

The pre-collision assist system could apply brakes if you are turning across an oncoming vehicle's path. Detection of vehicles driving in an oncoming direction is active if your vehicle is driving at speeds up to 20 km/h (12 mph).



## PRE-COLLISION ASSIST PRECAUTIONS

**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** The system does not operate during hard acceleration or steering. Failure to take care may lead to a crash or personal injury.

**WARNING:** The system may operate with reduced function during cold and inclement weather conditions. Snow, ice, rain, spray and fog can adversely affect the system. Keep the front camera and radar free of snow and ice. Failure to follow this instruction may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** The system may not operate properly if your vehicle has a non-Ford windshield. Do not carry out windshield repairs in the area around the sensor.

**WARNING:** System performance could be reduced in situations where the vehicle camera has limited detection capability. These situations include but are not limited to direct or low sunlight, vehicles at night without tail lights, unconventional vehicle types, pedestrians or cyclists with complex backgrounds, running pedestrians or fast

# Pre-Collision Assist

moving cyclists, partly obscured pedestrians or cyclists, pedestrians or cyclists that the system cannot distinguish from a group. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** The Pre-Collision Assist system with brake support cannot help prevent all collisions. Do not rely on this system to replace your judgment and the need to maintain correct distance and speed.

## PRE-COLLISION ASSIST LIMITATIONS

Pre-collision assist depends on the detection ability of its camera and radar sensors. Any obstruction or damage to these areas can limit detection or prevent the system from functioning.

The system is active if your vehicle speed is greater than 5 km/h (3 mph) and above.

**Note:** *Brake support and automatic emergency braking are active up to the maximum speed of the vehicle.*

Pre-collision assist cannot react or reacts with a delay in the following situations:

- In tight bends.
- Driving in multi-storey car parks and tunnels.
- Approaching a railway crossing.
- Reversing.
- If stability control is performing a control intervention or faulty.
- If several brake lights on the vehicle are faulty.
- If there is a fault in several brake lights on a trailer or bicycle carrier with an electrical connection to the vehicle.

- If the vehicle accelerates hard or the accelerator pedal is fully depressed.
- When driving into and out of tunnels.
- If there is a fault in pre-collision assist.
- Vehicles that are driving outside the sensor range in close proximity to your vehicle.
- Vehicles that change into your lane directly in front of your vehicle.
- Vehicles with trailers.

Pre-collision assist provides maximum assistance in the following situations:

## Vehicle Detection Limitations

Vehicle detection is active at speeds up to 250 km/h (155 mph).

Vehicle detection functions optimally when detected hazards are clearly identifiable. System performance may reduce in situations where vehicles are partly obscured, have a complex background, or cannot be distinguished from a group.

## Pedestrian Detection Limitations

Pedestrian detection is active at speeds up to 85 km/h (53 mph).

Pedestrian detection functions optimally when detected hazards are clearly identifiable. System performance may reduce in situations where pedestrians are running, partly obscured, have a complex background, or cannot be distinguished from a group.

## Cyclist Detection Limitations

Cyclist detection is active at speeds up to 250 km/h (155 mph).

# Pre-Collision Assist

Cyclist detection functions optimally when detected hazards are clearly identifiable. The system detection level may be reduced in situations where cyclists are moving fast, partly hidden, have a complex background, or the system cannot distinguish the cyclist from a group.

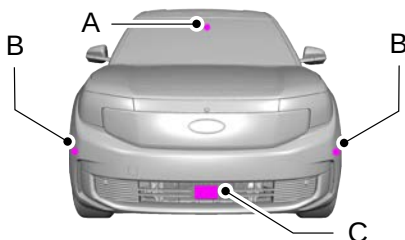
## SWITCHING PRE-COLLISION ASSIST ON AND OFF

You can switch off the pre-collision assist system by using the touchscreen. We do not recommend deactivating the system. You need to confirm deactivation.

1.  Press this icon.
2.  Press this icon.
3.  Press this icon or select it from the list.
4. Make the required adjustments.

**Note:** Automatic emergency braking and evasive steering automatically turn on every time you start your vehicle.

## LOCATING THE PRE-COLLISION ASSIST SENSORS



- A Camera.
- B Front corner radars.
- C Front center radar.

**Note:** The front corner radars are located on the left and right side of your vehicle, but may not be available depending on your vehicle options.

**Note:** Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.

**Note:** If something hits the front end of your vehicle or damage occurs and your vehicle has a radar sensor, the radar sensing zone could change. This could cause missed or false vehicle detections. Have your vehicle serviced to have the radar checked for proper coverage and operation.

A message regarding a blocked sensor or camera appears in the instrument cluster display if the radar or camera images are obstructed.



# Pre-Collision Assist

## FORWARD COLLISION WARNING

### WHAT IS FORWARD COLLISION WARNING

A warning message appears and an audible alert sounds when the system detects a potential crash.

## EVASIVE STEERING ASSIST

### WHAT IS EVASIVE STEERING ASSIST

If your vehicle is rapidly approaching a road user, evasive steering assist helps you steer around the road user.

After you turn the steering wheel in an attempt to avoid a crash with the road user, the system applies additional steering torque to help you steer around the road user. After you pass the road user, the system applies steering torque when you turn the steering wheel to steer back into the lane. The system deactivates after you fully pass the road user.

**Note:** Road users are defined as pedestrians or bicyclists in your vehicle's path or another stationary vehicle in the same lane or a vehicle traveling in the same lane in the same direction as you. See **Pre-Collision Assist Precautions** (page 254).

### EVASIVE STEERING ASSIST LIMITATIONS

Evasive steering assist does not function when road users and animals are crossing the road. See **Pre-Collision Assist Precautions** (page 254).

## SWITCHING EVASIVE STEERING ASSIST ON AND OFF

1.  Press this icon.
2.  Press this icon.
3.  Press this icon or select it from the list.
4. Enter the relevant menu to switch the feature on or off.

**Note:** Evasive steering assist turns on each time you switch your vehicle on.

**Note:** If you turn automatic emergency braking off, evasive steering assist also turns off.

## PRE-COLLISION ASSIST – TROUBLESHOOTING

### PRE-COLLISION ASSIST – WARNING LAMPS

 It illuminates in the instrument cluster display to indicate if the system is disabled, unavailable, or temporarily degraded due to external environmental conditions.

 It illuminates in the instrument cluster display to indicate if the system is unavailable, or the functions are restricted immediately after switching your vehicle on. The Automatic Emergency Braking system is available after the indicator lamp turns off when driving straight ahead for a short period of time.

## Pre-Collision Assist



It illuminates in the instrument cluster display when switching the system off. Switching the system off turns all functions off.



It illuminates when safety is endangered by driving too close to the vehicle in front.

### PRE-COLLISION ASSIST – INFORMATION MESSAGES

| Message                                                           | Details                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Pre-Collision Assist is unavailable.                              | The system has malfunctioned. If the problem persists, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.                                                                                                                                    |
| Driver Assistance is currently restricted. Front sensor impaired. | You have a blocked radar sensor or camera due to bad weather, ice, mud or water, or the view of the radar sensor or camera is impaired by add-on parts or stickers. Clean the radar sensor and the windscreen and keep these areas free. |
| Take control of the vehicle.                                      | Take control of the vehicle immediately if requested.                                                                                                                                                                                    |

# Driver Alert

## WHAT IS DRIVER ALERT

The system is designed to alert you if it calculates that you are becoming drowsy, if your driving deteriorates or if you are driving while distracted.

## HOW DOES DRIVER ALERT WORK

### Drowsiness warning

The system calculates your alertness level by monitoring driving behavior through camera data and steering wheel input. This function is active when the vehicle speed is greater than approximately 65 km/h (40 mph).

If the system detects signs of drowsiness, it issues both visual and audible alerts. If you continue driving without taking a break, a further warning will be issued. Take a break or press the **OK** button to cancel the warnings.

### Time-dependent drowsiness warning

If the system detects approximately 4.5 hours of uninterrupted driving without signs of drowsiness, it issues a warning. Take a break as soon as possible.

### Driver Attention Monitoring

If your vehicle has a driver facing camera, driver alert determines if you are driving while distracted by monitoring your eyes and head position, when the vehicle speed is greater than approximately 20 km/h (12 mph). If the system determines you are distracted, it alerts you to return your eyes to the road by sending a warning.



The driver facing camera is located in the rear view mirror.

**Note:** The driver facing camera does not capture facial features or other personal data, it only tracks head position and eye movements.

## DRIVER ALERT PRECAUTIONS

 **WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

 **WARNING:** The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.

 **WARNING:** Take regular rest breaks if you feel tired. Do not wait for the system to warn you.

 **WARNING:** Certain driving styles may result in the system warning you even if you are not feeling tired.

# Driver Alert



**WARNING:** In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.



**WARNING:** If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



**WARNING:** The system may not correctly operate if your vehicle is fitted with a suspension kit not approved by us.



**WARNING:** Large contrasts in outside lighting can limit sensor performance.



**WARNING:** Obstructions to the driver facing camera or infrared lighting could prevent the system from properly operating. Keep the camera and lighting areas free from obstruction. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

## Limitations

The driver facing camera may not operate correctly due to any of the following:

- You have a pre-existing eye condition, such as an eye misalignment, or have had eye surgery.
- You cover your facial features by a mask, hat or other items.
- The lighting conditions change significantly.
- You are not in the camera's view.
- Your position or tilt yourself to one side.
- You are moving around too much.
- You are wearing glasses or sunglasses that are too dark or reflective.

To get the best results from the driver facing camera:

- Make sure not to wear any facial coverings.
- Avoid leaning the seat back so the driver facing camera can see your face.
- Avoid using infrared blocking sunglasses.
- Make sure your hands, arms or other objects are not blocking the driver facing camera.

## SWITCHING DRIVER ALERT ON AND OFF

### Switching Drowsiness Monitor On and Off

1.  Press this icon.
2.  Press this icon.
3.  Press this icon or select it from the list.
4. Make the required adjustments.

**Note:** You can only make the required adjustments when your vehicle is on.

**Note:** The system turns on automatically after switching your vehicle off and on again.

### Switching Driver Attention Monitor On and Off

1.  Press this icon.
2.  Press this icon.

# Driver Alert

3.  Select this icon and make the required adjustments.

**Note:** You can only make the required adjustments when your vehicle is on.

**Note:** The system turns on automatically after switching your vehicle off and on again.

## DRIVER ALERT INDICATORS



When the system detects an issue, for example, the camera is blocked or misaligned, one or both of symbols appear in the instrument cluster display. If the symbols continue to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## DRIVER ALERT – TROUBLESHOOTING

### DRIVER ALERT – INFORMATION MESSAGES

| Message                                                                      | Details                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Tiredness detected. Take a break!                                            | Displays when we recommend that you take a break due to low alertness levels.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| Pay attention to the road.                                                   | Displays when you are distracted.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| Drowsiness Monitor is unavailable.                                           | Displays when drowsiness monitor malfunctions. Make sure that the driver facing camera is unobstructed, correctly aligned and check for any dirt or obstruction in the windshield area where the front windshield camera is placed. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |
| Attention Monitor is unavailable.                                            | Displays when attention monitor malfunctions. Make sure that the driver facing camera is unobstructed and correctly aligned. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.                                                                                                        |
| Please realign the interior mirror. Interior monitoring sensors unavailable. | The system detected a failure. Make sure that the interior mirror is aligned correctly.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| Interior monitoring sensors restricted. Please refer to Owner's Manual.      | Displays if the system detects an issue with the driver facing camera, for example an electrical failure or a blockage in the field of view of the camera. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.                                                                          |

# Traffic Sign Recognition

## WHAT IS TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION

The system is designed to detect traffic signs to inform you of the current speed limit and overtaking regulations.

## HOW DOES TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION WORK

Detected traffic signs appear in the instrument cluster display. The sensor is behind the interior mirror.

The system turns on when you switch the vehicle on and you cannot switch the system off.

The system detects recognizable traffic signs, for example:

- Speed limit signs.
- No overtaking signs.
- Speed limit cancellation signs.
- No overtaking cancellation signs.

**Note:** *Traffic sign data provided by the navigation system contains information integrated to the data carrier release.*

## TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.

**Note:** *Do not carry out windshield repairs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor.*

**Note:** *Always fit Ford approved parts when replacing headlamp bulbs. Other bulbs could reduce system performance.*

## TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION LIMITATIONS

Traffic sign recognition may not operate correctly due to the following:

- In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow, spray and large contrasts in lighting can all prevent the sensor from correctly functioning.
- The screen is dirty in the area of the camera.
- Glare, for example from the oncoming traffic or sunlight.
- High speed.
- Signs located outside of the field of view of the camera.
- Partially or fully hidden road signs.
- Non-standard road signs.
- Missed recognition of faded, dirty or distorted signs.
- Outdated map data.
- Vehicles with road sign stickers.

# Traffic Sign Recognition

## TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION INDICATORS



The system can display two traffic signs in parallel.

You can view the status at any time using the instrument cluster display.

If the system detects a supplementary traffic sign, it displays in the instrument cluster display or in the head-up display. For example, when passing a reduced speed limit in wet road conditions sign.

**Note:** *If your vehicle has a navigation system, stored traffic sign data may influence the indicated speed limit value.*

When the system does not detect a speed sign, for example, navigation map data is not available for a short period of time, or the system has no input, a speed sign with two hyphens appears in the instrument cluster display.



When the system is off or has an issue, for example, navigation map data is not available for a longer period of time, or the camera is blocked or misaligned, an off symbol appears in the instrument cluster display. If the symbol continues to appear although the system is on have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

### No-entry warning

If the system detects a no-entry sign on a one-way road or motorway slip road, it sounds a tone and display a message on the instrument cluster display.

## TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION SETTINGS

You can adjust various traffic sign recognition settings on the touchscreen, by using the same steps in all cases.

1.



Press this icon.



# Traffic Sign Recognition

2.  Press this icon.
3.  Press this icon or select it from the list.
4. Make the required adjustments.

## Setting the Traffic Sign Recognition Speed Warning

If the system detects that an applicable speed limit has been exceeded, it issues a visual warning or displays a message on the instrument cluster display and sounds a tone.

**Note:** *The system turns on automatically after switching the vehicle off and on again.*

## Setting the Traffic Sign Recognition Acoustic Warning

Acoustic warning is issued when the system detects that the applicable speed limit has been exceeded. You can switch off the acoustic warning, but the system still issues a visual warning.

**Note:** *The system turns on automatically after switching the vehicle off and on again.*

## Changing the Permitted max. Speed

When the last memorized speed limit changes, a chime sounds.

**Note:** *The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.*

## Deactivation for Assisted Speed Control

If this feature is on and you are driving with predictive speed assist, the speed warning is disabled.

**Note:** *The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.*

## Setting the Tolerance of the Speed Warning

You can set a speed tolerance, so the system alerts you when the vehicle speed exceeds the sum of the speed limit and your chosen tolerance .

The system does not remember the last setting, the tolerance has to be adjusted every time you start your vehicle.

## Stop Sign Warning

If the system detects a stop sign and the driver fails to react, a warning message appears in the instrument cluster display.

**Note:** *The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.*

## Traffic Light Warning

If the system detects a red traffic light, and the driver fails to react, a warning message appears in the instrument cluster display.

**Note:** *The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.*



# Traffic Sign Recognition

---

## TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION – TROUBLESHOOTING

### TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION – INFORMATION MESSAGES

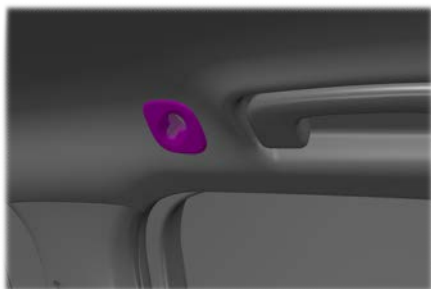
| Message                                            | Details                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|----------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Traffic Sign Recognition currently restricted.     | The traffic sign data provided by the system is unavailable. Wait for a short period of time for the signal to improve. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |
| Traffic Sign Recognition is currently unavailable. | The traffic sign data provided by the system is unavailable. Wait for a short period of time for the signal to improve. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |

# Load Carrying

## PARTITIONING SYSTEM

A partitioning system compliant to ISO 27955 is available as an aftermarket accessory from our authorized dealers.

**Note:** *Passengers should not travel in the rear seats if you install the partitioning system behind the front seats.*



**Note:** *Make sure to fix the partitioning system through the headliner hole into the metal structure behind the headliner or the side trim opening.*

## LOAD CARRYING PRECAUTIONS

Keep your loaded vehicle weight within its design rating capability, with or without a trailer. Properly loading your vehicle provides maximum return of vehicle design performance. Before you load your vehicle, become familiar with the following terms for determining your vehicle's weight rating, with or without a trailer, from the vehicle's Tire and Loading Information label or Safety Compliance Certification label.



**WARNING:** The appropriate loading capacity of your vehicle can be limited either by volume capacity (how much space is available) or by payload capacity (how much weight the vehicle should carry). Once you have reached the maximum payload of your vehicle, do not add more cargo, even if there is space available. Overloading or improperly loading your vehicle can contribute to loss of vehicle control and vehicle rollover.



**WARNING:** Exceeding the Safety Compliance Certification label vehicle weight limits can adversely affect the performance and handling of your vehicle, cause vehicle damage and can result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not use replacement tires with lower load carrying capacities than the original tires because they may lower your vehicle's Gross Vehicle Weight Rating and Gross Axle Weight Rating limitations. Replacement tires with a higher limit than the original tires do not increase the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating and Gross Axle Weight Rating limitations.



**WARNING:** Do not exceed the maximum gross vehicle weight stated on the vehicle identification plate. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



**WARNING:** Do not exceed the maximum front and rear axle loads for your vehicle.

# Load Carrying



**WARNING:** Exceeding any vehicle weight rating can adversely affect the performance and handling of your vehicle, cause vehicle damage and can result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** When loading the roof racks, we recommend you evenly distribute the load, as well as maintain a low center of gravity. Loaded vehicles, with higher centers of gravity, may handle differently than unloaded vehicles. Take extra precautions, such as slower speeds and increased stopping distance, when driving a heavily loaded vehicle.

The gross combined weight must never exceed the Gross Combined Weight Rating.

## REAR LOADSPACE HATCH

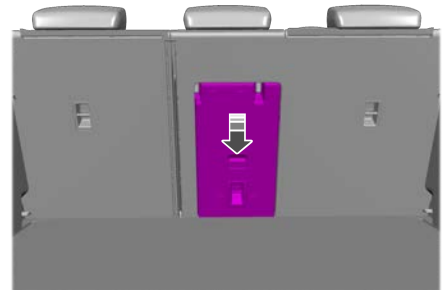
You can use the rear loadspace hatch behind the rear seat foldable armrest to transport long objects, such as skis.

### Opening the Rear Loadspace Hatch from the Passenger Area



1. Fold down the rear seat armrest.
2. Pull the handle up and open the hatch.

### Opening the Rear Loadspace Hatch from the Luggage Compartment



Pull the handle down and open the hatch.

# Load Carrying

## ROOF RACK

### ROOF RACK PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Read and follow the manufacturer's instructions when you are fitting a roof rack.



**WARNING:** When loading the roof racks, we recommend you evenly distribute the load, as well as maintain a low center of gravity. Loaded vehicles, with higher centers of gravity, may handle differently than unloaded vehicles. Take extra precautions, such as slower speeds and increased stopping distance, when driving a heavily loaded vehicle.



**WARNING:** Do not switch off stability control or use Sport mode when carrying a roof load. This could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury or death.

**Note:** *If you use a roof rack, the energy consumption of your vehicle will be higher and you may experience different driving characteristics.*

**Note:** *Never place loads directly on the roof panel. The roof panel is not designed to directly carry a load.*

You must place loads directly on the crossbars. When using the roof rack system, we recommend that you use genuine Ford accessory crossbars specifically designed for your vehicle.

Make sure that you securely fasten the load. Check the tightness of the load before driving and at each charge stop.

### ROOF RACK LOAD CAPACITIES

| Description     | Maximum Recommended Load |                             |
|-----------------|--------------------------|-----------------------------|
|                 | Vehicles with Glass Roof | Vehicles without Glass Roof |
| When in motion  | 75 kg (165 lb)           | 75 kg (165 lb)              |
| When stationary | 300 kg (661 lb)          | 300 kg (661 lb)             |

**Note:** *The maximum roof load is based on evenly distributing the load on the crossbars.*

**Note:** *When using a roof rack system, subtract the weight of the roof rack system from the maximum recommended load to determine your actual maximum cargo load. See the roof rack system manufacturer for more information.*

**Note:** *Only use roof racks released by Ford Motor Company on vehicles with glass roof. Roof racks not released by Ford may cause damage to the glass roof.*

# Load Carrying

## TOW BAR MOUNTED CARRIER

### TOW BAR MOUNTED CARRIER PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Do not exceed the lowest rating capacity for your vehicle or trailer hitch. Overloading your vehicle or trailer hitch can impair your vehicle stability and handling. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Cargo accessory devices mounted to the hitch can change the weight distribution of the vehicle. Loaded vehicles, with more rear weight, may handle differently than unloaded vehicles. Take extra precautions, such as slower speeds and increased stopping distance, when driving a heavily loaded vehicle.

When using a tow bar mounted carrier, consider the following:

- Carefully follow the instructions and warnings provided by the manufacturer of any cargo carrying device.
- Before driving the vehicle, make sure to properly attach the cargo carrying device, and securely attach all equipment to the cargo carrying device.
- When loading a cargo accessory device to the hitch, do not exceed the maximum gross vehicle weight or maximum front and rear axle weights on the vehicle as defined on the vehicle identification plate. Mounting cargo accessory devices to the hitch limits the passenger and cargo capacity inside the vehicle.

- If you are using a bike carrier, the maximum allowed weight is 75 kg (165 lb) including the bikes and the carrier.
- Load the heaviest item closest to your vehicle.

### TOW BAR MOUNTED LOAD CAPACITIES

The maximum accessory hitch load for cargo carrying devices is 75 kg (165 lb) unless restricted by lower hitch capacity or cargo carrying device capacity. We recommend using a hitch authorized by us which meets these load requirements. Do not exceed any certified vehicle loads as defined on the Vehicle Identification Plate.

### LOAD CARRYING VIDEOS

Animations are shown to enhance the written content and not intended to replace it. We recommend that you read the Owner's Manual for full details.

[Explorer Opening and Closing the Rear Loadspace Hatch Video Link](#)

For more information scan here:



# Luggage Compartment

## LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT PRECAUTIONS

**WARNING:** Make sure that you properly secure objects in the luggage compartment. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury in the event of a sudden stop or crash.

**WARNING:** Do not place objects on the luggage cover. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or crash.

**WARNING:** The appropriate loading capacity of your vehicle can be limited either by volume capacity (how much space is available) or by payload capacity (how much weight the vehicle should carry). Once you have reached the maximum payload of your vehicle, do not add more cargo, even if there is space available. Overloading or improperly loading your vehicle can contribute to loss of vehicle control and vehicle rollover.

**WARNING:** Do not exceed the maximum front and rear axle loads for your vehicle.

**Note:** When loading long objects into your vehicle, for example pipes, timber or furniture, be careful not to damage the interior trim.

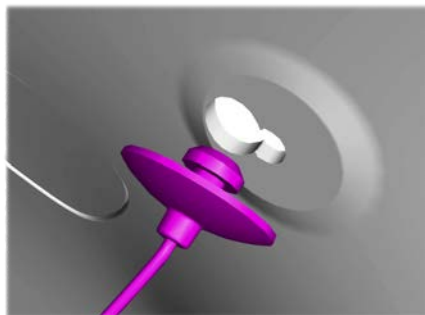
## INSTALLING AND REMOVING THE LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT CARGO NET

**WARNING:** This net is not designed to restrain objects during a collision or heavy braking.

The luggage floor net secures lightweight objects in the luggage compartment area. Attach the net to the anchors on both sides of the luggage compartment. See **Locating the Luggage Compartment Anchor Points** (page 272).

## INSTALLING AND REMOVING THE LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT COVER

To remove the luggage cover:



1. Gently push the retaining clips forward and pull them out on both sides.

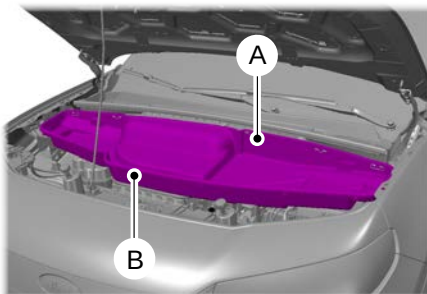
# Luggage Compartment



2. Lift the luggage cover out of the liftgate hooks.

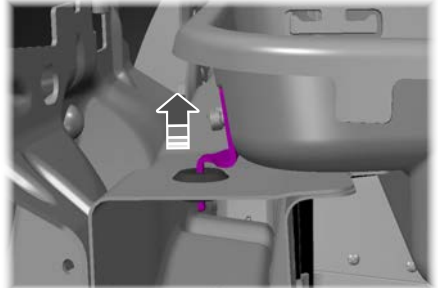
To install, reverse the removal procedure.

## REMOVING AND INSTALLING THE FRUNK STORAGE TRAY



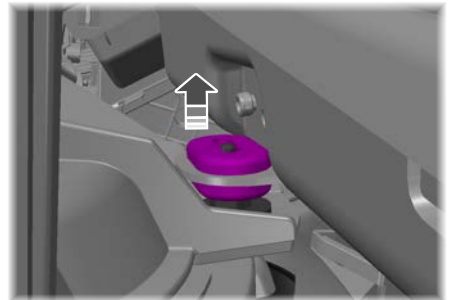
- A Rear of the tray.
- B Front of the tray.

To remove the frunk storage tray:



1. Lift the front of the tray to remove both side hooks from the grommets.

**Note:** Keep the grommets in place for future use.



2. Lift the rear of the tray until both holes are off the screws.

To install the frunk storage tray, reverse the above process.

**Note:** Make sure that the tray securely fits at all four anchor points.

# Luggage Compartment

## ADJUSTING THE LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT LOAD FLOOR

### Lowering the Load Floor

You can lower the load floor to increase the available loadspace height.

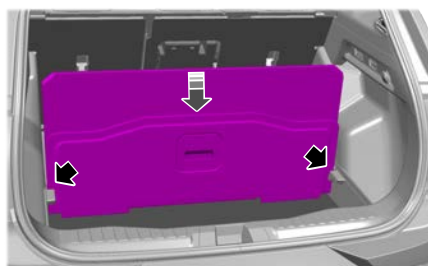
1. Remove the load floor.



2. Slightly fold it and slide it fully back below the side support rails.

### Dividing the Luggage Compartment

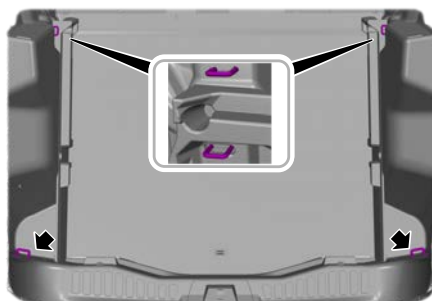
1. Remove the load floor.



2. Fold it in half and place it upright between the retention slots on both sides.

## LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT ANCHOR POINTS

### LOCATING THE LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT ANCHOR POINTS





# Luggage Compartment

---

## LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT VIDEOS

Animations are shown to enhance the written content and not intended to replace it. We recommend that you read the Owner's Manual for full details.

For more information scan here:

[Explorer Luggage Compartment Video Link](#)



# Connecting a Trailer

## CONNECTING A TRAILER PRECAUTIONS

When attaching the trailer wiring connector to your vehicle, only use a proper fitting connector that works with the vehicle and trailer functions.

## TOW BALL

## TOW BALL PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Do not exceed the lowest rating capacity for your vehicle or trailer hitch. Overloading your vehicle or trailer hitch can impair your vehicle stability and handling. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not cut, drill, weld or modify the trailer hitch. Modifying the trailer hitch could reduce the hitch rating.

You must retract the tow ball arm when not in use.

Do not use any tools to deploy or retract the tow ball arm.

Never retract the tow ball arm with a trailer attached. This can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

## Tow Ball Arm Safety Checks

After you deploy the tow ball arm, check the following:

- Make sure the tow ball arm is fully locked.
- The LED is not flashing.
- The tow ball arm symbol is not illuminating.

Do not use the tow ball arm if any of these cannot be met. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## TOW BALL LIMITATIONS

The tow ball arm does not retract or deploy if any of the following occur:

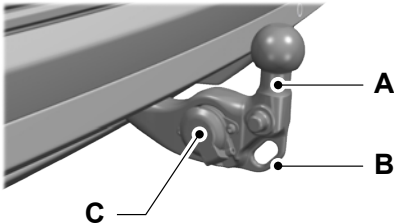
- The electric parking brake is not active.
- The trailer wiring connection socket has a trailer wiring plug attached to it.
- The vehicle battery is not fully charged.
- The rear liftgate is closed.

## TOW BALL ARM GUIDELINES

- The tow ball arm mechanism is maintenance free. Do not grease or oil the mechanism.
- Remove the trailer wiring plug from the trailer wiring connection socket when not in use. Failure to do so may result in corrosion of the trailer wiring connection socket. Clean the trailer wiring connection socket regularly and make sure the socket cover is fully closed.
- If you use a high pressure water jet to clean your vehicle, disconnect the trailer wiring plug. Do not aim the water jet directly at the trailer wiring connection socket. We recommend that you retract the tow ball arm before washing your vehicle.
- When the tow bar is not in use, always retract the tow ball arm.
- It is advisable that you deploy and retract the tow ball arm at least once per month.

# Connecting a Trailer

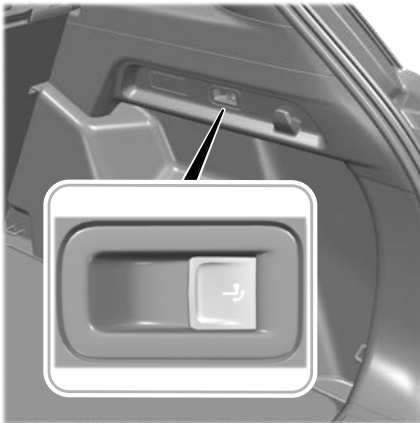
## TOW BALL COMPONENTS



- A Tow ball arm in tow position.
- B Trailer safety cable attachment point.
- C Trailer wiring connection socket.

Do not disassemble or repair the tow ball arm or mechanism.

## DEPLOYING THE TOW BALL ARM



1. Power your vehicle off.

2. Pull the release switch. It is on the right-hand side in the luggage compartment.

**Note:** The LED on the switch flashes when the tow ball arm is released.

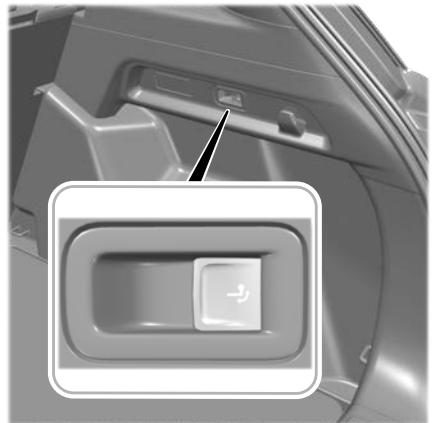
3. Manually move the tow ball arm into the tow position. Make sure the tow ball arm fully locks into position and the LED continuously illuminates.

**Note:** When the liftgate is open, the LED continuously illuminates to indicate that the tow ball arm is fully locked in either of its end positions.

**Note:** After you close the liftgate, the LED stops illuminating after about one minute.

## RETRACTING THE TOW BALL ARM

1. Power your vehicle off.
2. Disconnect the trailer wiring plug and unhitch the trailer or load carrier.



3. Pull the release switch. It is on the right-hand side in the luggage compartment.

# Connecting a Trailer

---

**Note:** The LED on the switch flashes when the tow ball arm is released.

4. Manually move the tow ball arm into the stowed position. Make sure the tow ball arm fully locks into position and the LED continuously illuminates.

**Note:** When the liftgate is open, the LED continuously illuminates to indicate that the tow ball arm is fully locked in either of its end positions.

**Note:** After you close the liftgate, the LED stops illuminating after about one minute.

## CONNECTING A TRAILER – TROUBLESHOOTING

### CONNECTING A TRAILER – WARNING LAMPS



If the tow ball arm indicator illuminates yellow after you deploy the tow ball arm, this indicates a malfunction. See **Tow Ball Precautions** (page 274).

# Towing a Trailer

## TOWING A TRAILER PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Do not exceed 100 km/h (60 mph). Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Make sure that the vertical load on the tow ball is between the minimum and maximum recommended weight at all times. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not exceed the maximum gross vehicle weight stated on the vehicle identification plate. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



**WARNING:** The anti-lock brake system does not control the trailer brakes.

Obey country specific regulations for towing a trailer.

The trailer vertical weight on the tow ball is essential for the driving stability of your vehicle and trailer.

Reduce speed immediately if the trailer shows any sign of swaying. See **Trailer Sway Control** (page 280).

Towing a trailer changes the vehicle handling characteristics and increases stopping distances. Adapt your speed and driving behavior to the load of the trailer.

## TOWING A TRAILER LIMITATIONS

Do not exceed 100 km/h (60 mph) even if a country allows higher speeds under certain conditions.

The gross train weight stated on the vehicle identification plate applies for road gradients up to 12% when towing a trailer. See **Vehicle Identification Plate** (page 351).

Towing a trailer also depends on additional systems present in your vehicle. See **Adaptive Cruise Control Precautions** (page 220). See **Lane Centering Precautions** (page 226).

**Note:** *Not all vehicles are suitable or approved to have a tow bar fitted. Ask an authorized dealer for more information.*

## LOADING YOUR TRAILER

Place loads as low as possible and central to the axle of your trailer. If you are towing with an unladen vehicle, you should place the load in your trailer toward the front, within the maximum vertical load, as this gives the best stability. See **Towing Weight Capacities** (page 278). See **Towing Weight Capacities** (page 278).

The vertical weight on the tow ball should be at least 4% of the trailer weight and not exceed the maximum permissible weight.

**Note:** *The maximum permissible trailer vertical weight on the trailer identification plate is the trailer manufacturer's testing value. The vehicle maximum permissible trailer vertical weight could be lower.*

## TRAILER TOWING HINTS

Press brake mode (B) on your gear selector when descending a steep downhill gradient.

# Towing a Trailer

The stability of your vehicle to trailer combination is very much dependent on the quality of the trailer.

The electrical system on your vehicle is suitable for towing trailers with LED lamps.

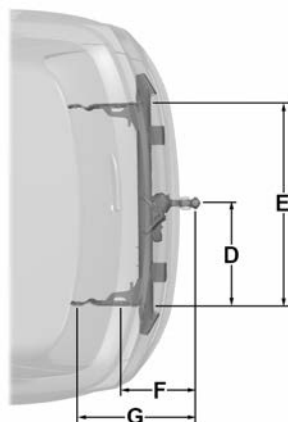
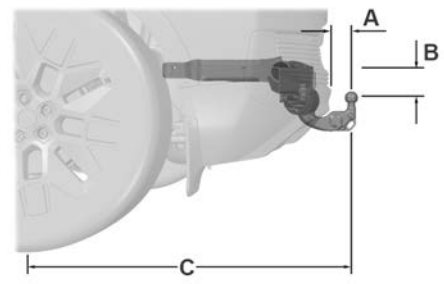
## TOWING WEIGHTS AND DIMENSIONS

### TOWING WEIGHT CAPACITIES

#### Maximum Permissible Trailer Vertical Weight

| Variant | kg (lb)  |
|---------|----------|
| All     | 75 (165) |

### TOW BAR DIMENSIONS



| Item | Dimension Description                   | Dimension mm (in) |
|------|-----------------------------------------|-------------------|
| A    | Bumper to center of tow ball.           | 75 (3)            |
| B    | Attachment point to center of tow ball. | 98 (4)            |
| C    | Wheel center to center of tow ball.     | 924 (36)          |
| D    | Center of tow ball to side member.      | 497 (20)          |

# Towing a Trailer

| Item | Dimension Description                                    | Dimension mm (in) |
|------|----------------------------------------------------------|-------------------|
| E    | Distance between side members.                           | 994 (39)          |
| F    | Center of tow ball to center of first attachment point.  | 361 (14)          |
| G    | Center of tow ball to center of second attachment point. | 581 (23)          |

# Trailer Sway Control

---

## HOW DOES TRAILER SWAY CONTROL WORK

The system applies the brakes to the individual wheels and reduces electric motor output to aid vehicle stability.

## TRAILER SWAY CONTROL PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Turning off trailer sway control increases the risk of loss of vehicle control, serious injury or death. Ford does not recommend disabling this feature except in situations where speed reduction may be detrimental (such as hill climbing), the driver has significant trailer towing experience, and can control trailer sway and maintain safe operation.

**Note:** *This feature only activates when significant trailer sway occurs.*

**Note:** *This feature does not prevent trailer sway, but reduces it once it begins.*

**Note:** *This feature cannot stop all trailers from swaying.*

**Note:** *In some cases, if vehicle speed is too high, the system may activate multiple times, gradually reducing vehicle speed.*



# Driving Hints

## COLD WEATHER PRECAUTIONS

The functional operation of some components and systems can be affected at temperatures below approximately -25°C (-13°F).

## DRIVING ON SNOW AND ICE



**WARNING:** If you are driving in slippery conditions that require tire chains or cables, then it is critical that you drive cautiously. Keep speeds down, allow for longer stopping distances and avoid aggressive steering to reduce the chances of a loss of vehicle control which can lead to serious injury or death. If the rear end of your vehicle slides while cornering, steer in the direction of the slide until you regain control of your vehicle.

On ice and snow, you should drive more slowly than usual. Your vehicle has an anti-lock braking system, apply the brake pedal steadily. Do not pump the brake pedal. See **Anti-Lock Braking System Limitations** (page 188).

## BREAKING-IN

You need to break in new tires for approximately 480 km (300 mi). During this time, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics.

## DRIVING THROUGH MUD AND WATER

### Mud

Be cautious of sudden changes in vehicle speed or direction when you are driving in mud. Even all-wheel drive and four-wheel drive vehicles can lose traction in mud. If your vehicle slides, steer in the direction of the slide until you regain control of your vehicle. After driving through mud, clean off residue stuck to rotating driveshafts and tires. Excess residue can cause an imbalance that could damage drive components.

**Note:** *If your vehicle gets stuck in mud, it could be rocked out by shifting between forward and reverse gears, stopping between shifts in a steady pattern. Press lightly on the accelerator in each gear.*

### Water

If you must drive through water approach it cautiously. See **Driving Through Shallow Water** (page 282).

## DRIVING ON HILLY OR SLOPING TERRAIN



**WARNING:** Extreme care should be used when steering the vehicle in reverse down a slope so as not to cause the vehicle to swerve out of control.

Although natural obstacles could make it necessary to travel diagonally up or down a hill or steep incline, you should try to drive straight up or straight down.

## Driving Hints

**Note:** Avoid turning on steep slopes or hills. A danger lies in losing traction, slipping sideways and possible vehicle rollover. Whenever driving on a hill, determine beforehand the route you can use. Do not drive over the crest of a hill without seeing what conditions are on the other side. Do not drive in reverse over a hill without the aid of an observer.

Apply just enough power to the wheels to climb the hill. Too much power causes the tires to slip, spin or lose traction, and you could lose control of your vehicle. When descending a steep hill, do not descend the hill in neutral. Avoid sudden hard braking to keep the front wheels rolling and to maintain your vehicle's steering.

**Note:** Your vehicle has an anti-lock braking system, apply the brake pedal steadily. Do not pump the brake pedal.

### DRIVING IN SAND

When driving over sand, try to keep all four wheels on the most solid area of the trail. Shift to a lower gear and drive steadily through the terrain. Apply the accelerator slowly and avoid excessive wheel slip. Do not drive your vehicle in deep sand for an extended period of time. This could overheat the system. A message appears in the information display. See **All-Wheel Drive – Information Messages** (page 181).

**Note:** If your vehicle gets stuck in sand, it could be rocked out by shifting between forward and reverse gears, stopping between shifts in a steady pattern. Press lightly on the accelerator in each gear.

### DRIVING THROUGH SHALLOW WATER



**WARNING:** Do not attempt to cross a deep or flowing body of water. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

**Note:** Driving through standing water can cause vehicle damage.

Before driving through standing water, check the depth. Never drive through water that is higher than the bottom of the front rocker area of your vehicle.



When driving through standing water, drive very slowly and do not stop your vehicle. Your brake performance and traction could be limited. After driving through water and as soon as it is safe to do so:

- Lightly press the brake pedal to dry the brakes and to check that they work.
- Turn the steering wheel to check that the steering power assist works.

Check the function of the following:

- Horn
- Exterior lights

## ELECTRIC VEHICLE

### MAXIMIZING YOUR DRIVING RANGE

#### Driving in Cold Weather

Keep your vehicle charged before heading out into cold weather.

Use the heated seats and steering wheel for comfort along with moderate cabin temperature and fan settings to reduce energy needed for climate control.

**Note:** *Lower cabin temperature settings on the climate control system results in better trip range.*

#### Preconditioning Your Vehicle

You can precondition your vehicle before departure with your preferred temperature settings. By using energy from your charging source prior to your departure, battery temperature can be managed for best driving performance and less energy will be needed for heating or cooling of the cabin at the start of your drive. This helps maximize your driving range. See **Remote Start Settings** (page 111).

#### Parking Your Vehicle

At temperatures just above the freezing point and lower, plug your vehicle in when not in use to maintain high voltage battery performance.

When possible park your vehicle under a covered area or in a garage. This will help to moderate temperatures which affect performance of the high voltage battery and require energy to heat or cool the cabin.

## Driving Style

Range is reduced when driving aggressively or at consistently high speeds. Aggressive driving for extended periods could also result in reducing your battery's efficiency and lifespan.

You can charge the high-voltage battery while driving by using brake energy recuperation. See **What Is Efficient Drive Mode** (page 184).

## Driving Economically

The following also helps to improve energy consumption:

- Regularly check your tire pressures and make sure that they are inflated to the correct pressure.
- Follow the recommended maintenance schedule and carry out the recommended checks.
- Plan your journey and check the traffic before you set off. It is more efficient to combine errands into a single trip whenever possible.
- Do not carry unnecessary weight in your vehicle as extra weight wastes energy.
- Do not add unnecessary accessories to the exterior of your vehicle, for example running boards. If you use a roof rack, remember to fold it down or remove it when not in use.
- Shut all windows when driving at high speeds.
- Switch off all electric systems when not in use, for example air conditioning. Make sure that you unplug any accessories from the auxiliary power points when not in use.

# Driving Hints

## FLOOR MATS



**WARNING:** Use a floor mat designed to fit the footwell of your vehicle that does not obstruct the pedal area. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Pedals that cannot move freely can cause loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of serious personal injury.



**WARNING:** Secure the floor mat to both retention devices so that it cannot slip out of position and interfere with the pedals. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not place additional floor mats or any other covering on top of the original floor mats. This could result in the floor mat interfering with the operation of the pedals. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Always make sure that objects cannot fall into the driver foot well while your vehicle is moving. Objects that are loose can become trapped under the pedals causing a loss of vehicle control.



To install floor mats that have eyelets, position the floor mat eyelet over the retention post and press down to lock in position. Repeat for all eyelets on the floor mat.

If the driver side floor mat is not securely fastened, remove it, and contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible. Do not drive with a loose floor mat.

To remove the floor mats, reverse the installation procedure.

**Note:** Regularly check the floor mats to make sure they are secure.

# Crash and Breakdown Information

## HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY VEHICLE PRECAUTIONS

### In the event of damage or fire involving an electric vehicle or hybrid-electric vehicle:

- Assume the high-voltage battery and associated components are energized and fully charged.
- Exposed electrical components, wires, and high-voltage batteries present potential high-voltage shock hazards.
- Venting high-voltage battery vapors are potentially toxic and flammable.
- Physical damage to the vehicle or high-voltage battery could result in immediate or delayed release of toxic, flammable gases and fire.

Vehicle information and general safety practices include reviewing the owner's manual and becoming familiar with your vehicle's safety information and recommended safety practices.

## Crashes

A crash or impact significant enough to require an emergency response for conventional vehicles would also require the same response for an electric or hybrid-electric vehicle.

### If Possible:

1. Move your vehicle to a safe, nearby location and remain on the scene.
2. Move away from your vehicle if any warning lamps illuminated.
3. Roll down the windows before you switch your vehicle off.
4. Place your vehicle in park (P), set the parking brake, switch off the vehicle, activate the hazard flashers, and move your key(s) at least 5 m (16 ft) away from the vehicle.

### Always:

- Call emergency assistance if needed and advise that an electric or hybrid-electric vehicle is involved.
- Avoid contact with leaking fluids and gases, and remain out of the way of oncoming traffic until emergency responders arrive.
- When emergency responders arrive, tell them that the vehicle involved is an electric vehicle or hybrid-electric vehicle.

## Fires

As with any vehicle, call emergency assistance immediately if you see sparks, smoke or flames coming from the vehicle. Remain a safe distance from the vehicle and try to stay clear of the smoke.

1. Exit the vehicle immediately.
2. Advise emergency assistance that an electric or hybrid-electric vehicle is involved.
3. Never attempt to extinguish an electric vehicle fire or move a vehicle that is on fire.
4. As with any vehicle fire, do not inhale smoke, vapors or gas from the vehicle, as they may be hazardous.

## Post-Incident

1. Do not store a severely damaged vehicle with a lithium-ion battery inside a structure or within 15 m (49 ft) of any structure or vehicle.
2. Make sure that passenger and luggage compartments remain ventilated.
3. Call emergency assistance if you observe leaking fluids, sparks, smoke or flames, or hear gurgling or bubbling from the high-voltage battery.

# Crash and Breakdown Information

## SWITCHING THE HAZARD FLASHERS ON AND OFF

The hazard flashers operate with the power on or off. The battery loses charge and may have insufficient power to restart your vehicle.



The hazard flasher button is on the center console. Press the button to switch on the hazard flashers if your vehicle is creating a safety hazard for other road users.

When you switch the hazard flashers on, all front and rear turn signals flash.

Press the button again to switch them off.

## JUMP STARTING THE VEHICLE

### JUMP STARTING PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Connect batteries with only the same nominal voltage.



**WARNING:** Use only adequately sized cables with insulated clamps.

**Note:** This procedure is only for the 12 volt under hood battery.

**Note:** Your vehicle has a 12 volt battery that is easily accessible under the hood. The 12 volt battery controls the switches and contacts that engage the high voltage battery. Do not jump start the high voltage battery using a standard 12 volt battery. Tow your vehicle to an authorized dealer if the high voltage battery does not accept a regular charge.

**Note:** Do not attempt to push start your vehicle. You could cause transmission damage.

**Note:** Do not disconnect the 12 volt battery from your vehicle electrical system.

## PREPARING THE VEHICLE

Use only a 12 volt supply to start your vehicle.

Park the booster vehicle close to the hood of the disabled vehicle, making sure the two vehicles do not touch.

## JUMP STARTING THE VEHICLE



**WARNING:** Connect batteries with only the same nominal voltage.



**WARNING:** Use only adequately sized cables with insulated clamps.

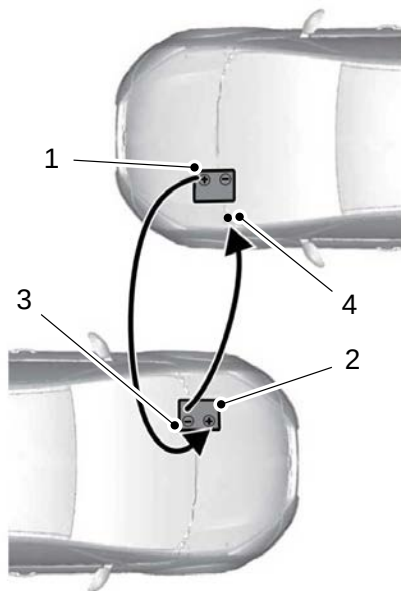
**Note:** Do not disconnect the battery of the disabled vehicle as this could damage the vehicle electrical system.

**Note:** For technical reasons, your vehicle must not be tow-started. If the vehicle's drive system cannot be activated because the 12 V vehicle battery is discharged, you can use the 12 V vehicle battery in another vehicle to activate the vehicle's drive system.

**Note:** The jump start connection points on electric vehicles are not suitable for being used to jump start other vehicles.

# Crash and Breakdown Information

## Connecting the Jumper Cables



E142664

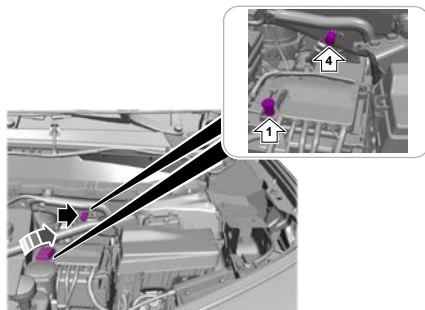
Switch your vehicle off and any electrical equipment. Lift up the battery positive connection point cover. For battery location, refer to the appropriate under hood overview. See **Under Hood Overview** (page 304).



**WARNING:** Make sure that the cables are clear of any moving parts and fuel delivery system parts.



**WARNING:** Do not connect the negative jumper cable to any other part of your vehicle. Use the ground point.



1. Connect the positive (+) jumper cable to the positive (+) jump terminal of the discharged battery vehicle.
2. Connect the other end of the positive (+) jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal of the booster vehicle battery.
3. Connect the negative (-) jumper cable to the negative (-) terminal of the booster vehicle battery.



**WARNING:** Do not connect the negative jumper cable to any other part of your vehicle. Use the ground point.

4. Make the final connection of the negative (-) jumper cable to the negative (-) ground point of the discharged battery vehicle.

## To start your vehicle

1. Run the engine of the booster vehicle at a moderately high speed.
2. Move the transmission selector lever of the low charge vehicle to park (P).
3. Switch on the ready to drive mode. See **Starting the Vehicle** (page 140).

**Note:** Ensure headlamps are switched off when disconnecting the cables. The peak voltage could damage the headlamps.

Disconnect the cables in the reverse order.

# Crash and Breakdown Information

## POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM

### WHAT IS THE POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM

The system helps draw attention to your vehicle in the event of a serious impact.

### HOW DOES THE POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM WORK

The system is designed to turn the hazard flashers on, turn the courtesy lamps on, intermittently sound the horn and unlock all doors in the event of a serious impact that deploys an airbag or the seatbelt pretensioners.

### POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

Depending on applicable laws in the country your vehicle was built for, the horn does not sound in the event of a serious impact.

### SWITCHING THE POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM OFF

Press the hazard flasher switch, or the unlock button on the remote control, or the panic button on the remote control or turn your vehicle off and on twice to switch the system off.

**Note:** The alert turns off when the vehicle battery runs out of charge.

## POST-COLLISION BRAKING

### How Does Post-Collision Braking Work

In the event of a moderate to severe crash, the braking system is designed to attempt to reduce the vehicle speed to a standstill to prevent or reduce the impact of a potential secondary crash.

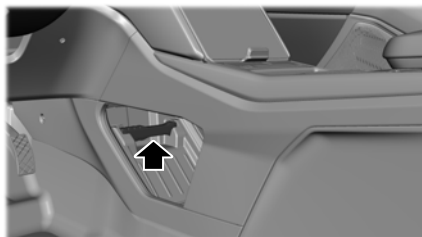
### Post-Collision Braking Limitations

Post-collision braking does not activate if the anti-lock braking system is damaged during the collision.

### Overriding Post-Collision Braking

You can override post-collision braking by pressing the accelerator pedal.

## ACCESSING THE EMERGENCY EXIT



The emergency hammer is located at the lower front in the center console.

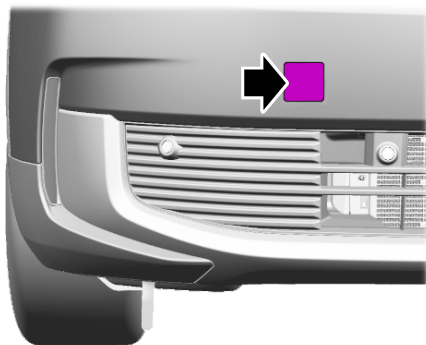
Break the side or rear window glass close to the frame with the hammer in an emergency.



# Crash and Breakdown Information

## RECOVERY TOWING

### ACCESSING THE FRONT TOWING POINT



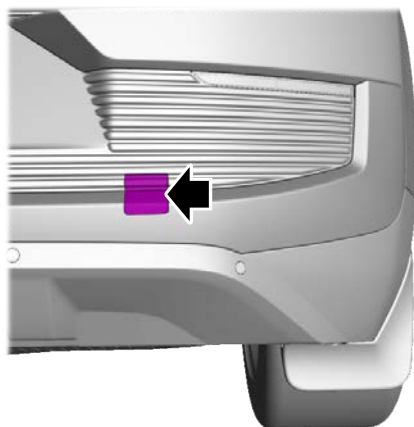
The front towing point is on the right-hand side of the front bumper.

To remove the cover:

1. Gently press the left side of the cover inward.
2. Gently lift the cover on the right side and pull it straight out.

**Note:** The cover has a small lanyard to keep it attached to the bumper.

### ACCESSING THE REAR TOWING POINT



The rear towing point is on the right-hand side of the rear bumper.

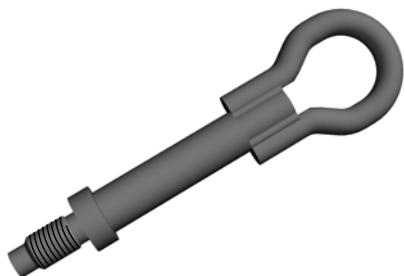
To remove the cover:

1. Gently press the top of the cover inward.
2. Gently lift the cover upward and then pull it straight out.

**Note:** The cover has a small lanyard to keep it attached to the bumper.

# Crash and Breakdown Information

## LOCATING THE TOWING EYE



The towing eye is in the storage space below the lower load floor. See **Locating the Luggage Compartment Under Floor Storage** (page 139).

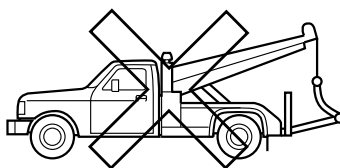
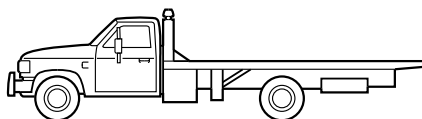
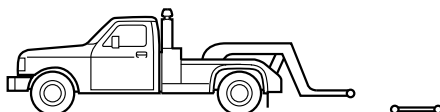
## INSTALLING THE TOWING EYE



**WARNING:** Make sure that the towing eye is fully tightened. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

The towing eye has a left-hand thread. Insert the towing eye into the towing point and turn it counterclockwise to install it. Make sure that you fully tighten the recovery hook.

## TRANSPORTING THE VEHICLE



If you need to have your vehicle towed, contact a professional towing service or your roadside assistance service provider.

We recommend the use of a wheel lift and dollies or flatbed equipment to tow your vehicle.

Towing your vehicle requires that all wheels be off the ground. This prevents damage to the vehicle.

# Towing Your Vehicle

## TOWING YOUR VEHICLE PRECAUTIONS

Use the following guidelines when towing your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in vehicle damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.



**WARNING:** You must switch your vehicle on when being towed. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Always check that the steering wheel lock is deactivated before attempting to move your vehicle. Failure to deactivate the steering wheel lock could result in a crash.



**WARNING:** When towing your vehicle you must select neutral (N).

**Note:** Make sure you properly secure your vehicle to the tow vehicle.

**Note:** If you are unsure of the vehicle's configuration, contact an authorized dealer.

## EMERGENCY TOWING

If your vehicle becomes inoperable without access to wheel dollies or a vehicle transport trailer, it can be flat-towed with all wheels on the ground under the following conditions:

- Your vehicle is facing forward for towing in a forward direction.
- Your vehicle is in accessory mode or switched on before being towed.
- The position selector is in neutral (N).
- Maximum permissible towing speed is 50 km/h (30 mph).
- Maximum permissible towing distance is 50 km (31 mi).

Drive off slowly and smoothly without jerking the vehicle being towed. Only use the towing eye provided as original equipment with your vehicle. See **Locating the Towing Eye** (page 290).

Place tow ropes or rigid towing bars on the same side. For example, right-hand rear towing point to right-hand front towing point.

Only use a tow rope or rigid towing bar that is of the correct strength for the weight of the towing vehicle and the vehicle being towed.

**Note:** Using a rigid towing bar is the safest way to tow a vehicle.

The weight of the vehicle being towed must not exceed the weight of the towing vehicle.

Do not flat-tow your vehicle in the following situations:

- The power supply for the 12 V vehicle electrical system cannot be guaranteed.
- The 12 V vehicle battery is discharged. The steering remains locked and the parking brake and steering column lock cannot be released if applied previously.
- The instrument cluster display does not work properly.
- Neutral (N) position is not available.
- You cannot ensure the steering function or the operation of the wheels after an accident.

Do not flat-tow your vehicle if the following red warning lamp and text message appears on the instrument cluster display:



Towing damages electric drive.

## Towing Your Vehicle

---

If you cannot tow your vehicle on its own wheels due to one of the above conditions, seek expert assistance and have your vehicle transported. See **Transporting the Vehicle** (page 290).

# Emergency Equipment

---

## **STORING A FIRST AID KIT**

You can store a first aid kit on the left-hand side of the luggage compartment.

## **STORING A WARNING TRIANGLE**

You can store a warning triangle on the left-hand side of the luggage compartment.

# Fuses

## FUSE PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Always disconnect the battery before servicing high current fuses.



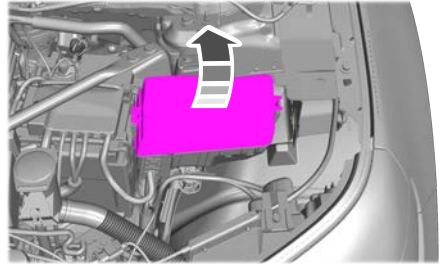
**WARNING:** To reduce risk of electrical shock, always replace the cover to the power distribution box before reconnecting the battery or refilling fluid reservoirs.



**WARNING:** Always replace a fuse with one that has the specified amperage rating. Using a fuse with a higher amperage rating can cause severe wire damage and could start a fire.

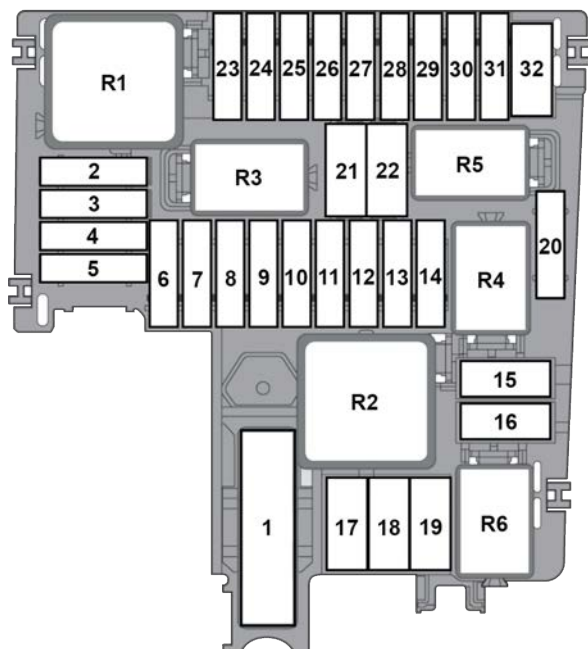
## UNDER HOOD FUSE BOX

### LOCATING THE UNDER HOOD FUSE BOX



# Fuses

## IDENTIFYING THE FUSES IN THE UNDER HOOD FUSE BOX



| Item | Fuse Rating | Protected Component                                                         |
|------|-------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1    | —           | Not used.                                                                   |
| 2    | 7.5 A       | Powertrain control module relay.<br>ABS-ESP control module.                 |
| 3    | 15 A        | Inverter front powertrain.<br>Inverter rear powertrain.<br>Onboard charger. |
| 4    | 30 A        | Left-hand headlamp.                                                         |
| 5    | 30 A        | Right-hand headlamp.                                                        |
| 6    | 7.5 A       | Front radar distance control.<br>Front left corner radar.                   |

## Fuses

| Item | Fuse Rating | Protected Component                              |
|------|-------------|--------------------------------------------------|
|      |             | Front right corner radar.                        |
| 7    | —           | Not used.                                        |
| 8    | —           | Not used.                                        |
| 9    | 15 A        | Horn.                                            |
| 10   | 30 A        | Windshield wiper.                                |
| 11   | 7.5 A       | Air conditioning system.                         |
| 12   | 7.5 A       | Pedestrian alert system.                         |
| 13   | 25 A        | ABS-ESP control module.                          |
| 14   | —           | Not used.                                        |
| 15   | 40 A        | ABS-ESP control module.                          |
| 16   | 50 A        | Cooling fan.                                     |
| 17   | —           | Not used.                                        |
| 18   | —           | Not used.                                        |
| 19   | —           | Not used.                                        |
| 20   | —           | Not used.                                        |
| 21   | —           | Not used.                                        |
| 22   | —           | Not used.                                        |
| 23   | 10 A        | Powertrain control module.                       |
| 24   | 5 A         | Cooling fan control module.                      |
| 25   | 15 A        | Coolant pump.<br>HV traction battery pre-heater. |
| 26   | 15 A        | Coolant pump.<br>Radiator shutter.               |
| 27   | —           | Not used.                                        |
| 28   | —           | Not used.                                        |
| 29   | —           | Not used.                                        |



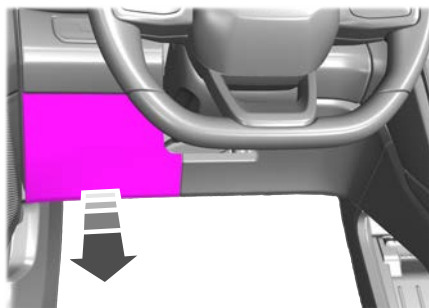
# Fuses

| Item | Fuse Rating | Protected Component |
|------|-------------|---------------------|
| 30   | —           | Not used.           |
| 31   | —           | Not used.           |
| 32   | 50 A        | Brake booster.      |

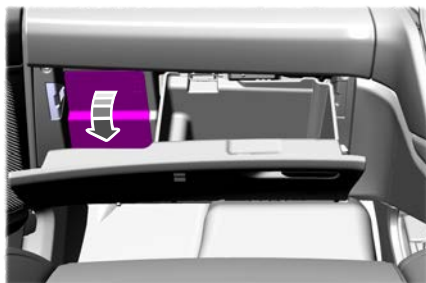
| Relay Number | Rating | Relay function                   |
|--------------|--------|----------------------------------|
| R1           | 40 A   | Powertrain control module relay. |
| R2           | —      |                                  |
| R3           | 20 A   | Horn relay.                      |
| R4           | —      |                                  |
| R5           | —      |                                  |
| R6           | 20 A   | Air conditioning system relay.   |

## INTERIOR FUSE BOX

### ACCESSING THE INTERIOR FUSE BOX - LHD

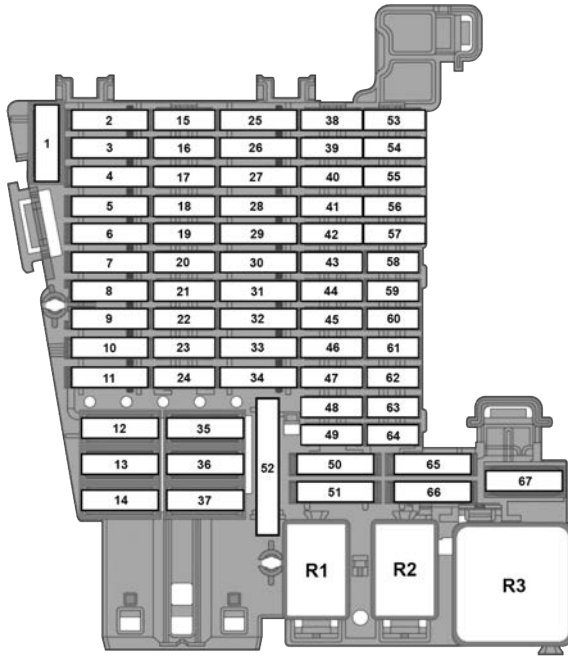


### ACCESSING THE INTERIOR FUSE BOX - RHD



# Fuses

## IDENTIFYING THE FUSES IN THE INTERIOR FUSE BOX



| Item | Fuse Rating | Protected Component                                                    |
|------|-------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1    | —           | Not used.                                                              |
| 2    | 15 A        | Restraints control module.                                             |
| 3    | 25 A        | Trailer tow control module.                                            |
| 4    | 7.5 A       | Front camera assistance system.<br>Interior camera.                    |
| 5    | 25 A        | Body control module.<br>Left-hand exterior lamps.                      |
| 6    | 30 A        | Body control module.<br>Interior lighting.<br>Ambient lighting module. |

## Fuses

| Item | Fuse Rating | Protected Component                                                                                                       |
|------|-------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|      |             | Trunk lighting.<br>Vanity mirror.                                                                                         |
| 7    | 30 A        | Heated front seats.                                                                                                       |
| 8    | —           | Not used.                                                                                                                 |
| 9    | 30 A        | Left-hand front door module.<br>Left-hand rear door module.                                                               |
| 10   | —           | Not used.                                                                                                                 |
| 11   | 15 A        | Trailer tow control module.                                                                                               |
| 12   | —           | Not used.                                                                                                                 |
| 13   | 40 A        | Body control module.<br>Liftgate locking system.<br>Dual washer system.                                                   |
| 14   | 20 A        | Amplifier.                                                                                                                |
| 15   | —           | Not used.                                                                                                                 |
| 16   | 10 A        | Not used.                                                                                                                 |
| 17   | 5 A         | Parking assist control module.<br>Rear corner radars.<br>230V socket.                                                     |
| 18   | 5 A         | Keyless access control module.<br>Keyless access sensors.<br>Steering column lock.<br>Hands-free liftgate control module. |
| 19   | 5 A         | Instrument cluster.<br>On-board communication control module.                                                             |
| 20   | 10 A        | Phone wireless charger.                                                                                                   |
| 21   | 7.5 A       | Top-view camera control module.<br>Rear view camera.                                                                      |
| 22   | 10 A        | Powertrain control module.                                                                                                |
| 23   | —           | Not used.                                                                                                                 |
| 24   | 10 A        | USB port center console.                                                                                                  |
| 25   | —           | Not used.                                                                                                                 |

## Fuses

| Item | Fuse Rating | Protected Component                                                                                                                                                                     |
|------|-------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 26   | 30 A        | Right-hand front door module.<br>Right-hand rear door module.                                                                                                                           |
| 27   | —           | Not used.                                                                                                                                                                               |
| 28   | 10 A        | HV traction battery service disconnect.<br>HV safety line.                                                                                                                              |
| 29   | 15 A        | Trailer tow control module.                                                                                                                                                             |
| 30   | 20 A        | Multi-function display.                                                                                                                                                                 |
| 31   | 25 A        | Trailer tow control module.                                                                                                                                                             |
| 32   | 25 A        | Body control module.<br>Right-hand exterior lamps.                                                                                                                                      |
| 33   | —           | Not used.                                                                                                                                                                               |
| 34   | 15 A        | Air conditioning control module.                                                                                                                                                        |
| 35   | —           | Not used.                                                                                                                                                                               |
| 36   | 40 A        | Blower regulator control module.                                                                                                                                                        |
| 37   | 30 A        | Rear liftgate control module.                                                                                                                                                           |
| 38   | 7.5 A       | Front seat lumbar control module.                                                                                                                                                       |
| 39   | 15 A        | Steering column control module.                                                                                                                                                         |
| 40   | 10 A        | Anti-theft alarm.                                                                                                                                                                       |
| 41   | 5 A         | Data gateway control module.                                                                                                                                                            |
| 42   | 10 A        | USB port second row                                                                                                                                                                     |
| 43   | 7.5 A       | Interior temperature sensor.<br>Heated rear window relay.<br>Interior carbon-dioxide sensor.                                                                                            |
| 44   | 7.5 A       | Light switch.<br>Rain and light sensor.<br>Anti-theft sensor.<br>On-board diagnostic interface.<br>External function panel.<br>Headliner control module.<br>Power window control panel. |
| 45   | 5 A         | Steering column control module.                                                                                                                                                         |

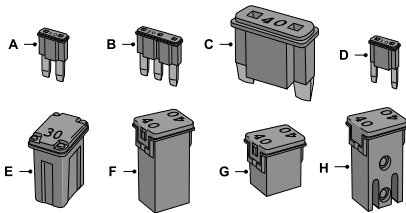
## Fuses

| Item | Fuse Rating | Protected Component                                     |
|------|-------------|---------------------------------------------------------|
| 46   | 10 A        | Center display.<br>Head-up display.                     |
| 47   | 15 A        | Center display movement system.                         |
| 48   | —           | Not used.                                               |
| 49   | —           | Not used.                                               |
| 50   | —           | Not used.                                               |
| 51   | —           | Not used.                                               |
| 52   | 20 A        | Trunk 12V power socket.                                 |
| 53   | —           | Not used.                                               |
| 54   | —           | Not used.                                               |
| 55   | —           | Not used.                                               |
| 56   | —           | Not used.                                               |
| 57   | —           | Not used.                                               |
| 58   | —           | Not used.                                               |
| 59   | 7.5 A       | Trunk 12V power socket relay.                           |
| 60   | 7.5 A       | On-board diagnostic interface.                          |
| 61   | 5 A         | Inverter front powertrain.<br>Inverter rear powertrain. |
| 62   | —           | Not used.                                               |
| 63   | 7.5 A       | Not used.                                               |
| 64   | 7.5 A       | Auto-dimming interior mirror.                           |
| 65   | —           | Not used.                                               |
| 66   | 15 A        | Rear window wiper.                                      |
| 67   | 30 A        | Heated rear window.                                     |

# Fuses

| Relay Number | Rating | Relay function                |
|--------------|--------|-------------------------------|
| R1           | 20 A   | Trunk 12V power socket relay. |
| R2           | 20 A   | Switched positive relay.      |
| R3           | 40 A   | Heated rear window relay.     |

## IDENTIFYING FUSE TYPES



- A Micro 2.
- B Micro 3.
- C Maxi.
- D Mini.
- E M Case.
- F J Case.
- G J Case Low Profile.
- H Slotted M Case.

# Maintenance

## MAINTENANCE PRECAUTIONS

Have your vehicle serviced regularly to help maintain its roadworthiness and resale value. There is a large network of authorized dealers that are there to help you with their professional servicing expertise. We believe that their specially trained technicians are best qualified to service your vehicle properly and expertly. They are supported by a wide range of highly specialized tools developed specifically for servicing your vehicle.

If your vehicle requires professional service, an authorized dealer can provide the necessary parts and service. Check your warranty information to find out which parts and services are covered.

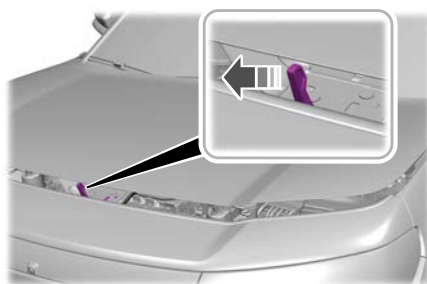
Use only recommended fluids and service parts conforming to specifications.

## OPENING AND CLOSING THE HOOD

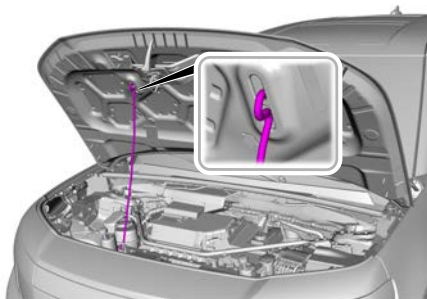
### Opening the Hood



1. Inside the vehicle, pull the hood release handle located under the left-hand side of the instrument panel.
2. Slightly lift the hood.



3. Move the catch to the left.
4. Open the hood.



5. Support the hood with the strut.

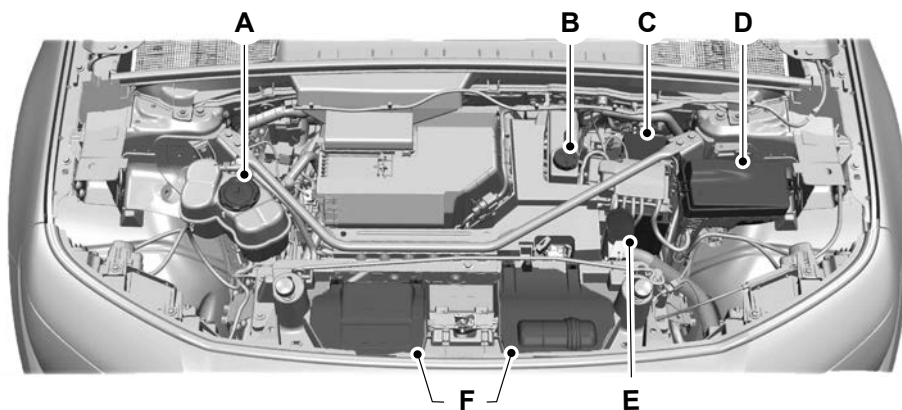
### Closing the Hood

1. Remove the hood strut from the catch and secure it correctly after use.
2. Lower the hood and allow it to drop under its own weight for the last 20–30 cm (8–12 in).

**Note:** Make sure that the hood is correctly closed.

# Maintenance

## UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - LHD

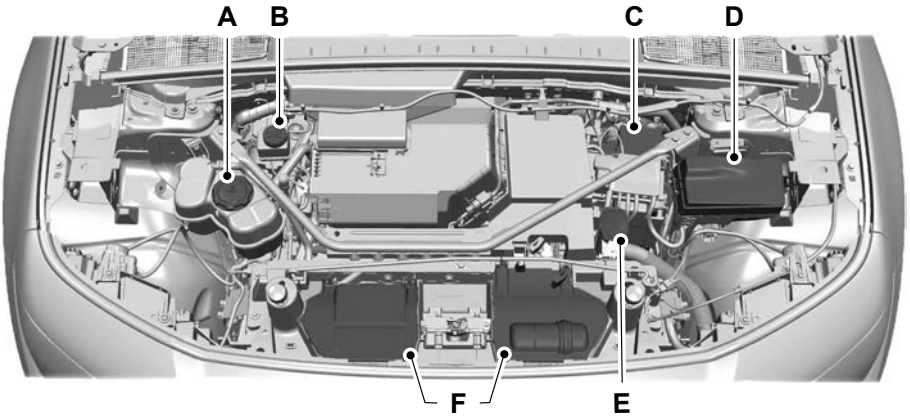


- A Coolant reservoir. See **Checking the Coolant Level** (page 306).
- B Brake fluid reservoir. See **Checking the Brake Fluid** (page 188).
- C 12 V Battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 310).
- D Under hood fuse box. See **Fuses** (page 294).
- E Washer system fluid reservoir. See **Adding Washer Fluid** (page 79).
- F Tire sealant inflator kit. See **What Is the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit** (page 333).



# Maintenance

## UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - RHD



- A Coolant reservoir. See **Checking the Coolant Level** (page 306).
- B Brake fluid reservoir. See **Checking the Brake Fluid** (page 188).
- C 12 V Battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 310).
- D Under hood fuse box. See **Fuses** (page 294).
- E Washer system fluid reservoir. See **Adding Washer Fluid** (page 79).
- F Tire sealant inflator kit. See **What Is the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit** (page 333).

# Maintenance

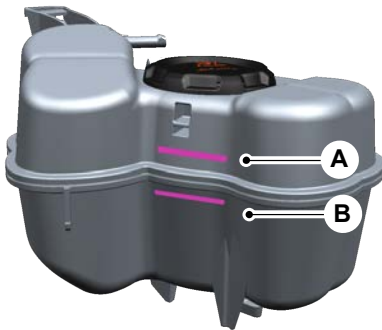
## COOLANT

### CHECKING THE COOLANT LEVEL



**WARNING:** Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the vehicle is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

When the electric motor is cold, check the concentration and level of the coolant at regular intervals.



A maximum level

B minimum level

**Note:** Make sure that the coolant level is between the **MIN** and maximum marks on the coolant reservoir.

**Note:** Coolant expands when it is hot. The level may extend beyond the maximum mark. This is normal.

**Note:** Do not add coolant if there is no coolant visible in the coolant reservoir. Air may have entered the cooling system. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Maintain coolant concentration within 45% to 50%, which equates to a freeze point between  $-30^{\circ}\text{C}$  ( $-22^{\circ}\text{F}$ ) and  $-35^{\circ}\text{C}$  ( $-31^{\circ}\text{F}$ ).

The proportion of the coolant must always be at least 45% to protect the cooling system but should not exceed 55% even in extremely cold climates.

**Note:** The coolant additive is violet in color. The coolant color results from mixing the purple coolant additive with distilled water. If the liquid in the coolant reservoir is not violet but brown, the suitable coolant has been mixed with another unsuitable coolant. It can result in malfunctions or damage to the cooling system.

### ADDING COOLANT



**WARNING:** Do not add coolant when the vehicle is on or the cooling system is hot. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



**WARNING:** Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the vehicle is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



**WARNING:** Do not allow the fluid to touch your skin or eyes. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and contact your physician.

# Maintenance



**WARNING:** Do not put coolant in the windshield washer reservoir. If sprayed on the windshield, coolant could make it difficult to see through the windshield.



**WARNING:** Do not add coolant further than the **MAX** mark.

**Note:** Do not use stop leak pellets, cooling system sealants, or non-specified additives as they can cause damage to the cooling or heating systems. Resulting component damage may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

**Note:** Automotive fluids are not interchangeable.

It is very important to use prediluted coolant approved to the correct specification in order to avoid plugging the small passageways in the electric motor cooling system. See **Coolant** (page 306). Do not mix different colors or types of coolant in your vehicle. Mixing of coolants or using an incorrect coolant may harm the electric motor or cooling system components and may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

**Note:** Coolants marketed for all makes and models may not be approved to our specifications and may cause damage to the cooling system. Resulting component damage may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, add prediluted coolant immediately.

To top up the coolant level do the following:

1. Park the vehicle on a level surface.
2. Allow the cooling system to cool down.

3. Open the bonnet. The coolant reservoir is identified by the red symbol on the cap. See **Under Hood Overview** (page 304). See **Under Hood Overview** (page 305).
4. Unscrew the cap slowly. Any pressure escapes as you unscrew the cap.
5. Add prediluted coolant approved to the correct specification. See **Cooling System Capacity and Specification** (page 308).
6. Add enough prediluted coolant to reach the correct level.
7. Replace the coolant reservoir cap. Turn the cap clockwise until it contacts the hard stop.
8. Check the coolant level in the coolant reservoir the next few times you drive your vehicle. If necessary, add enough prediluted coolant to bring the coolant level to the correct level.

Operating your vehicle with a low level of coolant can result in overheating and possible electric motor damage.

Do not use the following as a coolant substitute:

- Alcohol.
- Methanol.
- Brine.
- Any coolant mixed with alcohol or methanol antifreeze.

Alcohol and other liquids can cause damage from overheating or freezing.

Do not add extra inhibitors or additives to the coolant. These can be harmful and compromise the corrosion protection of the coolant.

## CHANGING THE COOLANT

For coolant change, see your authorized dealer.

# Maintenance

## COOLING SYSTEM CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION

### Capacities

| Variant | Quantity                                                       |
|---------|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| All.    | Fill the coolant to the maximum mark on the coolant reservoir. |

### Materials

| Name                                       | Specification |
|--------------------------------------------|---------------|
| Antifreeze/Coolant HT-FVA<br>MU7J 19544 BA | -             |

## COOLANT – WARNING LAMPS

### Yellow Warning Lamp



If it illuminates yellow, the coolant temperature is too high or the coolant level is low.

**Note:** A pop-up message appears on the instrument cluster.

### Red Warning Lamp



If it illuminates red, the electric motor or high voltage battery begins to overheat.



**Note:** A pop-up message appears on the instrument cluster.

1. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
2. Power your vehicle off.
3. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## COOLANT – INFORMATION MESSAGES

| Message                                              | Details                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Please check coolant level. Refer to Owner's Manual. | Displays when the coolant temperature is too high. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so, power the vehicle off and allow it to cool. Check the coolant level. See <b>Checking the Coolant Level</b> (page 306). If the problem persists, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |

# Maintenance

## COOLANT VIDEOS

Animations are shown to enhance the written content and not intended to replace it. We recommend that you read the Owner's Manual for full details.

[Explorer Checking the Coolant Level Video Link](#)

For more information scan here:



## 12V BATTERY

### 12V BATTERY PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. Therefore, do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery. When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes. Always provide correct ventilation.



**WARNING:** When lifting a plastic-cased battery, excessive pressure on the end walls could cause acid to flow through the vent caps, resulting in personal injury and damage to the vehicle or battery. Lift the battery with a battery carrier or with your hands on opposite corners.



**WARNING:** Keep batteries out of reach of children. Batteries contain sulfuric acid. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. Shield your eyes when working near the battery to protect against possible splashing of acid solution. In case of acid contact with skin or eyes, flush immediately with water for a minimum of 15 minutes and get prompt medical attention. If acid is swallowed, call a physician immediately.



**WARNING:** Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive harm. **Wash your hands after handling.**



**WARNING:** This vehicle may have more than one battery. Removing the battery cables from only one battery does not disconnect your vehicle electrical system. Make sure you disconnect the battery cables from all batteries when disconnecting power. Failure to do so may cause serious personal injury or property damage.

### WHAT IS THE BATTERY MANAGEMENT SYSTEM

The battery management system monitors battery conditions and takes actions to extend battery life.

### HOW DOES THE BATTERY MANAGEMENT SYSTEM WORK

If excessive battery drain is detected, the system temporarily disables some electrical systems to protect the battery.

# Maintenance

The performance of large electrical consumers could be reduced or switched off completely.

A message could appear in the information display to alert you that battery protection actions are active. This message is only for notification that an action is taking place, and not intended to indicate an electrical problem or that the battery requires replacement.

## BATTERY MANAGEMENT SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

After battery replacement by an authorized dealer, or in some cases after charging the battery with an external charger, the battery management system requires up to eight hours of vehicle sleep time to relearn the battery state of charge.

During this time, your vehicle must remain fully locked with the vehicle switched off.

**Note:** Prior to relearning the battery state of charge, the battery management system could temporarily disable some electrical systems.

## Electrical Accessory Installation

To make sure the battery management system works correctly, do not connect an electrical device ground connection directly to the battery negative post. This can cause inaccurate measurements of the battery condition and potential incorrect system operation.

**Note:** If you add electrical accessories or components to the vehicle, it could adversely affect battery performance and durability. This could also affect the performance of other electrical systems in the vehicle.

## CHANGING THE 12V BATTERY

If the 12 volt battery needs servicing, see your authorized dealer.

## RECYCLING AND DISPOSING OF THE 12V BATTERY



Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way.

Seek advice from your local authority about recycling old batteries.

## RECYCLING AND DISPOSING OF THE 12V BATTERY - TURKEY

**DEPOZİTOLUDUR**



Geri Kazanılır

**DİKKAT!**

- Atık akümülatörünüzün içindeki asitli sıvıyı toprağa, suya, kanalizasyona dökmeyiniz.
- Atık akümülatörünüzün plastik kısımlarını soba ve kazanlarda yakmayınız.
- Atık akümülatörleri çocuklardan uzak tutunuz.

**FİRMA KODU: 004**  
**FİRMA KODU: 220**

## CHARGING THE 12V BATTERY

Your vehicle has a high voltage to low voltage energy transfer feature that keeps the 12-volt battery charged by the high voltage battery. If the 12-volt battery level is low, the high voltage battery transfers energy to the 12-volt battery when the vehicle is off.

# Maintenance

12-volt battery depletion can still occur if the high voltage battery state of charge is low. See **Preserving Your High Voltage Battery** (page 142).

Always take care not to deep discharge the 12-volt battery as it may cause premature wear.

## 12V BATTERY – TROUBLESHOOTING

### 12V BATTERY – WARNING LAMPS

#### Yellow Warning Lamp



If it illuminates yellow while driving, it indicates a charge level or power supply error.

**Note:** A pop-up message appears on the instrument cluster.

1. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
2. Power your vehicle off.

3. Power your vehicle on.

**Note:** Wait for the high voltage battery to recharge the 12V battery.

4. If the charge level of the high voltage battery is insufficient, plug in charge your vehicle.
5. If the message does not disappear after a few minutes, have your vehicle checked.

#### Red Warning Lamp



If it illuminates red while driving, it indicates an electrical system error.

**Note:** A pop-up message appears on the instrument cluster.

1. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
2. Power your vehicle off.
3. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

# Maintenance

## 12V BATTERY – INFORMATION MESSAGES

| Message                                                        | Details                                                                                                |
|----------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 12 V battery not charging. Stop vehicle safely!                | Your vehicle has a 12 volt battery related problem. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer. |
| 12 V supply is currently restricted. Please drive carefully.   |                                                                                                        |
| Please have the 12 V battery checked. Visit workshop.          |                                                                                                        |
| Please replace 12 V battery. Visit workshop.                   |                                                                                                        |
| 12 V battery low. Please refer to Owner's Manual.              |                                                                                                        |
| Error: 12 V battery. Unable to restart. Please visit workshop. |                                                                                                        |
| Error: 12 V supply. Stop vehicle safely! Owner's Manual!       |                                                                                                        |

## ADJUSTING THE HEADLAMPS

### Headlamp Aim Adjustment

The headlamps on your vehicle are properly aimed at the assembly plant. If your vehicle has been involved in a crash, have the aim of the headlamp beam checked by an authorized dealer.

## INTERIOR BULBS

### INTERIOR BULB SPECIFICATION CHART

| Bulb                | Specification | Power (Watts) |
|---------------------|---------------|---------------|
| Vanity mirror lamp. | T5.           | 1.3           |

**Note:** LED lamps are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer if they fail.



# Vehicle Specifications

---

## VEHICLE DIMENSIONS

| Dimension Description                         | Dimension mm (in)       |
|-----------------------------------------------|-------------------------|
| Overall length.                               | 4,468 (175.9)           |
| Overall width including the exterior mirrors. | 2,062 (81.2)            |
| Overall height excluding the antenna.         | 1,604–1,614 (63.1–63.5) |
| Wheelbase.                                    | 2,767 (108.9)           |
| Front track.                                  | 1,584–1,596 (62.4–62.8) |
| Rear track.                                   | 1,565–1,579 (61.6–62.2) |

# Vehicle Specifications

## AIR CONDITIONING SYSTEM CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION

**WARNING:** The air conditioning refrigerant system contains refrigerant

under high pressure. Only qualified personnel should service the air conditioning refrigerant system. Opening the air conditioning refrigerant system can cause personal injury.

Contains fluorinated greenhouse gas R1234yf.

| Variant | Global Warming Potential | CO <sub>2</sub> Equivalent |
|---------|--------------------------|----------------------------|
| All.    | 0.501 <sup>1</sup>       | 0.00023 t                  |

<sup>1</sup>GWP 4(GB)

## Air Conditioning System

### Capacities

| Variant | Refrigerant                        | Refrigerant Oil                                 |
|---------|------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| All.    | 0.46 ± 0.015 kg<br>(16.2 ± 0.5 oz) | 120 ± 0.01 cm <sup>3</sup><br>(4.1 ± 0.0 fl oz) |

### Materials

| Name                   | Specification |
|------------------------|---------------|
| Refrigerant - R-1234yf | WSS-M17B21-A  |

## Heat Pump System

### Capacities

| Variant | Refrigerant                       | Refrigerant Oil                                 |
|---------|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| All.    | 0.47 ± 0.01 kg<br>(16.6 ± 0.4 oz) | 200 ± 0.01 cm <sup>3</sup><br>(6.8 ± 0.0 fl oz) |

### Materials

| Name             | Specification  |
|------------------|----------------|
| R744 Refrigerant | DIN SPEC 74105 |

# Vehicle Care

---

## CLEANING THE EXTERIOR

### CLEANING THE EXTERIOR PRECAUTIONS

Immediately remove additive residuals, bird droppings, insect deposits and road tar. These may damage your vehicle's paintwork or trim over time.

Remove any exterior accessories, for example antennas, before entering a car wash.

**Note:** *If you intend to park your vehicle for an extended period after cleaning, drive it for few minutes before parking. This reduces the risk of corrosion of the brake discs, brake pads and linings.*

### CLEANING HEADLAMPS AND REAR LAMPS

We recommend that you only use cold or lukewarm water containing car shampoo to clean the headlamps and the rear lamps.

Do not scrape the lamps.

Do not wipe lamps when they are dry.

### CLEANING WINDOWS AND WIPER BLADES

To clean the windshield and wiper blades:

- Clean the windshield with a non-abrasive glass cleaner.

**Note:** *When cleaning the interior of the windshield, avoid getting any glass cleaner on the instrument panel or door panels. Wipe any glass cleaner off these surfaces immediately.*

- Clean the wiper blades with washer fluid or water applied with a soft sponge or cloth.

**Note:** *Do not use razor blades or other sharp objects to clean or remove decals from the inside of the heated rear window. This can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.*

**Note:** *Do not use chemicals or corrosive products, as they can compromise surfaces and damage critical systems of your vehicle.*

### CLEANING CHROME, ALUMINIUM OR STAINLESS STEEL

We recommend that you only use a car shampoo, a soft cloth and water on bumpers and other chrome, aluminium or stainless steel parts.

**Note:** *For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.*

**Note:** *Rinse the area well after cleaning.*

**Note:** *Do not use abrasive materials, for example steel wool or plastic pads, as they can scratch these surfaces.*

**Note:** *Do not use chrome cleaner, metal cleaner or polish on wheels or wheel covers.*

### CLEANING WHEELS

Only use a recommended wheel and tire cleaner to clean the wheels. For additional information and assistance, contact an authorized dealer.

1. Use a sponge to remove heavy deposits of dirt and brake dust.
2. Rinse well after cleaning.

**Note:** *Do not apply a cleaning chemical to hot wheel rims, wheel covers, and wheel ornaments.*

If you intend to park your vehicle for an extended period after cleaning the wheels, drive it for few minutes before parking. This reduces the risk of corrosion of the brake discs, brake pads and linings.

# Vehicle Care

Do not clean hot wheel rims, wheel covers and wheel ornaments.

**Note:** *Some car washes could damage wheel rims, wheel covers, and wheel ornaments.*

**Note:** *Using non-recommended cleaners, harsh acidic cleaning products, chrome wheel cleaners or abrasive materials could damage wheel rims and covers.*

**Note:** *Failure to properly clean the stainless steel lug nuts may result in a white, hazy finish, pitting, or an orange/brown rust appearance. Such damage is not covered by your vehicle warranty.*

## CLEANING STRIPES OR GRAPHICS

It is recommended to wash your vehicle by hand however, pressure washing may be used under the following conditions:

- Use a spray with a minimum of 40° wide spray angle pattern.
- Keep the nozzle 30 cm (12 in) and at a 90° angle to your vehicle.
- Do not use water pressure higher than 6,895 kPa (1,000 psi).
- Do not use water hotter than 23°C (73°F).

**Note:** *Holding the pressure washer nozzle at an angle to the vehicle's surface may damage graphics and cause the edges to peel away.*

## CLEANING CAMERA LENSES AND SENSORS

Use lukewarm or cold water and a soft cloth to clean the camera lens and sensors.

**Note:** *Do not pressure wash camera lens and sensors.*

## CLEANING THE UNDERBODY

Flush the complete underside of your vehicle frequently. Keep body and door drain holes free from packed dirt.

Suspension and steering components may require regular cleaning with a power washer or a thorough rinse with a strong stream of water if the vehicle is operated in dusty or muddy environments. Leaf springs or other suspension components may emit squeaking or popping noises while operating the vehicle if particles, such as dirt, rocks, or other debris, are present in the components.

## CLEANING THE INTERIOR

### CLEANING THE INSTRUMENT PANEL



**WARNING:** Do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents when cleaning the steering wheel or instrument panel to avoid contamination of the airbag system.

We recommend that you only clean the instrument panel and cluster lens with a damp soft cloth. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

**Note:** *Avoid cleaners or polishes that increase the gloss of the upper portion of the instrument panel. The dull finish in this area helps protect you from undesirable windshield reflection.*

# Vehicle Care

## CLEANING PLASTIC

We recommend that you only use a mild soap and water solution on a soft cloth. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

**Note:** Do not allow air fresheners and hand sanitizers to spill onto interior surfaces. If a spill occurs, wipe off immediately. Your warranty may not cover these damages.

## CLEANING DISPLAYS AND SCREENS

We recommend that you only use a microfiber cloth in a circular motion to clean off the fingerprint or dust.

**Note:** Do not pour or spray alcohol onto the touchscreen.

**Note:** Do not use detergent or any type of solvent to clean the touchscreen.

## CLEANING FABRIC



**WARNING:** On vehicles equipped with seat-mounted airbags, do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents. Such products could contaminate the side airbag system and affect performance of the side airbag in a crash.

We recommend that you only clean fabric in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
3. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

For heavy stains, spot clean the area. If a ring forms on the fabric, clean the entire area immediately, but do not oversaturate or the ring could set.

## CLEANING LEATHER



**WARNING:** On vehicles equipped with seat-mounted airbags, do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents. Such products could contaminate the side airbag system and affect performance of the side airbag in a crash.

We recommend that you only clean the leather surfaces in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
3. Make sure the leather is dry, then apply a small amount of conditioner to a clean, dry cloth.
4. Rub the conditioner into the leather until it disappears. Allow the conditioner to dry, then repeat the process for the entire interior. If a film appears, wipe it off with a dry, clean cloth.
5. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

# Vehicle Care

## CLEANING VINYL



**WARNING:** On vehicles equipped with seat-mounted airbags, do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents. Such products could contaminate the side airbag system and affect performance of the side airbag in a crash.

We recommend that you only clean vinyl surfaces in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
3. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

## CLEANING CARPETS AND FLOOR MATS

We recommend that you only clean your carpets in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
3. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

For heavy stains, spot clean the area. If a ring forms on the fabric, clean the entire area immediately, but do not oversaturate or the ring could set.

We recommend that you only clean your floor mats in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wash rubber floor mats using mild soap and lukewarm or cold water.
3. Completely dry the floor mat before placing them back in your vehicle.

## CLEANING SEATBELTS



**WARNING:** Do not use cleaning solvents, bleach or dye on the vehicle's seatbelts, as these actions may weaken the belt webbing.

1. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

## CLEANING STORAGE COMPARTMENTS

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

## REPAIRING MINOR PAINT DAMAGE

We recommend that you contact an authorized dealer to identify your vehicle color code. Authorized dealers have touch-up paint to match your vehicle's color.

Before repairing minor paint damage, use a cleaner to remove particles such as bird droppings, tree sap, insect deposits, tar spots, road salt and industrial fallout.

Read the instructions before using cleaning products.

## WAXING YOUR VEHICLE

Wax the high-gloss painted surface of your prewashed vehicle once or twice a year.

We recommend that you only use an approved quality wax that does not contain abrasives. Follow the manufacturer's instructions to apply and remove the wax. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

When washing and waxing, park your vehicle in a shaded area out of direct sunlight.

**Note:** *Avoid waxing unpainted or low-gloss black colored parts, they discolor over time.*

# Storing Your Vehicle

---

## PREPARING YOUR VEHICLE FOR STORAGE

If you plan on storing your vehicle for 30 days or more, read the following maintenance recommendations to make sure your vehicle stays in good operating condition.

We engineer and test all vehicles and their components for reliable, regular driving. Under various conditions, long-term storage may lead to degraded performance or failure unless you use specific precautions to preserve vehicle components.

### General

- Store all vehicles in a dry, ventilated place.
- Protect from sunlight, if possible.
- If vehicles are stored outside, they require regular maintenance to protect against rust and damage.

### Body

- Wash your vehicle thoroughly to remove dirt, grease, oil, tar or mud from exterior surfaces, rear-wheel housing and the underside of front fenders.
- Periodically wash your vehicle if it is stored in exposed locations.
- Touch-up exposed or primed metal to prevent rust.
- Cover chrome and stainless steel parts with a thick coat of auto wax to prevent discoloration. Re-wax as necessary when you wash your vehicle.
- Lubricate all hood, door and luggage compartment hinges and latches with a light grade oil.
- Cover interior trim to prevent fading.
- Keep all rubber parts free from oil and solvents.

### Cooling system

- Protect against freezing temperatures.
- When removing your vehicle from storage, check coolant fluid level. Confirm that there are no cooling system leaks and that fluid is at the recommended level.

### Battery Systems

We recommend the following actions for your vehicle:

- When storing your vehicle for greater than 30 days the state of charge should be approximately 50%. Additionally, we recommend disconnecting the 12v battery which will reduce system loads on the HV battery.

**Note:** *Make sure the vehicle has been switched off and doors closed for at least five minutes before disconnecting the 12 volt battery.*

### 12 Volt Battery

- Check and recharge as necessary. Keep connections clean.

**Note:** *It is necessary to reset memory features if you disconnect the battery cables.*

### Tires

- Maintain recommended air pressure.

### Miscellaneous

- Make sure all linkages, cables, levers and pins under your vehicle are covered with grease to prevent rust.
- Move vehicles at least 7.5 m (25 ft) every 15 days to lubricate working parts and prevent corrosion.



# Storing Your Vehicle

---

## REMOVING YOUR VEHICLE FROM STORAGE

When your vehicle is ready to come out of storage, do the following:

- Wash your vehicle to remove any dirt or grease film build-up on window surfaces.
- Check windshield wipers for any deterioration.
- Check tire pressures and set tire inflation per the Tire Label.
- Check brake pedal operation. Corroded brake rotors could cause brake noise. Drive your vehicle and gently apply and release the brakes repeatedly over a 10- minute drive to clean any corrosion from the brakes.
- Check coolant levels to make sure there are no leaks, and fluids are at recommended levels.
- If you removed the battery, clean the battery cable ends and check for damage.

Contact an authorized dealer if you have any concerns or issues.

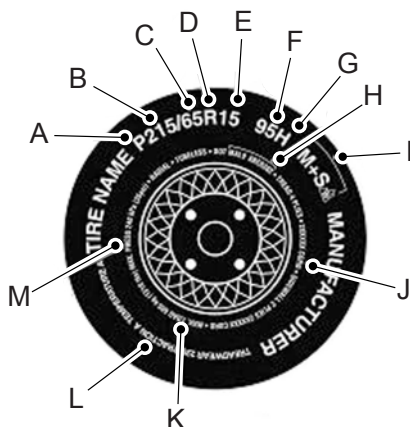
# Wheel and Tire Information

## LOCATING THE TIRE LABEL

The tire label is on the driver side B-pillar or the edge of the driver door. It contains information on the recommended front and rear tire inflation pressures.

## INFORMATION ON THE TIRE SIDEWALL

### Information on P Type Tires



P215/65R15 95H is an example of a tire size, load index and speed rating. The definitions of these items are listed below. (Note that the tire size, load index and speed rating for your vehicle may be different from this example.)

A. **P:** Indicates a tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association, that may be used for service on cars, sport utility vehicles, minivans and light trucks. **Note:** If your tire size does not begin with a letter this may mean it is designated by either the European Tire and Rim Technical Organization or the Japan Tire Manufacturing Association.

B. **215:** Indicates the nominal width of the tire in millimeters from sidewall edge to sidewall edge. In general, the larger the number, the wider the tire.

C. **65:** Indicates the aspect ratio which gives the tire's ratio of height to width.

D. **R:** Indicates a radial type tire.

E. **15:** Indicates the wheel or rim diameter in inches. If you change your wheel size, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new wheel diameter.

F. **95:** Indicates the tire's load index. It is an index that relates to how much weight a tire can carry. You may find this information in your owner's manual. If not, contact a local tire dealer.

**Note:** You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by federal law.

G. **H:** Indicates the tire's speed rating. The speed rating denotes the speed at which a tire is designed to be driven for extended periods of time under a standard condition of load and inflation pressure. The tires on your vehicle may operate at different conditions for load and inflation pressure. These speed ratings may need to be adjusted for the difference in conditions. The ratings range from 130 km/h (81 mph) to 300 km/h (186 mph). These ratings are listed in the following chart.

**Note:** You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by federal law.

# Wheel and Tire Information

| Letter rating | Speed rating       |
|---------------|--------------------|
| M             | 130 km/h (81 mph)  |
| N             | 140 km/h (87 mph)  |
| Q             | 160 km/h (99 mph)  |
| R             | 170 km/h (106 mph) |
| S             | 180 km/h (112 mph) |
| T             | 190 km/h (118 mph) |
| U             | 200 km/h (124 mph) |
| H             | 210 km/h (130 mph) |
| V             | 240 km/h (149 mph) |
| W             | 270 km/h (168 mph) |
| Y             | 300 km/h (186 mph) |

**Note:** For tires with a maximum speed capability over 149 mph (240 km/h), tire manufacturers sometimes use the letters ZR. For those with a maximum speed capability over 186 mph (299 km/h), tire manufacturers always use the letters ZR.

**H. Tire Identification Number (TIN):** A code which identifies manufacturing location and other information about the tire. It may include the letters "DOT" and be referred to as a DOT code. The last four numbers represent the week and year the tire was built. For example, 2501 means the 25th week of 2001. The letters and numbers in between are identification codes used for traceability. This information is used to contact customers if a tire defect requires a recall.

**I. M+S or M/S:** Mud and Snow, or

**AT:** All Terrain, or

**AS:** All Season.

## J. Tire Ply Composition and Material

**Used:** Indicates the number of plies or the number of layers of rubber-coated fabric in the tire tread and sidewall. Tire manufacturers also must indicate the ply materials in the tire and the sidewall, which include steel, nylon, polyester, and others.

**K. Maximum Load:** Indicates the maximum load in kilograms and pounds that can be carried by the tire. See the Tire Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), for the correct tire pressure for your vehicle.

## L. Treadwear, Traction and Temperature Grades:

**\*Treadwear** The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100.

**\*Traction:** The traction grades, from highest to lowest are AA, A, B, and C. The grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

**\*Temperature:** The temperature grades are A (the highest), B and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

## M. Maximum Inflation Pressure:

Indicates the tire manufacturers' maximum permissible pressure or the pressure at which the maximum load can be carried by the tire. This pressure is normally higher than the vehicle manufacturer's

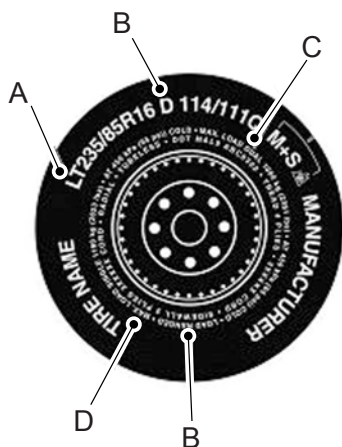
# Wheel and Tire Information

recommended cold inflation pressure which can be found on the Tire Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position). The cold inflation pressure should never be set lower than the recommended pressure on the vehicle label.

The tire suppliers may have additional markings, notes or warnings such as standard load or radial tubeless.

## Additional Information Contained on the Tire Sidewall for LT Type Tires

**Note:** *Tire Quality Grades do not apply to this type of tire.*



LT type tires have some additional information beyond those of P type tires; these differences are described below.

**A. LT:** Indicates a tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association, that is intended for service on light trucks.

## B. Load Range and Load Inflation

**Limits:** Indicates the tire's load-carrying capabilities and its inflation limits.

**C. Maximum Load Dual lb (kg) at psi (kPa) cold:** Indicates the maximum load and tire pressure when the tire is used as a dual, defined as four tires on the rear axle (a total of six or more tires on the vehicle).

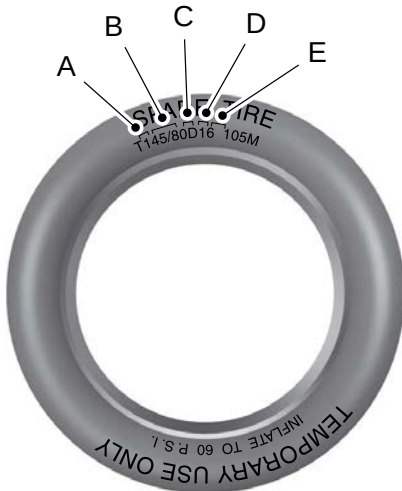
**D. Maximum Load Single lb (kg) at psi (kPa) cold:** Indicates the maximum load and tire pressure when the tire is used as a single, defined as two tires (total) on the rear axle.

## Information on T Type Tires

T145/80D16 is an example of a tire size.

**Note:** *The temporary tire size for your vehicle may be different from this example. Tire Quality Grades do not apply to this type of tire.*

# Wheel and Tire Information



T type tires have some additional information beyond those of P type tires; these differences are described below:

A. **T:** Indicates a type of tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association, that is intended for temporary service on cars, sport utility vehicles, minivans and light trucks.

B. **145:** Indicates the nominal width of the tire in millimeters from sidewall edge to sidewall edge. In general, the larger the number, the wider the tire.

C. **80:** Indicates the aspect ratio which gives the tire's ratio of height to width. Numbers of 70 or lower indicate a short sidewall.

D. **D:** Indicates a diagonal type tire.

**R:** Indicates a radial type tire.

E. **16:** Indicates the wheel or rim diameter in inches. If you change your wheel size, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new wheel diameter.

## GLOSSARY OF TIRE TERMINOLOGY

\***Tire label:** A label showing the original equipment tire sizes, recommended inflation pressure and the maximum weight the vehicle can carry.

\***Tire Identification Number (TIN):** A number on the sidewall of each tire providing information about the tire brand and manufacturing plant, tire size and date of manufacture. Also referred to as DOT code.

\***Inflation pressure:** A measure of the amount of air in a tire.

\***Standard load:** A class of P-metric or Metric tires designed to carry a maximum load at set pressure. For example: For P-metric tires 2.4 bar (35 psi) and for Metric tires 2.5 bar (36 psi). Increasing the inflation pressure beyond this pressure will not increase the tire's load carrying capability.

\***Extra load:** A class of P-metric or Metric tires designed to carry a heavier maximum load at 2.9 bar (42 psi). Increasing the inflation pressure beyond this pressure will not increase the tire's load carrying capability.

\***kPa:** Kilopascal, a metric unit of air pressure.

\***PSI:** Pounds per square inch, a standard unit of air pressure.

\***Cold tire pressure:** The tire pressure when the vehicle has been stationary and out of direct sunlight for an hour or more and prior to the vehicle being driven for 1.6 km (1 mi).

# Wheel and Tire Information

**\*Recommended inflation pressure:** The cold inflation pressure found on the Tire Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position).

**\*B-pillar:** The structural member at the side of the vehicle behind the front door.

**\*Bead area of the tire:** Area of the tire next to the rim.

**\*Sidewall of the tire:** Area between the bead area and the tread.

**\*Tread area of the tire:** Area of the perimeter of the tire that contacts the road when mounted on the vehicle.

**\*Rim:** The metal support (wheel) for a tire or a tire and tube assembly upon which the tire beads are seated.

## TIRE REPLACEMENT REQUIREMENTS

Your vehicle is equipped with tires designed to provide a safe ride and handling capability.



**WARNING:** Only use replacement tires and wheels that are the same size, as those originally provided for your vehicle. The required tire and wheel sizes, along with the minimum required Load and Speed Index, can be found on the Tire Label on the driver side door frame or the edge of the driver door. If this information is not found in those locations, or for additional options, contact your authorized dealer. Use of any tire or wheel not recommended, could affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.



**WARNING:** To reduce the risk of serious injury, when mounting replacement tires and wheels, you should not exceed the maximum pressure indicated on the sidewall of the tire to set the beads without additional precautions listed below. If the beads do not seat at the maximum pressure indicated, re-lubricate and try again.



**WARNING:** For a mounting pressure more than 1.38 bar (20 psi) greater than the maximum pressure, a Ford dealer or other tire service professional should do the mounting.



**WARNING:** Always inflate steel carcass tires with a remote air fill with the person inflating standing at a minimum of 3.66 m (12 ft) away from the wheel and tire assembly.



**WARNING:** Only use the specified jacking points. If you use any other locations you could damage vehicle components, such as brake lines.



**WARNING:** When inflating the tire for mounting pressures up to 1.38 bar (20 psi) greater than the maximum pressure on the tire sidewall, the following precautions must be taken to protect the person mounting the tire:

- Make sure that you have the correct tire and wheel size.
- Lubricate the tire bead and wheel bead seat area again.
- Stand at a minimum of 3.66 m (12 ft) away from the wheel and tire assembly.
- Use both eye and ear protection.

**Important:** Remember to replace the wheel valve stems when the road tires are replaced on your vehicle.

# Wheel and Tire Information

It is recommended that the two front tires or two rear tires generally be replaced as a pair if the worn tires still have usable depth.

To avoid potential All-Wheel Drive (AWD) malfunction or (AWD) system damage, it is recommended to replace all four tires rather than mixing significantly worn tires with new tires.

The tire pressure sensors mounted in the wheels (originally installed on your vehicle) are not designed to be used in aftermarket wheels.

The use of wheels or tires not recommended may affect the operation of your tire pressure monitoring system.

If the tire pressure monitoring system indicator is flashing, your system is malfunctioning. Your replacement tire might be incompatible with your tire pressure monitoring system, or some component of the system may be damaged.

## Age



**WARNING:** Tires degrade over time depending on many factors such as weather, storage conditions, and conditions of use (load, speed, inflation pressure) the tires experience throughout their lives.

In general, tires should be replaced after six years regardless of tread wear. However, heat caused by hot climates or frequent high loading conditions can accelerate the aging process and may require tires to be replaced more frequently.

You should replace your spare tire when you replace the road tires or after six years due to aging even if it has not been used.

## USING SUMMER TIRES

The original equipment tires on your vehicle are designed to optimize its performance in dry or wet summer road conditions. They are not designed for winter use.

## USING WINTER TIRES



We recommend that you use winter or all-season tires carrying this symbol when the temperature is 7°C (45°F) or lower, or in snow and ice conditions.

Inflate the winter tires to the same tire pressures as those listed in the tire pressures table. See **Tire Pressure Specifications** (page 329).

## USING SNOW CHAINS



**WARNING:** Do not exceed 50 km/h (30 mph). Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not use snow chains on snow-free roads. Only fit snow chains to specified tires.

## Wheel and Tire Information

---



**WARNING:** If your vehicle is fitted with wheel trims, remove them before fitting snow chains.

Only use snow chains on the rear wheels.

Only use snow chains on the following specified tire sizes:

- 255/50 R 19.

**Note:** *Maintain correct tire pressures.*

**Note:** *The anti-lock brake system continues to correctly operate.*

**Note:** *We recommend that you switch the stability control system off. See **Switching Stability Control On and Off** (page 201). See **Switching Stability Control On and Off** (page 201).*

Do not use snow chains greater than 10 mm (0.4 in).

Do not use self-tensioning snow chains.



# Tire Care

## CHECKING THE TIRE PRESSURES

Safe operation of your vehicle requires that your tires are properly inflated. Every day before you drive, check your tires.

At least once a month and before long trips, inspect each tire and check the tire pressure with a tire gauge. Inflate all tires to the recommended inflation pressure. See **Inflating the Tires** (page 329).

## INFLATING THE TIRES



**WARNING:** Under-inflation is the most common cause of tire failures and may result in severe tire cracking, tread separation or blowout, with unexpected loss of vehicle control and increased risk of injury. Under-inflation increases sidewall flexing and rolling resistance, resulting in heat buildup and internal damage to the tire. It also may result in unnecessary tire stress, irregular wear, loss of vehicle control and accidents. A tire can lose up to half of its air pressure and not appear to be flat!



**WARNING:** Do not use the tire pressure displayed in the information display as a tire pressure gauge. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Use the recommended cold inflation pressure for optimum tire performance and wear. Under-inflation or over-inflation may cause uneven treadwear patterns.

Inflate your tires to the recommended inflation pressure even if it is less than the maximum inflation pressure information found on the tire. You can find the tire label with the recommended tire inflation pressure next to the tire size on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver door.

## TIRE PRESSURE SPECIFICATIONS

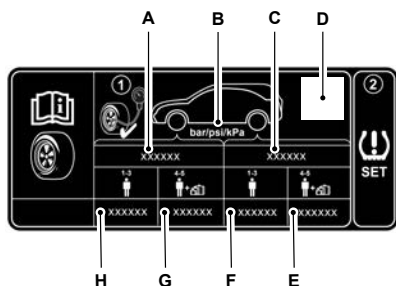


**WARNING:** Only use replacement tires and wheels that are the same size, as those originally provided for your vehicle. The required tire and wheel sizes, along with the minimum required Load and Speed Index, can be found on the Tire Label on the driver side door frame or the edge of the driver door. If this information is not found in those locations, or for additional options, contact your authorized dealer. Use of any tire or wheel not recommended, could affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

The recommended tire inflation pressures are on the tire information label on the driver side B-pillar.

Check all tire pressures when they are cold, at least once a month.

# Tire Care



- A Front tire size.
- B Measure unit.
- C Rear tire size.
- D Data matrix including part number.
- E Max load tire pressure rear.
- F Normal load tire pressure rear.
- G Max load tire pressure front.
- H Normal load tire pressure front.

| Tire size                                                | Normal load      |                  | Full load        |                  |
|----------------------------------------------------------|------------------|------------------|------------------|------------------|
|                                                          | Front            | Rear             | Front            | Rear             |
| 235/55 R19 105H XL Summer Tire (Front Axle) <sup>1</sup> | 2.6 bar (38 psi) | -                | 2.6 bar (38 psi) | -                |
| 255/50 R19 107H XL Summer Tire (Rear Axle) <sup>1</sup>  | -                | 2.6 bar (38 psi) | -                | 3 bar (44 psi)   |
| 235/55 R19 105H XL All Season (Front Axle) <sup>1</sup>  | 2.3 bar (33 psi) | -                | 2.6 bar (38 psi) | -                |
| 255/50 R19 107H XL All Season (Rear Axle) <sup>1</sup>   | -                | 2.3 bar (33 psi) | -                | 3 bar (44 psi)   |
| 235/50 R20 104H XL (Front Axle)                          | 2.4 bar (35 psi) | -                | 2.4 bar (35 psi) | -                |
| 255/45 R20 105H XL (Rear Axle)                           | -                | 2.1 bar (30 psi) | -                | 2.8 bar (41 psi) |
| 235/45 R21 101H XL (Front Axle)                          | 2.4 bar (35 psi) | -                | 2.4 bar (35 psi) | -                |
| 255/40 R21 102H XL (Rear Axle)                           | -                | 2.3 bar (33 psi) | -                | 2.8 bar (41 psi) |

<sup>1</sup> Only fit snow chains to specified tires.

# Tire Care

## INSPECTING THE TIRE FOR DAMAGE

Inspect the tire sidewalls for cracking, cuts, bruises and other signs of damage or excessive wear. If you suspect internal damage to the tire, have the tire dismounted and inspected.

Periodically inspect the tire treads and sidewalls for damage, such as bulges in the tread or sidewalls, cracks in the tread groove and separation in the tread or sidewall.



**WARNING:** Do not scrub the sidewalls of the tires when you are parking.

If you have to mount a curb, do so slowly and approach it with the wheels at right-angles to the curb.

If you feel a sudden vibration or ride disturbance while driving, or you suspect your tire or vehicle has been damaged, immediately reduce your speed.

Examine the tires regularly for uneven wear of the tread. Uneven wear could mean that the wheel alignment is outside specification.

If your vehicle seems to pull to one side when you are driving, the wheels could be out of alignment. Have an authorized dealer periodically check the wheel alignment.

## TIRE ROTATION



**WARNING:** If the tire label shows different tire pressures for the front and rear tires and the vehicle has a tire pressure monitoring system, then you need to update the settings for the system sensors. Always perform the system reset procedure after tire rotation. If you do not reset the system, it may not provide a low tire pressure warning when necessary.

Rotating your tires at the recommended interval helps your tires wear more evenly, providing better tire performance and longer tire life.

**Note:** *If your tires show any uneven wear have the alignment checked by an authorized dealer before rotating tires.*

**Note:** *If you have a dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly, it is intended for temporary use only and should not be used in a tire rotation.*

**Note:** *After having your tires rotated, inflation pressure must be checked and adjusted to the vehicle requirements.*

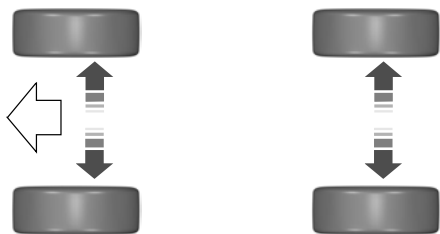
**Note:** *Front tires shown on the left side of the diagram.*

**Note:** *Directional tires have an arrow on the sidewall to indicate the correct direction of wheel rotation. Do not switch directional tires to the other side of your vehicle.*

**Vehicles equipped with different size tires on the front and rear axle**

## Tire Care

---



# Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit

## WHAT IS THE TIRE SEALANT AND INFLATOR KIT

The kit consists of an air compressor to re-inflate the tire and a canister of sealing compound that effectively seals most punctures. This kit provides a temporary tire repair allowing you to drive your vehicle up to 200 km (120 mi) at a maximum speed of 80 km/h (50 mph) to reach a tire service location.

**Note:** *The temporary mobility kit contains enough sealant compound in the canister for one tire repair only. See an authorized dealer for replacement sealant canisters.*

## TIRE SEALANT AND INFLATOR KIT PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Depending on the type and extent of tire damage, some tires can only be partially sealed or not sealed at all. Loss of tire pressure can affect vehicle handling, leading to loss of vehicle control.



**WARNING:** Do not use the kit on a previously damaged tire, for example when it has been driven under inflated. This could cause loss of vehicle control, personal injury or death.

Do not attempt to repair punctures larger than 6 mm (0.2 in) or damage to the tire's sidewall.

Only punctures located within the tire tread can be sealed with the kit.

Only use the kit supplied with your vehicle.

Only use the kit when the ambient temperature is between -30°C (-22°F) and 40°C (103.9°F).

The temporary mobility kit contains enough sealant compound in the canister for one tire repair only.

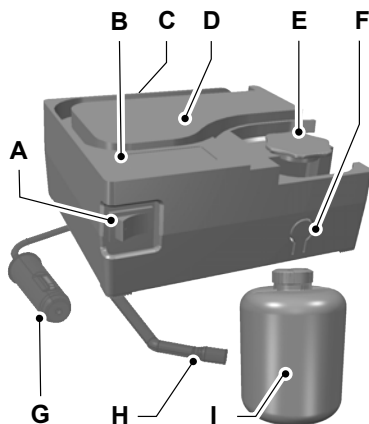
After using the sealant, an authorized dealer needs to replace the tire pressure monitoring system sensor and valve stem on the wheel.

## LOCATING THE TIRE SEALANT AND INFLATOR KIT

The compressor and the bottle are under the hood. See **Under Hood Overview** (page 304).

# Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit

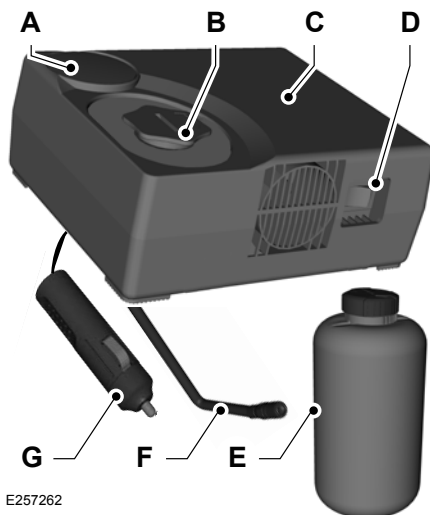
## TIRE SEALANT AND INFLATOR KIT COMPONENTS- VEHICLES BUILT FROM: 05/2026



- A Power Switch.
- B Pressure Gauge.
- C Warning Label.
- D Operating Instruction.
- E Sealant Bottle Access Cap.
- F Pressure Release Valve.
- G 12-volt DC Power Point Connector
- H Tire Inflation Pipe.
- I Sealant Bottle.

**Note:** Make sure you regularly check the expiry date on the sealant bottle.

## TIRE SEALANT AND INFLATOR KIT COMPONENTS- VEHICLES BUILT UP TO: 04/2026



E257262

- A Pressure Gauge.
- B Sealant bottle access cap.
- C Warning label.
- D Power switch.
- E Sealant bottle.
- F Tire inflation pipe.
- G 12 volt DC power point connector.

**Note:** Make sure you regularly check the expiry date on the sealant bottle.

# Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit

## USING THE TIRE SEALANT AND INFLATOR KIT - VEHICLES BUILT FROM: 05/2026



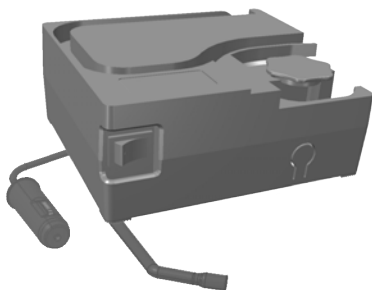
**WARNING:** Do not leave the kit unattended when it is in use. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



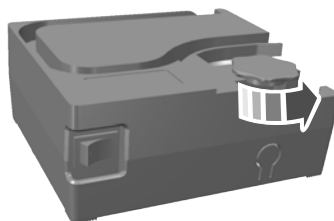
**WARNING:** Check the sidewall of the tire prior to inflation. If there are any cracks, bumps or similar damage, do not attempt to inflate the tire. This could cause personal injury.

1. Check for a punctured tire.

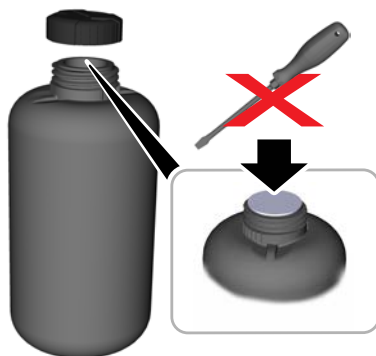
**Note:** Do not remove objects, for example nails or screws from a punctured tire.



2. To temporarily repair a punctured tire, release the tire inflation pipe and the 12-volt DC power point connector from the underside of the compressor.



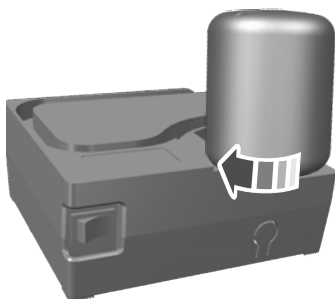
3. Turn the sealant bottle access cap counterclockwise and remove it.



E256963

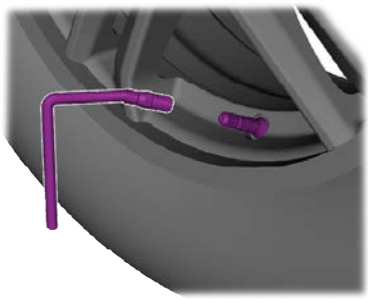
4. Remove the sealant bottle cap. Do not pierce or remove the seal.

## Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit



5. Attach the sealant bottle to the compressor. Turn the sealant bottle clockwise until you feel a strong resistance.

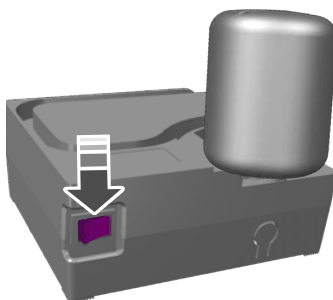
**Note:** Attaching the sealant bottle to the compressor pierces the seal. Do not loosen the bottle as sealant could escape.



6. Remove the tire valve dust cap and attach the tire inflation pipe.



7. Plug the 12-volt DC power point connector into the 12-volt DC socket. See **Power Outlet** (page 134).
8. Start the engine.



**WARNING:** Do not stand directly beside the tire while the compressor is operating. This could cause personal injury if the tire bursts.

9. Switch the compressor on.



# Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit



**WARNING:** Watch the sidewall of the tire when inflating. If any cracks, bumps or similar damage appears, switch the compressor off and let the air out by means of the pressure relief valve. Do not continue driving with this tire. This could cause loss of vehicle control.



**WARNING:** Do not keep the compressor operating for more than 10 minutes. This could cause the compressor to malfunction causing serious personal injury.

10. Inflate the tire to between 2–3 bar (29–44 psi) as shown on the Tire Label on the B pillar. See **Tire Pressure Specifications** (page 329).

**Note:** If the tire pressure does not reach 1.8 bar (26 psi) within 10 minutes, the tire could be damaged beyond a temporary repair. Have your vehicle immediately checked. Do not drive your vehicle.

11. When the tire reaches the recommended tire pressure of between 2–3 bar (29–44 psi), switch the compressor and your vehicle off. See **Tire Pressure Specifications** (page 329).
12. Disconnect the tire inflation pipe and the 12-volt DC power point connector.

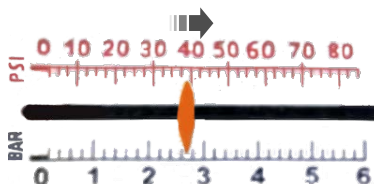
**Note:** Do not remove the sealant bottle from the compressor.

13. Reinstall the tire valve dust cap.

14. Place the warning label on the steering wheel and correctly stow the kit.



15. Immediately drive your vehicle for 3–10 km (2–6 mi). Do not exceed 80 km/h (50 mph).



16. After driving between 3–10 km (2–6 mi), stop your vehicle and recheck the tire pressure. See **Tire Pressure Specifications** (page 329).

**Note:** If the tire pressure has dropped to 1.8 bar (26.1 psi) or below, the tire could be damaged beyond a temporary repair. Have your vehicle immediately checked. Do not drive your vehicle.

**Note:** If the tire pressure has dropped but is still above 1.8 bar (26 psi), use the kit to inflate the tire again.

# Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit

## After Using the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit



**WARNING:** If you experience any unusual vibration, ride disturbance or noise while driving, reduce your speed until you can safely pull off to the side of the road and call for roadside assistance. Failure to do so could cause you to lose control of your vehicle and increase the risk of personal injury or death.

The kit only provides temporary mobility. Regulations concerning tire repair or replacement after using the kit could differ from country to country. We recommend you consult a tire specialist.

After using the kit:

- Do not drive your vehicle more than 200 km (124 mi) before repairing or replacing the punctured tire.
- Inform all other users of your vehicle that a tire was sealed using the kit. Make them aware of the special driving conditions that must be observed.
- Regularly check the tire pressure until the sealed tire is repaired or replaced by a tire specialist. Before the tire is removed from the rim, you must inform the tire specialist that the tire contains sealant.
- Take the kit to an authorized dealer to have the sealant bottle and the tire inflation pipe replaced.

## USING THE TIRE SEALANT AND INFLATOR KIT - VEHICLES BUILT UP TO: 04/2026



**WARNING:** The sealant contains natural rubber latex. Avoid contact with skin and clothing. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and consult a physician.



**WARNING:** Do not leave the kit unattended when it is in use. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Check the sidewall of the tire prior to inflation. If there are any cracks, bumps or similar damage, do not attempt to inflate the tire. This could cause personal injury.



**WARNING:** If the tire does not inflate to the recommended tire pressure within 15 minutes, stop and call roadside assistance.



**WARNING:** Do not stand directly beside the tire while the compressor is operating. This could cause personal injury if the tire bursts.

**Note:** The recommended tire pressures are on the tire label or safety certification label, located on the B-pillar, inside the driver's door. See **Tire Pressure Specifications** (page 329).

1. Check for a punctured tire.

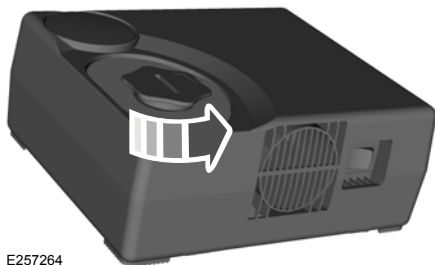
**Note:** Do not remove objects, for example nails or screws from a punctured tire.

## Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit



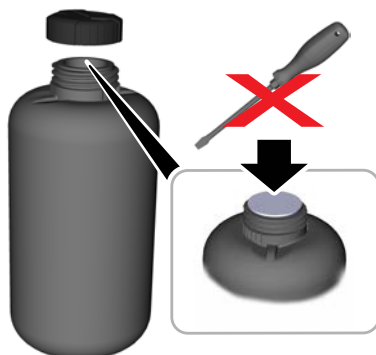
E257263

2. Release the tire inflation pipe and the 12 V DC power point connector from the underside of the compressor.



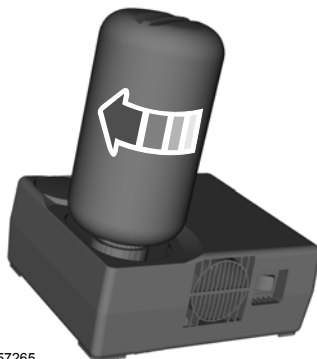
E257264

3. Turn the sealant bottle access cap counterclockwise and remove it.



E256963

4. Remove the sealant bottle cap. Do not pierce or remove the seal.

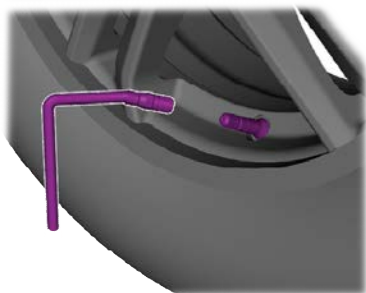


E257265

5. Attach the sealant bottle to the compressor. Turn the sealant bottle clockwise until you feel a strong resistance.

**Note:** Attaching the sealant bottle to the compressor pierces the seal. Do not loosen the bottle as sealant could escape.

## Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit

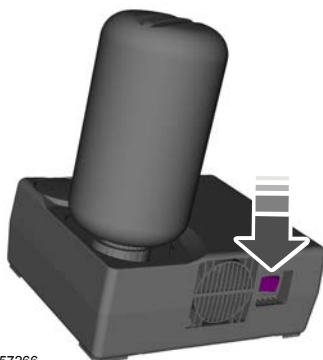


6. Remove the tire valve dust cap and attach the tire inflation pipe.



7. Plug the 12 V DC power point connector into the 12 V DC socket. See **Locating the Power Outlets** (page 134).

**Note:** Depending on location of the 12 V DC socket, it may be necessary to route the compressor cable through the passenger compartment to reach the affected tire.



E257266

8. Start your vehicle and switch the compressor on.
9. Inflate the tire to the recommended tire pressure shown on the Tire Label on the B pillar. See **Tire Pressure Specifications** (page 329). Do not operate the compressor for more than 15 minutes continuously. Switch the compressor and your vehicle off and check the current tire pressure with the pressure gauge.

**Note:** If the recommended tire pressure is not reached within 15 minutes, you may disconnect the compressor, slowly roll the vehicle forward by one car length to distribute the sealant within the tire, then restart the inflation process. If the recommended inflation pressure is still not reached, the tire could be damaged beyond a temporary repair. Stop and call roadside assistance.

## Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit



10. Remove the power plug from the 12 V DC power point connector.
11. Unscrew the pipe from the tire valve and put the protective cap back in place. Replace the valve cap on the tire valve.

**Note:** Some residual sealant fluid may drip or briefly spray out the pipe while you disconnect it. This is normal.

12. Do not remove the sealant bottle from the compressor. This avoids leakage of residual sealant.
13. Remove the warning label showing the maximum permissible speed 80 km/h (50 mph) from the side of the compressor and place it on top of the instrument panel or the center of the dash in the driver's field of view. Make sure the label does not obscure anything important.
14. Store the kit, the bottle lid and cap safely in your vehicle. You need the kit again when you check the tire pressure after driving the vehicle a short distance.

15. Promptly drive the vehicle cautiously for 6 km (4 mi) to distribute the sealant evenly inside the tire. Do not exceed 80 km/h (50 mph)

**Note:** If you experience any unusual vibration, ride disturbance or noise while driving, do not proceed to the second stage of this operation. Reduce your speed until you can safely pull off to the side of the road to call for roadside assistance.

16. After 6 km (4 mi) stop at a safe place and check the tire pressure using the kit. See **Tire Pressure Specifications** (page 329).
17. Remove the valve cap from the tire valve and firmly screw the air compressor pipe onto the valve stem by turning clockwise.
18. With the compressor off, the gauge of the kit displays the tire inflation pressure.

**Note:** If the tire pressure has dropped to 2 bar (29.0 psi) below the recommended tire pressure, the tire could be damaged beyond a temporary repair. Stop and call roadside assistance. Do not drive your vehicle.

# Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit



The kit only provides temporary mobility. Regulations concerning tire repair or replacement after using the kit could differ from country to country. We recommend you consult a tire specialist.

After using the kit:

- Do not drive your vehicle more than 200 km (120 mi) before repairing or replacing the punctured tire.
- Inform all other users of your vehicle that a tire was sealed using the kit. Make them aware of the special driving conditions that must be observed.
- Regularly check the tire pressure until the sealed tire is repaired or replaced by a tire specialist. See **Tire Pressure Specifications** (page 329). Before the tire is removed from the rim, you must inform the tire specialist that the tire contains sealant.
- Take the kit to an authorized dealer to have the sealant bottle and the tire inflation pipe replaced.

19. If necessary, turn on the compressor and adjust the tire to the recommended tire pressure. Check the tire pressure with the compressor turned off to get an accurate pressure reading. See **Tire Pressure Specifications** (page 329).
20. Unscrew the compressor pipe from the valve stem and reinstall the valve cap. Leave the sealant bottle attached to the compressor. Safely store the tire sealant and inflator kit in your vehicle.

## After Using the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit



**WARNING:** If you experience any unusual vibration, ride disturbance or noise while driving, reduce your speed until you can safely pull off to the side of the road and call for roadside assistance. Failure to do so could cause you to lose control of your vehicle and increase the risk of personal injury or death.

# Tire Pressure Monitoring System

## WHAT IS THE TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM



The tire monitoring system warns the driver when the tire pressures are too low, or if there is a system malfunction. The tire monitoring system uses indirect measurement. It monitors all four tires for tire pressure loss while driving. It uses data from the ABS sensors and various parameters to check the speed of rotation and the rolling circumference of the individual wheels.

## TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** The tire pressure monitoring system is not a substitute for manually checking tire pressures. You should periodically check tire pressures using a pressure gauge. Failure to correctly maintain tire pressures could increase the risk of tire failure, loss of control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.



**WARNING:** Under-inflation is the most common cause of tire failures and may result in severe tire cracking, tread separation or blowout, with unexpected loss of vehicle control and increased risk of injury. Under-inflation increases sidewall flexing and rolling resistance, resulting in heat buildup and internal damage to the tire. It also may result in unnecessary tire stress, irregular wear, loss of vehicle control and accidents. A tire can lose up to half of its air pressure and not appear to be flat!



**WARNING:** If you experience any unusual vibration, ride disturbance or noise while driving, reduce your speed until you can safely pull off to the side of the road and call for roadside assistance. Failure to do so could cause you to lose control of your vehicle and increase the risk of personal injury or death.

**Note:** *Note: If you adjust the pressure of all four tires to the recommended cold pressure located on the Tire Label on the driver B-pillar, you need to re-synchronize the tire monitoring system also.*

**Note:** *The tire monitoring system may only be re-synchronized if all the tires have been adjusted to the correct tire pressure.*

**Note:** *Only use recommended tires and wheels. Use of any other tire or wheel could affect the operation of the tire pressure monitoring system.*

## TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

The tire pressure loss indicator may react with a delay, illuminate or does not display anything at all:

- In the event of a sporty driving style.
- When you drive on snow-covered or icy roads or unpaved roads.
- When you drive with snow chains.
- When new tires are driven at high speeds for the first time, they can expand slightly and trigger a one-off pressure warning.
- The Tire Pressure Loss Indicator does not work if there is a fault in the ESC or ABS.
- The tire monitoring system cannot function correctly unless all cold tires have the correct tire pressure.

# Tire Pressure Monitoring System

- If the pressure in all tires is not appropriate to the vehicle load.
- When you use a spare wheel.

Inflate the tires, if needed, to the recommended pressures and carry out the reset procedure.

**Note:** *Driving on unpaved roads for long periods or a sporty driving style can temporarily deactivate the Tire Pressure Loss Indicator. In the event of a malfunction, the indicator lamp flashes for about 1 minute and then lights up continuously. However, the indicator lamp goes out when the road conditions or driving style change.*

## RESETTING TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM

You must reset the tire pressure monitoring system after each tire replacement, tire rotation or after inflating the tires to the correct tire pressure. This adjusts the reference pressure to the current tire pressure.

**Note:** *If you adjust the pressure of all four tires to the recommended cold pressure located on the Tire Label on the driver B pillar, you need to reset the tire monitoring system.*

**Note:** *To measure the cold tire pressure, the vehicle must have been stationary for 3 hours or driven only a few kilometers at a slow speed during this time.*

The tire pressure loss indicator may only be reset if all four tires have been filled at the correct tire pressure when measured on a cold tire.

After a warning about the tire pressure being too low, switch your vehicle off and then back on again. This is necessary before you can adapt the tire pressure loss indicator again.

1. Power your vehicle on.
2. Switch the center display on if necessary.

3.  Press this icon on the touchscreen.

4.  Press this icon.

5. Press **Exterior**.

6. Press **Tyres**.

7.  Press the button.

8. When all four tires are adjusted to the recommended tire pressures values, press **OK**.

9. After an extended driving time (at least 20 minutes) with driving at different speeds, the system automatically learns the new values and monitor them.

## TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM – TROUBLESHOOTING

### TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM – WARNING LAMPS



The low tire pressure warning lamp has combined functions, as it warns you when your tires need air, and when the system is no longer capable of functioning as intended.



# Tire Pressure Monitoring System

---

| Warning Lamp                                                                     | Possible Cause                                     | Action Required                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Solid warning lamp                                                               | One or more tires are significantly under inflated | Inflate the tires to the recommended tire pressure. See <b>Tire Pressure Specifications</b> (page 329). Check the tires for damage and repair them if necessary. Carry out the system reset procedure.                                                                                                  |
| The warning lamp flashes for about a minute and then remains yellow continuously | Tire pressure monitoring system malfunction        | There is a system fault. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Switch your vehicle off and then back on again. Carry out the system reset procedure. See <b>Resetting Tire Pressure Monitoring System</b> (page 344). If the fault persists, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |

# Tire Pressure Monitoring System

## TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM – INFORMATION MESSAGES

| Message                      | Action                                                                                                                                             |
|------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Loss of pressure detected.   | Inflate the tires to the recommended tire pressure. Check the tires for damage and repair them if necessary. Carry out the system reset procedure. |
| Error: Tyre Pressure Monitor | The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.                                              |

# Changing a Road Wheel

## CHANGING A FLAT TIRE

If you get a flat tire while driving, do not apply the brake heavily. Instead, gradually decrease your speed, firmly hold the steering wheel and slowly move to a safe place on the side of the road.

Your vehicle does not include a spare wheel and tire, or a vehicle jack, it has a Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit.

**Note:** Only use tire sealants in roadside emergencies. If you must use a sealant, use the tire sealant and inflator kit included with your vehicle.

Have the flat serviced by as soon as possible to prevent damage to the tire. See

**What Is the Tire Pressure Monitoring System** (page 343).

**Note:** The tire pressure monitoring system indicator illuminates when the spare tire is in use. To restore the full function of the tire pressure monitoring system, recheck the pressures and restore the value in the Tire Pressure Monitoring System. See **Resetting Tire Pressure Monitoring System** (page 344).

## Jacking Positions



**WARNING:** Failure to follow these guidelines could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, injury or death.



**WARNING:** To help prevent your vehicle from moving when changing a wheel, apply the parking brake and use an appropriate block or wheel chock to secure the wheel diagonally opposite to the wheel being changed. For example, when changing the front left wheel, place an appropriate block or wheel chock on the right rear wheel.



**WARNING:** Using the high voltage battery box as a jacking point could result in electric shock, personal injury, fire or death.



**WARNING:** Never place anything between the vehicle jack and your vehicle.



**WARNING:** Never place anything between the vehicle jack and the ground.



**WARNING:** Do not attempt to change a tire on the side of the vehicle close to moving traffic. Pull far enough off the road to not obstruct the flow of traffic and avoid the danger of being hit when operating the jack or changing the wheel.



**WARNING:** Do not get under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.



**WARNING:** Only use the specified jacking points. If you use any other locations you could damage vehicle components, such as brake lines.



**WARNING:** Make sure there is no grease or oil on the threads or the surface between the wheel hub and the wheel bolts. This can cause the wheel bolts to loosen while driving.

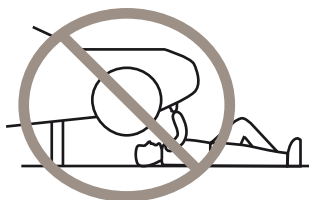


**WARNING:** It is recommended that the wheels of the vehicle be chocked, and that no person should remain in a vehicle that is being jacked.

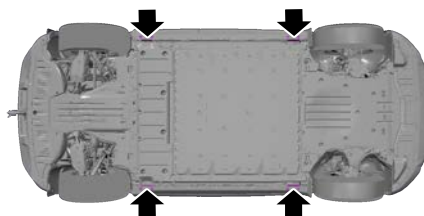


**WARNING:** Apply the parking brake, switch the vehicle off and remove the key before you leave your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

# Changing a Road Wheel



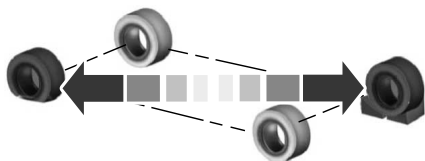
1. Park on a firm and level surface and activate the hazard flashers.
2. Apply the parking brake. See **Applying the Electric Parking Brake** (page 192).
3. Power off the vehicle.



5. Jack at the specified locations to avoid damage to the vehicle.

**Note:** Small arrow-shaped marks on the vehicle sills show the location of the jacking points.

**Note:** Do not lift the vehicle on the strike strip or beyond the strike strips. These are the lowest point beyond the vehicle sills.



4. Block the wheel diagonally opposite the flat tire. For example, if the left front tire is flat, block the right rear wheel.

## WHEEL BOLTS



**WARNING:** Only use the specific wheel bolts and wheels provided as original equipment with your vehicle. If in doubt, contact an authorized dealer.



**WARNING:** When you install a wheel, always remove any corrosion, dirt or foreign materials present on the mounting surfaces of the wheel or the surface of the wheel hub, brake drum or brake disc that contacts the wheel. Make sure to secure any fasteners that attach the rotor to the hub so they do not interfere with the mounting surfaces of the wheel. Installing wheels without

# Changing a Road Wheel

correct metal-to-metal contact at the wheel mounting surfaces can cause the wheel bolts to loosen and the wheel to

come off while your vehicle is in motion, resulting in loss of vehicle control, personal injury or death.

| Bolt Size | Nm ( lb.ft) <sup>1</sup> |
|-----------|--------------------------|
| M14 x 1.5 | 120 Nm (89 lb.ft)        |

<sup>1</sup> Torque specifications are for bolts and hub threads free of dirt and rust. Use only our recommended replacement fasteners.

Retighten the wheel bolts to the specified torque within 160 km (100 mi) after any wheel disturbance, such as tire rotation, changing a flat tire or wheel removal.

You can obtain a replacement locking wheel bolt key and replacement locking wheel bolts from an authorized dealer using the reference number certificate.



A Wheel pilot bore.

Inspect the wheel pilot bore and mounting surface prior to installation. Remove any visible corrosion or loose particles.



To remove the bolt caps, slide the remover onto the bolt cap. Make sure it clips on both sides of the bolt cap. Pull the remover tool outward.



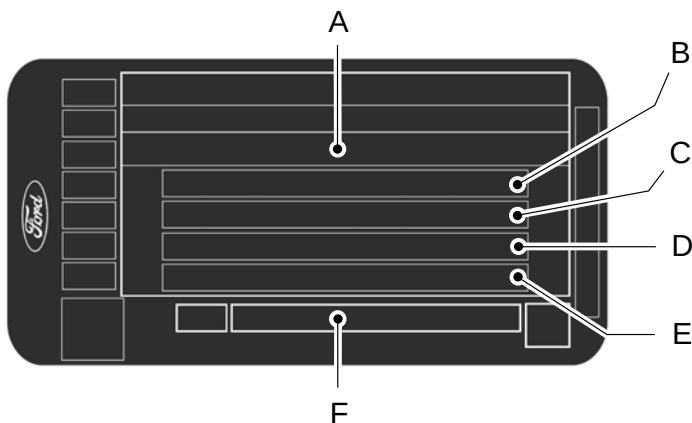
# Vehicle Identification

## VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION PLATE

## LOCATING THE VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION PLATE

The vehicle identification plate is within the right-hand door aperture.

## VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION PLATE OVERVIEW



- A Vehicle identification number.
- B Gross vehicle weight.
- C Gross train weight.
- D Maximum front axle weight.
- E Maximum rear axle weight.
- F Model/variant/version.

**Note:** The vehicle identification plate may vary to that shown.

**Note:** Information on the vehicle identification plate is dependent upon market requirements.

# Connected Vehicle

## WHAT IS A CONNECTED VEHICLE

A connected vehicle has technology that allows your vehicle to connect to a mobile network and for you to access a range of features. When used in conjunction with the Ford app, it could allow you to monitor and control your vehicle further, for example checking the tire pressures and the vehicle location. For additional information, refer to the local Ford website.

## CONNECTED VEHICLE REQUIREMENTS

Connected service and related feature functionality requires a compatible vehicle network.

Some remote features require additional service activation. Log in to your Ford account for details. Some restrictions, third party terms and message or data rates may apply.

## CONNECTED VEHICLE LIMITATIONS

Evolving technology, cellular networks, or regulations could affect functionality and availability, or continued provision of some features. These changes could even stop some features from functioning.

## CONNECTING THE VEHICLE TO A MOBILE NETWORK

### WHAT IS THE MODEM



The modem allows access to a range of features built into your vehicle. Locate and click on the icon on the top of the screen to activate your modem.

### ENABLING AND DISABLING THE MODEM

You can adjust the settings on the touchscreen.

1.  Press this icon.
2.  Press this icon.
3. Switch **Vehicle Connectivity & Share Data** on or off.

## CONNECTING THE FORD APP TO THE MODEM

1. Make sure that the modem is enabled using the vehicle connectivity app.
2. Open the Ford app on your device and log in.
3. Start the activate Ford process in the vehicle by clicking the button in the vehicle screen in the User app. Select my Profile in the tab below and start connecting to the Ford app.
4. Follow the guided steps in the vehicle.
5. Add your vehicle to the smartphone app by scanning the VIN (Vehicle Identification Number) or typing it in. You might also directly select your vehicle if it is already added.



## Connected Vehicle

6. Click activate your vehicle in the Ford app.
7. Make sure your account name in Ford matches the name shown on your vehicle's screen.
8. Wait for the confirmation that your Ford account is connected to your vehicle.

### CONNECTING THE VEHICLE TO A WI-FI NETWORK

You can adjust the settings on the touchscreen.

1.  Press this icon.
2.  Press this icon.
3.  Press this icon.
4. Press **Wi-Fi**.
5. Press **Wi-Fi Networks:**.
6. Switch **Search for Wi-Fi** on.
7. Select an available Wi-Fi network.

**Note:** Enter the network password to connect to a secure network.

### CONNECTED VEHICLE – TROUBLESHOOTING

#### CONNECTED VEHICLE – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

##### Why is my Ford app not connecting to my vehicle?

- The modem is not enabled. Switch vehicle connectivity on.
- The network signal is weak. Move your vehicle closer to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.

##### Why can I not connect to a Wi-Fi network?

- You entered the wrong network password. Enter the correct password.
- The network signal is weak. Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi router or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.
- There are multiple access points in range with the same network name. Choose a unique name for your network. Do not use the default name unless it contains a unique identifier, for example as part of the MAC address.

##### Why does the Wi-Fi connection disconnect after successful connection?

- The network signal is weak. Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi router or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.

# Connected Vehicle

---

## **What can I do if I am close to a Wi-Fi router but the network signal strength is weak?**

- If your vehicle has metallic tinting on the windows but not on the windshield, position your vehicle so that the windshield is facing the Wi-Fi router or open the windows that are facing the router.
- If your vehicle has metallic tinting on the windows and the windshield, open the windows that are facing the router.
- If your vehicle is in a garage and you have the garage door closed, open the garage door as it could block the signal.

## **Why can I not see a network I expect to see in the list of available networks?**

- The network is hidden. Make the network visible and try again, or manually add a network in the Wi-Fi settings menu.
- Some network security types are not supported, for example WEP.

## **Why do software downloads take too long?**

- The network signal is weak. Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi router or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.
- Wi-Fi network is in high demand or has a slow Internet connection. Use a more reliable Wi-Fi network.

## **Why does the software not update when the system seems to connect to a Wi-Fi network and the signal strength is excellent?**

- No software update is available at this time.
- Select automatic updates option in the settings menu to enable automatic software update or contact an authorized dealer.
- There could be a connection problem. Test the network using another device.

# Audio System

## AUDIO SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Listening to loud audio for long periods of time could damage your hearing.



You can also control the this vehicle feature with voice interaction. See **Voice Interaction Examples** (page 363).

## IDENTIFYING THE AUDIO UNIT



## SWITCHING THE AUDIO UNIT ON AND OFF



Press and hold the button on the instrument panel for a few seconds to switch the display on or off.

Press the button on the instrument panel to mute or unmute the audio.

## SELECTING THE AUDIO SOURCE

1.



Press this icon.

2.



Press this icon.

# Audio System

## Selecting the Radio



Press the button to select radio mode and display the list of available radio stations.

## Selecting Media



Press the button to select media mode and display the available media sources.

## Player



Select the player to display the currently used source and related options.

When a radio station is on, you can select the following options:

- Mute.
- Seek station.

When media mode is on, you can select the following options:

- Adding favorites.
- Moving between the tracks.
- Play/pause.
- Repeat.
- Shuffle.
- Scan stations.

## PLAYING OR PAUSING THE AUDIO SOURCE



Press to start or resume playback.



Press to pause playback.

**Note:** Not all sources can be paused. Mute function is available for sources that cannot be paused.

## ADJUSTING THE VOLUME

You can adjust the volume with volume buttons on the steering wheel.



Press to increase volume.



Press to decrease volume.

If you press and hold the buttons, the volume continuously increases or decreases.

You can also swipe between the buttons to increase or decrease the volume.

You can also adjust the audio system volume with the touch slider on the instrument panel:

- Press the right side of the touch slider to increase the volume, or the left side to decrease the volume.
- Press and hold your finger on the right side of the slider to continuously increase the volume, or on the left side to continuously decrease the volume.
- Slide your finger to the right on the touch slider to increase the volume, or to the left to decrease the volume.



## SWITCHING SHUFFLE MODE ON AND OFF



Press the button on the touchscreen to switch shuffle mode on or off.

**Note:** Not all sources have shuffle mode.

# Audio System

## SWITCHING REPEAT MODE ON AND OFF



Press the button on the touchscreen to switch repeat mode on or off.

**Note:** Not all sources have repeat mode.

## ADDING FAVORITES

### Adding radio station to favorites

1. Select a radio station.

2.



Press the favorites button.

3.



Press the add favorites button.

4.



Press this button to edit favorites.

**Note:** You can add six stations to your favorite list.

### Adding media to favorites

1. Select a media file.

2.



Press the favorites button.

3.



Press the add favorites button.

4. Select tracks, albums, artists or genres.

**Note:** Some options may not be available in certain media files.

5.



Press this button to edit favorites.

**Note:** You can add six media objects to your favorite list.

## MUTING THE AUDIO



Press to mute the audio. Press again to unmute the audio.



When displayed press to mute the audio.



When displayed press to unmute the audio.

## SCROLLING THROUGH MENU ITEMS

Use the touchscreen to scroll through menu items.

## SELECTING A MENU ITEM

Use the touchscreen to select a menu item.

## SETTING THE CLOCK AND DATE

1. Press the clock on the touchscreen.
2. Set the clock time to manual.
3. Select the time zone.
4. Select the time format.

**Note:** The AM and PM options are not available if 24-hour mode is on.

5. Set the time.

### Setting The Date

1. Press the clock on the touchscreen.
2. Set the clock time to manual.
3. Set the date.
4. Select the date format.

# Audio System

## Switching Automatic Time Updates On and Off

1. Press the clock on the touchscreen.
2. Set the clock time to manual.
3. Switch Auto Time Update on or off.
4. Select the time format.
5. Select the date format.

## RADIO

### What is Digital Audio Broadcasting Radio

Digital Audio Broadcasting (DAB) is a digital radio standard for broadcasting digital audio radio services. Your radio allows you to listen to DAB radio stations.

### Digital Audio Broadcasting Radio Limitations

Coverage differs from region to region and influences the quality of reception. It is broadcast nationwide, regionally and locally. Coverage may depend on weather conditions and terrain.

**Note:** *This could cause the audio to dropout.*

### FM Radio Limitations

The further you travel from an FM station, the weaker the signal and the reception are. Hills, mountains, tall buildings, bridges, tunnels, freeway overpasses, parking garages, dense tree foliage and thunderstorms can interfere with the reception. When you pass a ground-based broadcast repeating tower, a stronger signal may overtake a weaker one and result in the audio system muting.

### Selecting a Radio Station



Press to switch to the next radio station.



Press to switch to the previous radio station.

### Selecting a Station from the List

1. Press the audio panel on the touchscreen.

2.



Press to select radio mode and to display the available radio stations.

3. Select the desired station.

### SWITCHING THE DISPLAY ON AND OFF



Press and hold the button on the instrument panel for a few seconds to switch the display on or off.

# Movable Screen

## USING THE MOVABLE SCREEN



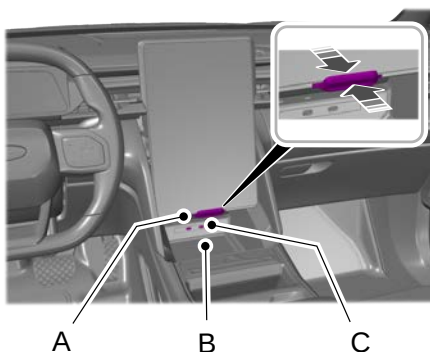
**WARNING:** Adjusting the screen while driving may cause the driver to become distracted. This can lead to accidents and serious injuries.



**WARNING:** When sliding the screen up or down, take care not to get your fingers or hands caught in the mechanism. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Do not place a valid key in the storage area.

### Adjusting the Screen



- A Handle
- B Storage area
- C USB ports

1. Hold the handle from both sides with your fingers, and wait one second for the screen to unlock.

**Note:** *There is an audible click when the lock disengages.*

2. Move the screen up or down to the desired angle and release the handle. The screen locks into position.

**Note:** *The screen stays in this position until you adjust it again.*

**Note:** *Do not place any objects on top of the screen or block its movement.*

## MOVABLE SCREEN VIDEOS

Animations are shown to enhance the written content and not intended to replace it. We recommend that you read the Owner's Manual for full details.

[Explorer Using the Movable Screen Video Link](#)

For more information scan here:



# Center Display Overview

## CENTER DISPLAY PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

## CENTER DISPLAY LIMITATIONS

### Speed-restricted Features

For your safety, features that are not critical while driving are not available when the vehicle is moving at or above 5 km/h (3 mph).

## STATUS BAR

The status bar is at the top of the touchscreen. The following icons may appear on the status bar.

### Mobile Apps



Press to return to Android Auto.



Press to return to Apple CarPlay.

## Notification Center



Press to view notifications.

## Privacy



Vehicle data unavailable or disabled.



Vehicle data sharing on.



Vehicle location sharing on.



Vehicle data and vehicle location sharing on.

## Vehicle Signal



Network signal strength.



Network signal roaming.

## Wireless Accessory Charger



Wireless accessory charger active.

## HOME SCREEN

Applications, such as navigation, audio and phone are located in the main portion of the display.



Press the icon to access the home screen.

**Note:** You can customize which applications display on the main screen.

Press any of the tiles to access that feature. Swipe to see more application tiles.



# Center Display Overview

---

## Adjusting the Home Screen

1. Press and hold any tile on the home screen until the adjustment screen opens.
2. Press a tile to select for change.
3. Press an application from the list to replace the selected tile.
4. Follow the prompts on the screen to adjust the home screen.

## Creating a new page

1. Press and hold any tile on the home screen until the adjustment screen opens.
2.  Press this icon to create a new page.
3. Follow the prompts on the screen to adjust the home screen.

## LOCKING AND UNLOCKING THE CENTER DISPLAY



Press and hold the button for a few seconds on the center console to lock or unlock the center display.

**Note:** You may press this icon on the touchscreen to switch the climate bar on and off.

## REBOOTING THE CENTER DISPLAY

If the center display system freezes, the system automatically restarts. If the restart does not resolve the issue, you may manually restart the center display.



Press and hold the button for 20 seconds on the center console to reboot the center display.

# Voice Interaction

## WHAT IS VOICE INTERACTION

Voice Interaction allows you to control vehicle features using conversational requests.

Ford Assistant learns your behavior and routines to offer smart suggestions.

This feature works best if you connect your vehicle to your Ford app account and turn on all privacy settings. See **Connecting the Ford App to the Modern** (page 352).

### Switching Voice Interaction On and Off

1.  Press this icon on the touchscreen.
  2.  Press this icon.
  3. Press Features.
  4. Follow the prompts on the screen to set your preferred settings.
-  Press the button next to a menu option for more information.

### Proactive Behaviour

Ford Assistant makes proactive suggestions and gives tips for you based on your habits. These suggestions appear after the system learned your day to day behavior.

### Switching Proactive Behaviour On and Off

1.  Press this icon on the touchscreen.
2.  Press this icon.

3. Press Proactive behaviour.
4. Follow the prompts on the screen to set your preferred settings.

## BEGINNING A VOICE INTERACTION

Say the wake word followed by your command.



You can also press the button on the steering wheel to begin a voice interaction.

**Note:** *If the wake word is not enabled, you can only use the voice interaction button.*

### Using Ford Assistant Without The Wake Word

To use Ford Assistant without saying the wake word, all of the following must occur:

- You are the only person in the vehicle.
- You are sitting in the driver's seat.
- The simply start talking function is turned on.



Press the button next to a menu option for more information.

**Note:** *Support and functionality may vary based on your country.*

### Listen For Longer

With the Listen for longer function, the Ford Assistant remains active and continues to listen for a short period after carrying out the last voice command. During this period, you can issue another voice command or continue the previous dialogue without having to activate Ford Assistant again.

Ford Assistant does not listen for longer when any of the following occurs:

# Voice Interaction

- No audible input is detected.
- The conversation is not directed at Ford Assistant.

## Switching Listen For Longer On and Off

1.  Press this icon on the touchscreen.
  2.  Press this icon.
  3. Press General.
  4. Follow the prompts on the screen to set your preferred settings.
-  Press the button next to a menu option for more information.

## CANCELING A VOICE INTERACTION

-  Press the button on the steering wheel to cancel an active voice interaction.

**Note:** You may also say *cancel* during an active voice interaction to stop Ford Assistant from listening.

The voice interaction automatically turns off if:

- You activate the parking system.
- You receive a phone call.
- A navigation system audible warning sounds.
- You press the touchscreen anywhere.

## VOICE INTERACTION EXAMPLES

1.  Press this icon on the touchscreen.
2.  Press this icon.
3. Press Help.
4. Press a menu option on the list for relevant examples.

## VOICE INTERACTION SETTINGS

1.  Press this icon on the touchscreen.
2.  Press this icon.
3. Follow the prompts on the screen to set your preferred settings.

## PHONE PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

## CONNECTING YOUR PHONE

1. Make sure **Bluetooth®** is enabled on your device.

2.  Press this icon on the touchscreen.

3.  Press this icon.

4.  Press this icon.

5. Press Connect phone.

6. Add a new device.

7. Select your device.

**Note:** A number appears on your cell phone and on the touchscreen.

8. Confirm the number on the cell phone matches the number on the touchscreen.
9. Download the phonebook from your cell phone when you are prompted.

**Note:** If you pair more than one cell phone, use the phone settings on the touchscreen to specify the primary phone. You can change this setting any time.

## PHONE MENU

This menu becomes available after pairing a phone.



You can also control this vehicle feature with voice interaction. See **Voice Interaction**

**Examples** (page 363).

## Contacts

Display a smart search form to look up your contacts. Use the All button to alphabetically sort all of your contacts. Use the Favourites button to display the list of your favorite contacts that are set up on your phone.

## Calls

Display and select an entry from a list of previous calls.

## Dial

Directly dial a number.

## Messages

Display the list of emails, text messages to read, listen to, or respond to.

**Note:** Press the top dropdown menu to select your preferred setting.

## Voice assistant

Press and hold the button, and say a command to use the Google or Siri voice assistant available on your connected device to access supported features.

**Note:** Some features under the phone menu may not be available if the feature is not supported through the phone.

# Phone

## MAKING AND RECEIVING A PHONE CALL



You can also control this vehicle feature with voice interaction.

See **Voice Interaction**

**Examples** (page 363).

### Making Calls

**To call a number in your contacts, select:**

| Menu Item | Details                                                                                   |
|-----------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Contacts  | You can then select the name of the contact you want to call. The system begins the call. |

**To call a number from your favorites, select:**

| Menu Item  | Details                                                                         |
|------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Favourites | You can then select an entry that you want to call. The system begins the call. |

**To call a number from your recent calls, select:**

| Menu Item | Details                                                                         |
|-----------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Calls     | You can then select an entry that you want to call. The system begins the call. |

**To call a number that is not stored in your phone, select:**

| Menu Item | Details                                           |
|-----------|---------------------------------------------------|
| Dial      | Select the digits of the number you want to call. |

Pressing the backspace button deletes the last digit you typed.



Press this icon to delete all the digits you typed.

### Receiving Calls

During an incoming call, an audible tone sounds. Caller information appears on the display if it is available.



Press this icon to accept the call.



Press this icon to mute the ringtone.



Press this icon and follow the prompts to reject the call.

Ignore the call by doing nothing. The system logs it as a missed call.

### During a Phone Call

During a phone call, the name of the contacts or phone number display on the screen along with the call duration.

The phone status items are also visible:

- Signal Strength.
- Battery.

You can select any of the following during an active phone call:



Press this icon to access the phone keypad.



You can switch the microphone off so the caller does not hear you.



Press this icon to hold the current call.



Transfer the phone call audio to the cell phone or back to the touchscreen.

# Phone



Access your contacts during the current call.



Immediately end a phone call.

## SWITCHING TEXT MESSAGE NOTIFICATION ON AND OFF

### IOS

1. Go to the settings menu on your cell phone.
2. Select **Bluetooth®**.
3. Select the information icon to the right of your vehicle.
4. Switch text message notification on or off.

### Android

1. Go to the settings menu on your cell phone.
2. Select **Bluetooth®**.
3. Select the profiles option.
4. Select the phone profile.
5. Switch text message notification on or off.

## SWITCHING APPLE CARPLAY ON AND OFF



You can also control this vehicle feature with voice interaction. See **Voice Interaction**

**Examples** (page 363).

### Enabling Apple CarPlay with USB

1. Connect your device to a USB port.
2. Follow the instructions on your device and the touchscreen.

**Note:** Selecting "Enable Wireless CarPlay" on your device will prepare the device for wireless carplay when you re-enter the vehicle.

### Enabling Wireless Apple CarPlay

1. Pair your device to **Bluetooth®**.
2. Follow the instructions on your device and the touchscreen.

### Switching Apple CarPlay On and Off

1.



Press this icon on the touchscreen.

2.



Press this icon.

3.



Press this icon.

4.



Press this icon to switch Apple CarPlay on or off.

5.



You may also press this icon to switch to handsfree mode.

## SWITCHING ANDROID AUTO™ ON AND OFF



You can also control this vehicle feature with voice interaction. See **Voice Interaction**

**Examples** (page 363).

### Enabling Android Auto with USB

1. Connect your device to a USB port.
2. Follow the instructions on your device and the touchscreen.

**Note:** Certain features of the system are not available when you are using Android Auto.

## Enabling Wireless Android Auto

1. Pair your device to **Bluetooth®**.
2. Follow the instructions on your device and the touchscreen.

**Note:** Certain Android Devices do not support Android Auto Wireless. Please check your Android OS version for compatibility.

## Switching Android Auto On and Off

1.  Press this icon on the touchscreen.
  2.  Press this icon.
  3.  Press this icon.
  4. Press Device Manager.
  5.  Press this icon to switch Android Auto on or off.
-  You may also press this icon to switch to handsfree mode.

## CONNECTING A BLUETOOTH® DEVICE

1. Make sure **Bluetooth®** is enabled on your device.

2.  Press this icon on the touchscreen.

3.  Press this icon.

4.  Press this icon.

5. Press **Select mobile telephone**.

6. Select your device.

**Note:** A number appears on your cell phone and on the touchscreen.

7. Confirm the number on the cell phone matches the number on the touchscreen.

The **Bluetooth®** word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by **Bluetooth SIG, Inc.** and any use of such marks by Ford Motor Company is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

## PLAYING MEDIA USING BLUETOOTH®



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any

hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

1. Connect your device.

2.  Press this icon on the touchscreen.

3.  Press this icon.

4. Press **Media**.

5. Select a Bluetooth device as a media source from the top dropdown menu.



Press to start or resume playback.



Press to pause playback.



Press to skip to the next track.

Press and hold to fast forward through the track.



Press once to return to the beginning of a track. Repeatedly press to return to previous

tracks.

Press and hold to fast rewind through the track.



## APP REQUIREMENTS

When you start an app through the system for the first time, you could be asked to grant certain permissions. You can review and change the permissions that you have granted at any time when your vehicle is not moving. We recommend that you check your data plan before using your apps through the system. Using them could result in additional charges. We also recommend that you check the app provider's terms and conditions and privacy policy before using their app. Make sure that you have an active account for apps that you want to use through the system. Some apps will work with no setup. Others require you to configure some personal settings before you can use them.

# Personal Profiles

## HOW DO PERSONAL PROFILES WORK

### AUTHORIZED USER

You can set only one authorized user to your vehicle. The authorized user has access to the vehicle and vehicle services, and is able to save personalized settings in the personal profile. The authorized user can also manage vehicle services.

**Note:** *The authorized user can give multiple users access to the vehicle in the FordPass app.*

### GUEST USER

The guest user has access to the vehicle and limited access to vehicle services, and cannot save personalized settings in the personal profile.

**Note:** *The guest user cannot manage vehicle services.*

## SELECTING A PERSONAL PROFILE

1.  Press this icon on the touchscreen.
2.  Press this icon.
3. Follow the prompts on the screen to select a user.

## DELETING A PERSONAL PROFILE

**Note:** *Deleting an authorized user restores your vehicle to factory settings.*

1.  Press this icon on the touchscreen.
2.  Press this icon.
3. Press and hold on a personal profile.
4.  Press this icon.
5. Follow the prompts on the screen to delete a personal profile.

# Navigation

Navigation provides enhanced functionality with up-to-date traffic information and content.

This feature works best if you connect your vehicle to your FordPass account and turn on all privacy settings. See **Connecting the Ford App to the Modem** (page 352).

## Switching Privacy Settings On and Off

1.  Press this icon on the touchscreen.
  2.  Press this icon.
  3. Switch Vehicle Connectivity & Share Data on or off.
-  Press the button next to a menu option for more information.

## ACCESSING NAVIGATION

1.  Press this icon on the touchscreen.
2.  Press this icon.

**Note:** As the driver, be aware of all local traffic regulations, road attributes, and operate your vehicle in a safe and legal manner.

 You can also control this vehicle feature with voice interaction. See **Voice Interaction Examples** (page 363).

## NAVIGATION MAP UPDATES

Map data about the area you frequently travel in updates in the background while your vehicle is switched on, is connected, and vehicle data sharing is turned on.

If you have not Connected Navigation, you may download Map Updates from the local Ford website. Follow the instructions on the website and copy the files onto a USB data storage. Insert the USB data storage into a USB port in your vehicle.

1.  Press this icon.
2.  Press this icon.
3. Press Database and Disclaimer.
4. Press Start Map Update.

**Note:** The update can last up to one hour. During this time the Navigation cannot be used. Please ensure vehicle is switched on and the update is not interrupted.

**Note:** You can check the map data version of your vehicle in the navigation settings menu to avoid unnecessary updates or downgrading the map data.

**Note:** If you find map data errors, you may report them by going to [www.here.com/mapcreator](http://www.here.com/mapcreator).

## ADJUSTING THE MAP

### ZOOMING THE MAP IN AND OUT

You can use pinch gestures to zoom in and out. Place two fingers on the touchscreen and move them apart to zoom in. (You may also press the map twice within a few seconds to zoom in the map.) Place two fingers on the touchscreen and bring them together to zoom out.

# Navigation

## CHANGING THE FORMAT OF THE MAP

Press the map format button on the side of the map screen to toggle between the available formats.

**Note:** Available formats are 2D, 3D and North Up.

**Note:** We recommend using 3D format as it provides the best navigation experience.



You can also control this vehicle feature with voice interaction. See **Voice Interaction**

**Examples** (page 363).

## SETTING A DESTINATION

### SETTING A DESTINATION USING THE TEXT ENTRY SCREEN

1.  Press this icon on the touchscreen.
2.  Press this icon.
3.  Press this icon.
4. Press the search bar at the top of the screen.
5. Enter your destination by using the keyboard.
6. Select a destination from the list.
7. Follow the prompts on the screen to begin navigation.



You may also press this icon when viewing location details to save the location as favorite.



Press the button next to each result for more details on the location.



You can also control this vehicle feature with voice interaction. See **Voice Interaction**

**Examples** (page 363).

### SETTING A DESTINATION USING THE MAP SCREEN

1.  Press this icon on the touchscreen.
2.  Press this icon.
3. Press on the map to place a pin at a location.
4. Follow the prompts on the screen to begin navigation.



Press the button next to each result for more details on the location.



You can also control this vehicle feature with voice interaction. See **Voice Interaction**

**Examples** (page 363).

### SETTING A DESTINATION USING A PREDICTIVE DESTINATION

1.  Press this icon on the touchscreen.
2.  Press this icon.
3.  Press this icon.

# Navigation

4. Select and enable the Learn Usage Pattern option.

Predictive Navigation recognizes repeated route pattern on below data

- Start at a specific place (e.g. Home, Work)
- At a specific day and daytime (e.g. Monday at 8:30 AM)
- Somewhere you stopped before

When a regular route is recognized, a prediction is available as a pop-up or in the search list.

**Note:** Up to three predictions are shown in search list with a light bulb icon.

**Note:** Prediction with the highest score will also be shown as a pop up on the map with the ETA, remaining travel time and SOC (if available)

## SETTING A DESTINATION USING A RECENT DESTINATION

1.  Press this icon on the touchscreen.
2.  Press this icon.
3.  Press this icon.
4. Recent destinations are shown on the list.
5.  Press this icon.

-  Press the button next to each result for more details on the location.

## Deleting a Recent Destination

1.  Press this icon on the touchscreen.
2.  Press this icon.
3.  Press this icon.
4. Swipe with your finger on the item you want to delete.

## SETTING A DESTINATION USING A SAVED DESTINATION

1.  Press this icon on the touchscreen.
  2.  Press this icon.
  3.  Press this icon.
  4.  Press this icon.
-  You can also control this vehicle feature with voice interaction. See **Voice Interaction** Examples (page 363).

## Deleting a Saved Destination

1.  Press this icon on the touchscreen.
2.  Press this icon.

# Navigation

3.  Press this icon.
4.  Press this icon.
5. Swipe with your finger on the item you want to delete.

## SETTING A DESTINATION USING A POINT OF INTEREST

1.  Press this icon on the touchscreen.
  2.  Press this icon.
  3. Press on a point of interest icon on the map.
- Note:** Information about the location of the point of interest appears on the screen.
4. Follow the prompts on the screen to begin navigation.

 You may also press this icon when viewing location details to save the location as favorite.

 You can also control this vehicle feature with voice interaction. See **Voice Interaction Examples** (page 363).

## WAYPOINTS

### ADDING A WAYPOINT

1. Add an additional destination when driving to a set destination.
- Note:** You may add additional destinations using the text entry screen, the map screen, a predictive, a recent or a saved destination.

2. Follow the prompts on the screen to begin navigation.
-  You can also control this vehicle feature with voice interaction. See **Voice Interaction Examples** (page 363).

## EDITING WAYPOINTS

The first location that is entered remains the final destination. Any additional waypoints will be sorted automatically to optimize route.

In case you want to manually set the order of waypoints, please follow below instructions.

1. Press the Estimated Arrival information bar at the bottom of the navigation screen.
2. Press and hold any waypoint until it is highlighted.
3. Move the waypoint to the desired position.
4.  Confirm the update by pressing this icon.

## ROUTE GUIDANCE

### ADJUSTING THE GUIDANCE PROMPT VOLUME

1.  Press this icon on the touchscreen.
2.  Press this icon.
3.  Press this icon.

4. Move the slide bar to set your preferred volume.



You can also control this vehicle feature with voice interaction.

See **Voice Interaction**

**Examples** (page 363).

## REPEATING AN INSTRUCTION

Press the next step indicator on the top of the touchscreen during an active navigation session to hear the last voice instruction.

## CANCELING ROUTE GUIDANCE



Press this icon on the bottom of the touchscreen.

**Note:** *Follow the prompts on the screen if you have stopovers added.*



You can also control this vehicle feature with voice interaction.

See **Voice Interaction**

**Examples** (page 363).

# Vehicle Software Updates

---

Software updates introduce new features and provide updates to the vehicle's software systems.

## Software Download

Your vehicle may be able to receive drivable software updates, non-drivable software updates or both. Drivable software updates happen during normal vehicle usage and require limited input from you. You are notified on your touchscreen prior to a non-drivable update.

**Note:** Updates could take longer depending on the network connection or could not download at all if the network connection is lost. See **Connected Vehicle** (page 352). See **Connected Vehicle Data** (page 23).

## Software Installation

### Vehicle Software Update Requirements

Non-drivable software updates do not install if any of the following occur:

- Your vehicle is switched on.
- Your vehicle is running.
- Your vehicle is not parked.
- The parking brake is not applied.
- Your vehicle is unlocked.
- The 12 V battery charge is too low.
- The hazard indicators are switched on.
- The alarm is sounding.
- The doors, windows, hood, and trunk are open.
- The parking lamps are switched on.
- An active vehicle key is detected inside the vehicle.
- An emergency call is in process.
- Any occupants or animals are detected inside of the vehicle.

### Vehicle Software Update Limitations

When you begin a software update installation, you cannot:

- Cancel the update.
- Switch on your vehicle.
- Charge your vehicle.
- Use the vehicle functions and displays during this time.

**Note:** The anti-theft alarm system and the double locking feature deactivate when you begin software update installation, and remain disabled after the installation completed.

Switch off your vehicle and follow the prompts on the touchscreen to start the software installation process.

**Note:** Most software update installations complete in less than 30 minutes, although some updates could take up to a few hours. We recommend to start the installation process when you normally do not use your vehicle, such as overnight.

If a software update installation is not successful, follow the prompt on the touchscreen or on the instrument cluster. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible if any of the following occur:

- The control units do not function properly after a software update.
- The instrument cluster does not display. See **Using the Instrument Cluster Display Controls** (page 105).
- The software installation process repeatedly fails.



# Vehicle System Reset

---

## PERFORMING A SYSTEM RESET

Performing a system reset allows you to remove all personal information and restore settings to their factory defaults.

1.  Press this icon on the touchscreen.
2. Press System.
3. Press Reset to Factory.
4. Follow the prompts on the screen to complete the reset.

# Your Authorized Dealer - Turkey

## AUTHORIZED DEALER DIRECTORY - TURKEY

### Turkey Only

You can find the contact information for all authorized dealers on [www.ford.com.tr](http://www.ford.com.tr) or [www.servis.gov.tr](http://www.servis.gov.tr). For more information, you can contact us at 444-3673.

| Name                    | Telephone       | Address                                                                           | City     |
|-------------------------|-----------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| GİZERLER                | (322) 346 80 80 | Levent Mah. Eski Ceyhan Yolu<br>Üzeri 5. Km No: 210 Yüreğir/<br>Adana             | Adana    |
| OTOKOÇ ADANA            | (322) 441 17 17 | Mersin Yolu Üzeri 9. Km Sarı<br>Hamzalı Köyü Mevkii Merkez/<br>Adana              | Adana    |
| İNTERTEKS               | (416) 227 24 01 | Adıyaman Gölbaşı Karayolu<br>Üzeri Küçük Sanayi Sitesi<br>Karşısı Merkez/Adıyaman | Adıyaman |
| GLS GELİŞİM<br>OTOMOTİV | (382) 245 44 14 | Bahçesaray Mahallesi 135.<br>Cadde No: 216 Aksaray                                | Aksaray  |
| BAŞER                   | (312) 269 80 00 | Ayaş Yolu Çatalkara Sokak<br>No:199 Sincan/Ankara                                 | Ankara   |
| KARTAŞ                  | (312) 583 85 60 | Tevfik İleri Mh. Özal Bulvarı<br>No: 55 Pursaklar/Ankara                          | Ankara   |
| OTOKOÇ ANKARA           | (312) 207 47 00 | Eskişehir Yolu 12. Km No:350<br>Ümitköy/Ankara                                    | Ankara   |
| TAN OTO                 | (312) 591 34 34 | Fatih Sultan Mehmet Bulvarı<br>No:252 Macunköy,Yenima-<br>halle/Ankara            | Ankara   |
| BİLALLER                | (242) 259 33 70 | Sarısu Mah. 121. Sk. No:30/A-<br>B Konyaaltı/Antalya                              | Antalya  |
| OTOKOÇ ALANYA           | (242) 515 13 80 | Çevreyolu Üzeri No: 1 Tosmur<br>Beldesi Alanya/Antalya                            | Antalya  |
| OTOKOÇ<br>ANTALYA       | (242) 340 26 85 | Altınova Sinan Mah. Havaalanı<br>Yolu Üzeri Merkez/Antalya                        | Antalya  |
| KAHYAOĞULLARI           | (256) 633 10 01 | Söke Yolu Üzeri 3. Km Kuşa-<br>dası/Aydın                                         | Aydın    |

## Your Authorized Dealer - Turkey

| Name              | Telephone       | Address                                                          | City       |
|-------------------|-----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|------------|
| ZAFER             | (256) 219 40 00 | Aydın-İzmir Karayolu 1.Km<br>(Aymas Bitişiği) Merkez/Aydın       | Aydın      |
| AKOTO EDREMİT     | (266) 374 06 65 | İzmir Yolu Üzeri 2. Km. Ilıcalar<br>Mevkii Edremit/Balıkesir     | Balıkesir  |
| AKOTO Merkez      | (266) 283 00 10 | İzmir Yolu 8. Km Osb Kavşağı<br>Merkez/Balıkesir                 | Balıkesir  |
| MUSLUBAŞLAR       | (266) 721 21 21 | 600 Evler Mah. Atatürk Cad.<br>No: 95 Bandırma/Balıkesir         | Balıkesir  |
| OĞUZCAN           | (488) 218 02 23 | Gültepe Mahallesi Demokrasi<br>Bulvarı No: 401 Merkez/<br>Batman | Batman     |
| OTOKOÇ BURSA      | (224) 270 39 00 | 29 Ekim Mah. İzmir Yolu Cad.<br>No: 380/A Nilüfer/Bursa          | Bursa      |
| SÖNMEZ KOÇ        | (224) 261 22 44 | Yeni Yalova Yolu 9. Km<br>Sönmez Asf. Karşısı Merkez/<br>Bursa   | Bursa      |
| ARSLANLAR         | (286) 263 06 25 | İzmir Yolu 5. Km Merkez/<br>Çanakkale                            | Çanakkale  |
| EVLÜCE OTO        | (364) 235 02 12 | Ankara Asfaltı 7. Km Merkez/<br>Çorum                            | Çorum      |
| YARGÜL            | (258) 371 23 79 | Akçeşme Mevkii Menderes<br>Bulvarı No: 161 Gümüşler/<br>Denizli  | Denizli    |
| DİYARBAKIR OTO    | (412) 255 04 45 | Şanlıurfa Yolu Üzeri 4 Km<br>Merkez/Diyarbakır                   | Diyarbakır |
| GÖRÜR             | (380) 537 53 15 | Taşköprü Köyü E-5 Mahallesi<br>No: 55 Düzce                      | Düzce      |
| TUZCULAR          | (284) 763 11 23 | Ford Plaza İstanbul Yolu 7. Km<br>Merkez/Edirne                  | Edirne     |
| ÇETİNKAYALAR      | (424) 247 40 31 | Malatya Yolu 8. Km Baskil Yol<br>Kavşağı Merkez/Elazığ           | Elazığ     |
| CİNDİLLİ OTOMOTİV | (442) 242 00 13 | Tortum Yolu Üzeri 3. Km<br>Cindilli Ford Plaza Erzurum           | Erzurum    |

## Your Authorized Dealer - Turkey

| Name                       | Telephone       | Address                                                                                     | City      |
|----------------------------|-----------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------|
| OTOKOÇ<br>ESKİŞEHİR        | (222) 335 10 10 | Şirintepe Mh. İsmet İnönü 2.<br>Cad. No: 64 Tepebaşı Merkez/<br>Eskişehir                   | Eskişehir |
| DOĞANLAR                   | (342) 323 23 13 | Mücahitler Mahallesi Sani<br>Konukoğlu Bulvarı No:28/A<br>Şehitkamil/Gaziantep              | Gaziantep |
| OVALI ANTAKYA              | (326) 221 61 65 | İskenderun Yolu Üzeri 5. Km<br>Antakya/Hatay                                                | Hatay     |
| OVALI İSKEN-<br>DERUN      | (326) 618 38 38 | İsmet İnönü Mah.İbrahim<br>Karaoğlu Cad.No: 38<br>Hatay/İskenderun                          | Hatay     |
| SÜRKİT OTOM.               | (476) 210 11 38 | Söğütlü Mevkii Çevre Yolu<br>Üzeri Ford Plaza Merkez/Iğdır                                  | Iğdır     |
| GÜRSOY                     | (232) 464 02 50 | Merkez Mah. Gazi Mustafa<br>Kemal Bulvarı Blv. Gürsoy Oto.<br>Gürsoy No: 872 Mezitli/Mersin | İçel      |
| ASF                        | (216) 427 37 47 | Soğanlık Yeni Mah. Soğanlık<br>D-100 Kuzey Yanyol Cad. 30<br>B/Kartal/İstanbul              | İstanbul  |
| ATILGAN SANC-<br>AKTEPE    | (216) 498 98 00 | Veysel Karani Mahallesi, Aşık<br>Reyhani Caddesi No: 14 Sanc-<br>aktepe/İstanbul            | İstanbul  |
| ÇETAŞ B.ÇEKMECE            | (212) 863 84 10 | Mimarsinan Merkez Mah.E-5<br>Londra Asfaltı No: 57 B.<br>Çekmece İstanbul                   | İstanbul  |
| ÇETAŞ<br>MAHMUTBEY         | (212) 454 40 00 | Göztepe Mah. Rahim Sok. No:<br>2-4 Bağcılar/İstanbul                                        | İstanbul  |
| GÜRBAŞLAR                  | (216) 465 33 61 | Göztepe Mah. Atatürk Cad.<br>No: 12 Migros karşısı A.Hisarı/<br>İstanbul                    | İstanbul  |
| KELEŞLER                   | (212) 417 39 15 | Uluyol Cad. No: 25/A<br>Bayrampaşa/İstanbul                                                 | İstanbul  |
| KENT OTOMOTİV              | (212) 423 53 00 | Saadetdere Mah. 68. Sok. No:<br>40 Esenyurt/İstanbul                                        | İstanbul  |
| OTOKOÇ<br>İSTANBUL İSTİNYE | (212) 229 95 55 | İstinye Mah. Sarıyer Cad. No:<br>70/C Yeniköy/İstanbul                                      | İstanbul  |

## Your Authorized Dealer - Turkey

| Name                           | Telephone       | Address                                                                                                              | City     |
|--------------------------------|-----------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| OTOKOÇ<br>İSTANBUL<br>TAŞDELEN | (216) 430 12 00 | Çamlık Mah. Çobandere<br>Mevkii Sırrı Çelik Bulvarı No:<br>9A/9B, Şile Otobanı 11. Km<br>Taşdelen, Çekmeköy/İstanbul | İstanbul |
| TEPRETOĞULLARI                 | (216) 545 03 33 | Acıbadem Mah Köftüncü<br>Sokak No: 1/3 Kadıköy/<br>İstanbul                                                          | İstanbul |
| ARKAS İZMİR                    | (232) 399 34 34 | Anadolu Cad. No: 687/C<br>Karşıyaka/İzmir Karşıyaka/<br>İzmir                                                        | İzmir    |
| ÇETAŞ İZMİR                    | (232) 478 07 07 | Ankara Cad. Naldöken Mah.<br>No: 319 Bornova/İzmir                                                                   | İzmir    |
| İZKAR                          | (232) 254 38 00 | Akçay Cad. No: 49 Gaziemir/<br>İzmir                                                                                 | İzmir    |
| OTOKOÇ İZMİR                   | (232) 498 90 00 | Kazım Dirik Mah. 296. Sokak<br>No: 1 Bornova/İzmir                                                                   | İzmir    |
| METİNLER                       | (352) 224 54 54 | Konaklar Mevkii Sivas Cad. No:<br>244 Kayseri                                                                        | Kayseri  |
| ÜNAL                           | (352) 311 55 00 | Anbar Mahallesi Osman<br>Kavuncu Bulvarı No: 498<br>Anbar, Melikgazi/Kayseri                                         | Kayseri  |
| ÇANGAR                         | (392) 227 05 55 | Soyak Evleri Mevkii,<br>Küçükkaymaklı Mah. Şehit<br>Mustafa Ruso Cad. Lefkoşe/<br>Kıbrıs                             | Kıbrıs   |
| ACAMAR                         | (262) 606 10 10 | Köşklü Çeşme Mah. İstanbul<br>Cad. No:87 41400 Gebze/<br>Kocaeli                                                     | Kocaeli  |
| ESOTO                          | (262) 335 43 15 | Sanayi Mah. D-130 Yanyol<br>Cad. No: 79 Merkez/Kocaeli                                                               | Kocaeli  |
| OTOKOÇ KONYA                   | (332) 255 42 33 | İstanbul Yolu Üzeri Sancak<br>Mah. Büyükkırmak Sk. No:1<br>Selçuklu Merkez/Konya                                     | Konya    |
| ILICAK                         | (422) 444 59 55 | 1.OSB Mahallesi Havaalanı<br>Yolu 2.Cadde No: 14/1<br>Yeşilyurt/MALATYA                                              | Malatya  |

## Your Authorized Dealer - Turkey

| Name                   | Telephone       | Address                                                                                                      | City      |
|------------------------|-----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------|
| ÇETAŞ MANİSA           | (236) 233 84 00 | Güzelyurt Mah. Menemen<br>Cad. No:15/A Manisa                                                                | Manisa    |
| ÇETAŞ SALİHLİ          | (236) 716 16 00 | Ankara Asfaltı 3. km. Salihli/<br>Manisa                                                                     | Manisa    |
| NAS OTO                | (482) 312 04 44 | Havaalanı Yanı 47100 Merkez/<br>Mardin                                                                       | Mardin    |
| HELVACIOĞLU<br>BODRUM  | (252) 358 68 38 | Açık Kırlar Mevkii Atatürk<br>Bulvarı No: 289 Konacık,<br>Bodrum/Muğla                                       | Muğla     |
| HELVACIOĞLU<br>FETHİYE | (252) 646 57 77 | Karaçulha Belediyesi<br>Cumhuriyet Cad. No: 199<br>Fethiye/Muğla                                             | Muğla     |
| HELVACIOĞLU<br>Merkez  | (252) 212 80 00 | Orhaniye Mah. Uğur Mumcu<br>Bulvarı No: 17 Merkez/Muğla                                                      | Muğla     |
| ALTAŞ                  | (452) 234 19 20 | Cumhuriyet Mah. Mustafa<br>Kemal Bulvarı No: 102 Merkez/<br>Ordu                                             | Ordu      |
| ATILGAN RİZE           | (464) 226 01 85 | Cumhuriyet Çay Fabrikası<br>Karşısı Gündoğdu Rize                                                            | Rize      |
| AKGÜN                  | (264) 276 72 10 | Hanlıköy Mahallesi Eskişehir<br>Caddesi No: 93/A Arifiye/<br>Sakarya                                         | Sakarya   |
| OTOKOÇ SAMSUN          | (362) 266 61 12 | Samsun-Trabzon Karayolu 10.<br>Km Kutlukent Tekkeköy/<br>Samsun                                              | Samsun    |
| KURT                   | (346) 502 58 58 | Yeşilyurt Mah. Sultañşehir Blv.<br>146 Merkez/Sivas                                                          | Sivas     |
| ŞANLIURFA OTO          | (414) 316 62 27 | Mardin Yolu 3.Km Jandarma<br>Karşısı Merkez/Şanlıurfa                                                        | Şanlıurfa |
| DÖNÜŞÜM                | (486) 616 76 16 | Nusaybin Yolu Üzeri Cizre<br>Çıkışı 8. Km Habur Tesisleri<br>Yanı Nerme Mevkii Çavuşlu<br>Köyü, Cizre/Şırnak | Şırnak    |
| VOLKAN Çorlu           | (282) 685 42 90 | E-5 Karayolu Üzeri Önerler<br>Mevkii Mücavir Mah. İstanbul<br>Cad. 43/A, Çorlu/Tekirdağ                      | Tekirdağ  |

## Your Authorized Dealer - Turkey

| Name            | Telephone       | Address                                                    | City      |
|-----------------|-----------------|------------------------------------------------------------|-----------|
| VOLKAN Tekirdağ | (282) 293 38 82 | Hürriyet Mah. Sami Efendi Sok. No:2 Süleymanpaşa/ Tekirdağ | Tekirdağ  |
| ORUÇLAR         | (356) 214 41 43 | Yeniyurt Mah. Vali Zekai Gümüşdiş Blv. No: 55/A Tokat      | Tokat     |
| TUNALAR         | (462) 248 12 00 | Tunalar Ford Plaza Yıldızlı/ Trabzon                       | Trabzon   |
| AKKÖPRÜLÜ       | (434) 217 17 17 | Şabaniye Mah. İpekyolu 4. Km Merkez/Van                    | Van       |
| ERDEĞER         | (226) 351 73 50 | Kılıç Köyü Şakşak Mevkii Çift-likköy/Yalova                | Yalova    |
| AZİM OTO        | (372) 323 98 40 | Muammer Aksoy Cad. No: 38 Karadeniz Ereğli/Zonguldak       | Zonguldak |

## Service Intervals - Turkey

### Turkey Only

| Model                                                                                                                                                                                                   | Service Interval<br>(Whichever Occurs First) |                          |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|--------------------------|
|                                                                                                                                                                                                         |                                              |                          |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• All passenger vehicles.</li><li>• Ranger.</li><li>• Tourneo Connect.</li><li>• Tourneo Courier.</li><li>• Transit Connect.</li><li>• Transit Courier.</li></ul> | 1 year                                       | 15,000 km<br>(9,500 mi)  |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Tourneo Custom.</li><li>• Transit.</li><li>• Transit Custom.</li></ul>                                                                                          | 1 year                                       | 20,000 km<br>(12,500 mi) |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• All electric vehicles.</li></ul>                                                                                                                                | 1 year                                       | Unlimited.               |

**Note:** Service intervals may vary depending on engine options. For information about the service interval details of your vehicle, please refer to the local Ford website.



## ROLLOVER WARNING



**WARNING:** Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles.



**WARNING:** Vehicles with a higher center of gravity (utility and four-wheel drive vehicles) handle differently than vehicles with a lower center of gravity (passenger cars). Avoid sharp turns, excessive speed and abrupt steering in these vehicles. Failure to drive cautiously increases the risk of losing control of your vehicle, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.



**WARNING:** In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seatbelt.



**WARNING:** Do not become overconfident in the ability of four-wheel drive vehicles. Although a four-wheel drive vehicle may accelerate better than a two-wheel drive vehicle in low traction situations, it won't stop any faster than two-wheel drive vehicles. Always drive at a safe speed.

Utility vehicles and trucks handle differently than passenger cars in the various driving conditions that are encountered on streets, highways and off-road. Utility vehicles and trucks are not designed for cornering at speeds as high as passenger cars any more than low-slung sports cars are designed to perform satisfactorily under off-road conditions.

## THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE COPYRIGHT ACKNOWLEDGMENT

Your vehicle could have components that use open source software. For additional information, visit <http://corporate.ford.com/ford-open-source.html>.

## BATTERY PERFORMANCE AND DURABILITY INFORMATION

The provided electrochemical performance and durability values are in accordance with the EU Battery Regulation 2023/1542 - Article 10.

|                                       |        |        |        |
|---------------------------------------|--------|--------|--------|
| Certified usable battery energy (kWh) | 58     | 77     | 79     |
| Rated capacity (Ah)                   | 183.0  | 233.0  | 240.0  |
| Capacity fade (%)                     | 20.0   | 9.0    | 15.0   |
| Power (W)                             | 236000 | 360000 | 343000 |
| Power fade (%)                        | 0      | 0      | 1.0    |
| Internal resistance ( $\Omega$ )      | 0.070  | 0.042  | 0.036  |
| Internal resistance increase (%)      | 0      | -5     | 7      |

## Customer Information

|                                                                                                                             |                                    |                          |                          |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| Energy round trip efficiency (%); and its fade (%)                                                                          | 94; 0                              | 99.0; 1.0                | 96.0; 1.0                |
| Minimum expected lifetime of the battery under reference conditions for which it has been designed (cycles; calendar years) | 800; 8                             | 850; 8                   | 850; 8                   |
| Battery manufacturer                                                                                                        | Volkswagen, Wolfsburg <sup>2</sup> | Ford, Niehl <sup>1</sup> | Ford, Niehl <sup>1</sup> |
| Battery importer                                                                                                            | Volkswagen, Wolfsburg <sup>3</sup> | N/A                      | N/A                      |

<sup>1</sup> **Ford, Niehl** Ford-Werke GmbH, Henry-Ford-Str. 1, 50735 Köln, Germany, Battery Assembly Plant: Cologne, elveu@ford.com

<sup>2</sup> **Volkswagen, Wolfsburg** Volkswagen AG, Berliner Ring 2, 38440 Wolfsburg, Germany, kundenbetreuung@volkswagen.de

<sup>3</sup> Some batteries are manufactured in China and imported by Volkswagen into Europe.

### Digital Battery Passport



Scan the code or visit <https://battery.dpp.ford> to access information about your hybrid or electric vehicle battery in accordance with EU Battery Regulation 2023/1542.

**Note:** The VIN-number of your vehicle is required to access the information.

### REACH

We are committed to promoting the responsible manufacturing, handling and use of our products and support the underlying goals of **REACH**, a European Union regulation that concerns the registration, evaluation, authorisation and restriction of chemicals.

We specifically support Regulation EC 1907/2006 Article 33(1) that relates to substances of very high concern which appear on the current list for authorisation.

If these substances do exist in a product, it is important to guarantee their safe use so the regulation is designed to enable you to take any appropriate risk management measures.

To find out more about the **REACH** directive, search **REACH** on the local Ford website.

**Note:** To find the local Ford website, visit <https://corporate.ford.com/operations/locations/global-links.html>.

## Customer Information

### RADIO FREQUENCY CERTIFICATION LABELS

You can locate radio frequency certification labels and declarations of conformity for components on your vehicle at your local Ford or Lincoln website along with your owner information.

For more information scan here:



<https://corporate.ford.com/operations/locations/global-links.html>

### REPLACEMENT PARTS RECOMMENDATION

We have built your vehicle to the highest standards using quality parts. We recommend that you demand the use of genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts whenever your vehicle requires scheduled maintenance or repair. You can clearly identify genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts by looking for the Ford, FoMoCo or Motorcraft branding on the parts or their packaging.

### Scheduled Maintenance and Mechanical Repairs

One of the best ways for you to make sure that your vehicle provides years of service is to have it maintained in line with our recommendations using parts that conform to the specifications detailed in this Owner's Manual.

Genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts meet or exceed these specifications.

### Collision Repairs

We hope that you never experience a collision, but accidents happen sometimes.

Genuine Ford replacement collision parts meet our stringent requirements for fit, finish, structural integrity, corrosion protection and dent resistance. During vehicle development we validate that these parts deliver the intended level of protection as a whole system. A great way to know for sure you are getting this level of protection is to use genuine Ford replacement collision parts.

### Warranty on Replacement Parts

Genuine Ford and Motorcraft replacement parts are the only replacement parts that benefit from a Ford Warranty.

The Ford Warranty may not cover damage caused to your vehicle as a result of failed non-Ford parts.

For additional information, refer to the terms and conditions of the Ford Warranty.

### MOBILE COMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any

# Customer Information

---

hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

enhance personal safety and security when appropriately used, particularly in emergency situations. Safety must be paramount when using mobile communications equipment to avoid negating these benefits. Mobile communication equipment includes, but is not limited to, cellular phones, pagers, portable email devices, text messaging devices and portable two-way radios.

Using mobile communications equipment is becoming increasingly important in the conduct of business and personal affairs. However, you must not compromise your own or others' safety when using such equipment. Mobile communications can

## ECALL USER INFORMATION

### eCall User Information According to Regulation (EU) 2017/78, Annex I, Part 3

#### 1 DESCRIPTION OF THE ECALL IN-VEHICLE SYSTEM

- 1.1. Overview of the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system, its operation and functionalities: See **What Is eCall** (page 48).
- 1.2. The 112-based eCall service is a public service of general interest and is accessible free of charge.
- 1.3. The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is activated by default. It is activated automatically by means of in-vehicle sensors in the event of a severe accident. It will also be triggered automatically when the vehicle is equipped with a Third Party Service (TPS) system which does not function in the event of a severe accident.
- 1.4. The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system can also be triggered manually, if needed. Instructions for manual activation of the system: See **Manually Making an Emergency Call** (page 48).
- 1.5. In the event of a critical system failure that would disable the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system, the following warning will be given to the occupants of the vehicle: See **Emergency Call Indicators** (page 49).

## 2 INFORMATION ON DATA PROCESSING

- 2.1. Any processing of personal data through the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system shall comply with the personal data protection rules provided for in Regulation (EU) 2016/679 (GDPR) and 2002/58/EC of the European Parliament and of the Council, and in particular, shall be based on the necessity to protect the vital interests of the individuals in accordance with Regulation (EU) 2016/679 (GDPR).
- 2.2. Processing of such data is strictly limited to the purpose of handling the emergency eCall to the single European emergency number 112.
- 2.3. Types of data and its recipients.
- 2.3.1. The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system may collect and process only the following data:
  - Vehicle Identification Number.
  - Vehicle type (passenger vehicle or light commercial vehicle).
  - Vehicle propulsion storage type (gasoline/diesel/CNG/LPG/electric/hydrogen).
  - Vehicle last three locations and direction of travel.
  - Log file of the automatic activation of the system and its timestamp.
  - Any additional data (if applicable): See **Emergency Call System Data** (page 24).
- 2.3.2. Recipients of data processed by the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system are the relevant public safety answering points designated by the respective public authorities of the country on which territory they are located, to first receive and handle eCalls to the single European emergency number 112.  
Additional information (if available): -
- 2.4. Arrangements for data processing.
- 2.4.1. The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is designed in such a way as to ensure that the data contained in the system memory is not available outside the system before an eCall is triggered.  
Additional remarks (if any): -
- 2.4.2. The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is designed in such a way as to ensure that it is not traceable and not subject to any constant tracking in its normal operation status.  
Additional remarks (if any): -
- 2.4.3. The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is designed in such a way as to ensure that data in the system internal memory is automatically and continuously removed.

## Customer Information

---

- 2.4.3.1. The vehicle location data is constantly overwritten in the internal memory of the system so as always to keep maximum of the last three up-to-date locations of the vehicle necessary for the normal functioning of the system.
- 2.4.3.2. The log of activity data in the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is kept for no longer than necessary for attaining the purpose of handling the emergency eCall and in any case not beyond 13 hours from the moment an emergency eCall was initiated.  
Additional remarks (if any): -
- 2.5. Modalities for exercising data subject's rights.
- 2.5.1. The data subject (the vehicle's owner) has a right of access to data and as appropriate to request the rectification, erasure or blocking of data, concerning him or her, the processing of which does not comply with the provisions of Directive 95/46/EC. Any third parties to whom the data have been disclosed have to be notified of such rectification, erasure or blocking carried out in compliance with this Directive, unless it proves impossible or involves a disproportionate effort.
- 2.5.2. The data subject has a right to complain to the competent data protection authority if he or she considers that his or her rights have been infringed as a result of the processing of his or her personal data.
- 2.5.3. Contact service responsible for handling access requests (if any): Contact the data protection officer of your local Public Safety Answering Point.

### **3 INFORMATION ON THIRD PARTY SERVICES AND OTHER ADDED VALUE SERVICES (IF FITTED)**

- 3.1. Description of the operation and the functionalities of the TPS system/added value service: Your vehicle may be equipped with a modem that allows for emergency calls (eCall), automatic software updates and other services. See the information in this Owner's Manual or in the Ford app for a description of these services. We provide a 112-based eCall in-vehicle system and we do not provide a TPS eCall system.
- 3.2. Any processing of personal data through the TPS system/other added value service shall comply with the personal data protection rules provided for in Regulation (EU) 2016/679 (GDPR) and 2002/58/EC.
- 3.2.1. Legal basis for the use of TPS system and/or added value services and for processing data through them: For information on the legal bases for processing of personal data through added value services, review the data privacy information for any services to which you subscribe. This privacy information can be found in the Ford app or on the local Ford website.

## Customer Information

---

- 3.3. The TPS system and/or other added value services shall process personal data only on the base of the explicit consent of the data subject (the vehicle's owner or owners).
- 3.4. Modalities for data processing through TPS system and/or other added value services, including any necessary additional information regarding traceability, tracking and processing of personal data: See the privacy information in the Ford app or on the local Ford website.
- 3.5. The owner of a vehicle equipped with a TPS eCall system and/or other added value service in addition to the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system has the right to choose to use the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system rather than the TPS eCall system and the other added value service.
- 3.5.1. Contact details for handling TPS eCall system deactivation requests: You can have all added value services deactivated except for eCall. To find out more about having all added value services deactivated except for eCall, search Ask Ford on the local Ford website or contact the Ford Customer Relationship Center by e-mail through the Ford app or by using the e-mail address on the local Ford website.

### ELECTROMAGNETIC COMPATIBILITY



**WARNING:** Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the airbag cover, on the side of the front or rear seatbacks, or in areas that may come into contact with a deploying airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.



**WARNING:** Do not fasten antenna cables to vehicle wiring, pipes or hoses. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of equipment malfunction, equipment damage or personal injury.



**WARNING:** Keep antenna and power cables at least 10 cm (4 in) from any electronic modules and airbags. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of equipment malfunction, equipment damage or personal injury.

**Note:** We test and certify your vehicle to meet electromagnetic compatibility legislation. It is your responsibility to make sure that any equipment an authorized dealer installs on your vehicle complies with applicable local legislation and other requirements. Installation of some aftermarket electronic devices could degrade the performance of vehicle functions, which use radio frequency signals such as broadcast radio receiver, tire pressure monitoring system, push button start, **Bluetooth®** connectivity or satellite navigation.

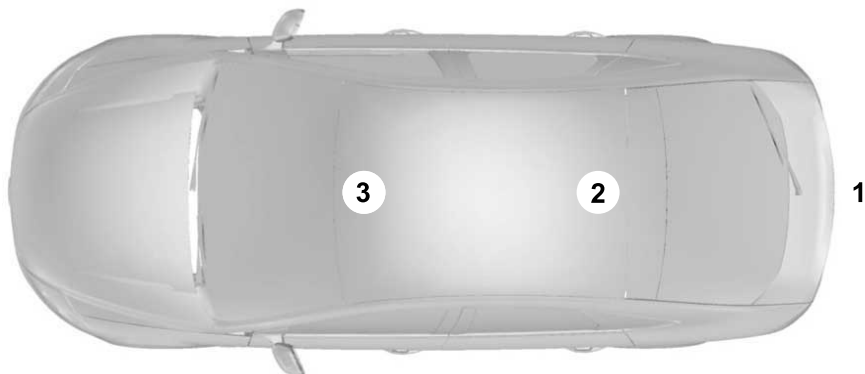
**Note:** Any radio frequency transmitter equipment in your vehicle (such as cellular telephones and amateur radio transmitters) must keep to the parameters in the following illustrations and table. We do not provide any other special provisions or conditions for installations or use.



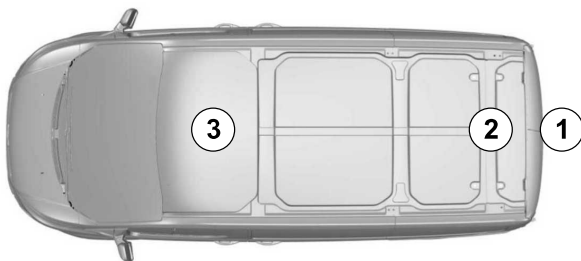
# Appendices

---

## Car

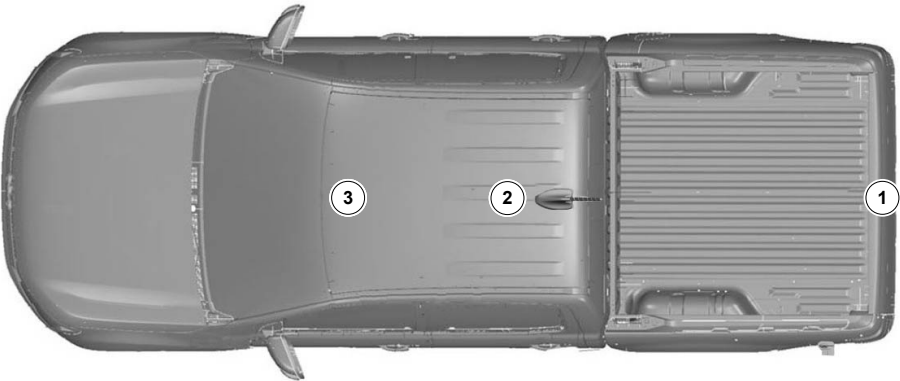


## Van



# Appendices

## Truck



E239121

| Frequency Band<br>MHz | Maximum Output Power Watt<br>(Peak RMS) | Antenna Positions |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------------------|-------------------|
| 1-30 <sup>1</sup>     | 50                                      | 1                 |
| 50-54                 | 50                                      | 2, 3              |
| 68-87                 | 50                                      | 2, 3              |
| 144-174               | 50                                      | 2, 3              |
| 380-512               | 50                                      | 2, 3              |
| 806-870               | 10                                      | 2, 3              |

<sup>1</sup> For battery electric vehicles and plug-in hybrid vehicles, this frequency is not approved when your vehicle is plugged-in and charging.

# Appendices

---

**Note:** *After the installation of radio frequency transmitters, check for disturbances from and to all electrical equipment in your vehicle, both in the standby and transmit modes.*

Check all electrical equipment:

- With the ignition ON.
- With the vehicle running.
- During a road test at various speeds.

Check that electromagnetic fields generated inside your vehicle cabin by the transmitter installed do not exceed applicable human exposure requirements.



# Index

## 1

|                                         |     |
|-----------------------------------------|-----|
| 12V Battery.....                        | 309 |
| 12V Battery Precautions.....            | 309 |
| Battery Management System               |     |
| Limitations.....                        | 310 |
| Changing the 12V Battery.....           | 310 |
| Charging the 12V Battery.....           | 310 |
| How Does the Battery Management         |     |
| System Work.....                        | 309 |
| Recycling and Disposing of the 12V      |     |
| Battery.....                            | 310 |
| What Is the Battery Management          |     |
| System.....                             | 309 |
| 12V Battery – Troubleshooting.....      | 311 |
| 12V Battery – Information Messages..... | 312 |
| 12V Battery – Warning Lamps.....        | 311 |

## 3

|                                        |     |
|----------------------------------------|-----|
| 360 Degree Camera.....                 | 212 |
| 360 Degree Camera Settings.....        | 213 |
| 360 Degree Camera Guidelines.....      | 212 |
| 360 Degree Camera Limitations.....     | 212 |
| 360 Degree Camera Precautions.....     | 212 |
| 360 Degree Camera Settings.....        | 213 |
| Switching the 360 Degree Camera On and |     |
| Off.....                               | 213 |
| Switching the 360 Degree Camera        |     |
| View.....                              | 213 |

## A

|                                   |     |
|-----------------------------------|-----|
| A/C                               |     |
| See: Climate Control.....         | 112 |
| About This Publication.....       | 13  |
| ABS                               |     |
| See: Brakes.....                  | 188 |
| Accessing Navigation.....         | 371 |
| Accessing the Emergency Exit..... | 288 |
| Accessing the Passive Key Backup  |     |
| Position.....                     | 141 |
| AC Charging.....                  | 156 |
| Charging at Home.....             | 156 |
| Charging in Public.....           | 158 |
| Charging Using Your Public Charge |     |
| Cord.....                         | 160 |

|                                           |     |
|-------------------------------------------|-----|
| Activating and Deactivating Lane          |     |
| Change Assist.....                        | 234 |
| Active Park Assist.....                   | 214 |
| Active Park Assist With Memory            |     |
| Function.....                             | 216 |
| Reversing Assist.....                     | 218 |
| Active Park Assist Precautions.....       | 214 |
| Active Park Assist With Memory            |     |
| Function.....                             | 216 |
| Active Park Assist With Memory Function   |     |
| Precautions.....                          | 216 |
| Entering and Exiting a Parking Space..... | 217 |
| How Does Active Park Assist With Memory   |     |
| Function Work.....                        | 216 |
| Programming Active Park Assist With       |     |
| Memory Function.....                      | 216 |
| Adaptive Cruise Control.....              | 220 |
| Adaptive Cruise Control –                 |     |
| Troubleshooting.....                      | 232 |
| Lane Centering.....                       | 226 |
| Lane Centering – Troubleshooting.....     | 229 |
| Predictive Speed Assist.....              | 229 |
| Adaptive Cruise Control Automatic         |     |
| Cancellation.....                         | 223 |
| Adaptive Cruise Control Indicators.....   | 226 |
| Adaptive Cruise Control                   |     |
| Limitations.....                          | 221 |
| Adaptive Cruise Control                   |     |
| Precautions.....                          | 220 |
| Adaptive Cruise Control –                 |     |
| Troubleshooting.....                      | 232 |
| Adaptive Cruise Control – Warning         |     |
| Lamps.....                                | 232 |
| Adaptive Front Lighting.....              | 91  |
| Adaptive Front Lighting – Information     |     |
| Messages.....                             | 91  |
| How Does Adaptive Front Lighting          |     |
| Work.....                                 | 91  |
| Adding Favorites.....                     | 357 |
| Adjusting the Exterior Mirrors.....       | 100 |
| Adjusting the Headlamps.....              | 312 |
| Adjusting the Instrument Panel Lighting   |     |
| Brightness.....                           | 94  |
| Adjusting the Luggage Compartment         |     |
| Load Floor.....                           | 272 |
| Adjusting the Map.....                    | 371 |
| Changing the Format of the Map.....       | 372 |
| Zooming the Map In and Out.....           | 371 |

# Index

|                                                          |     |
|----------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Adjusting the Seatbelts During Pregnancy.....            | 40  |
| Adjusting the Steering Wheel.....                        | 73  |
| Adjusting the Volume.....                                | 356 |
| Airbag Precautions.....                                  | 43  |
| Airbags.....                                             | 41  |
| Airbags – Troubleshooting.....                           | 44  |
| Airbags – Troubleshooting.....                           | 44  |
| Airbags – Warning Lamps.....                             | 44  |
| Air Conditioning                                         |     |
| See: Climate Control.....                                | 112 |
| Air Conditioning System Capacity and Specification.....  | 314 |
| All-Wheel Drive.....                                     | 181 |
| All-Wheel Drive – Troubleshooting.....                   | 181 |
| All-Wheel Drive Limitations.....                         | 181 |
| All-Wheel Drive Precautions.....                         | 181 |
| All-Wheel Drive – Troubleshooting.....                   | 181 |
| All-Wheel Drive – Information Messages.....              | 181 |
| Ambient Lighting.....                                    | 94  |
| Adjusting Ambient Lighting.....                          | 94  |
| Switching Ambient Lighting On and Off.....               | 94  |
| Anti-Lock Braking System.....                            | 188 |
| Anti-Lock Braking System Limitations.....                | 188 |
| Anti-Theft Alarm System.....                             | 69  |
| Arming the Anti-Theft Alarm System.....                  | 70  |
| Disarming the Anti-Theft Alarm System.....               | 70  |
| How Does the Anti-Theft Alarm System Work.....           | 69  |
| What Are the Inclination Sensors.....                    | 70  |
| What Are the Interior Sensors.....                       | 69  |
| What Is the Anti-Theft Alarm System.....                 | 69  |
| What Is the Battery Backup Alarm.....                    | 70  |
| What Is the Perimeter Alarm.....                         | 69  |
| Anti-Theft Alarm System Settings.....                    | 70  |
| Setting the Alarm Security Level.....                    | 71  |
| What are the Alarm Security Levels.....                  | 70  |
| Appendices.....                                          | 392 |
| Applying the Electric Parking Brake.....                 | 192 |
| Applying the Electric Parking Brake in an Emergency..... | 192 |
| App Requirements.....                                    | 369 |
| Apps.....                                                | 369 |
| Audio System.....                                        | 355 |
| Audio System Precautions.....                            | 355 |
| Authorized Dealer Directory - Turkey.....                | 378 |
| Auto Air Refresh.....                                    | 118 |
| Automatically Refreshing the Interior Air.....           | 118 |
| Manually Refreshing the Interior Air.....                | 118 |
| Auto-Dimming Interior Mirror.....                        | 99  |
| Auto-Dimming Interior Mirror Limitations.....            | 99  |
| What Is the Auto-Dimming Interior Mirror.....            | 99  |
| Auto Hold.....                                           | 198 |
| Auto Hold Indicators.....                                | 199 |
| Autolamps.....                                           | 83  |
| What Are Autolamps.....                                  | 83  |
| Autolock.....                                            | 56  |
| Autolock Requirements.....                               | 56  |
| What Is Autolock.....                                    | 56  |
| Automatically Releasing the Electric Parking Brake.....  | 193 |
| Automatic High Beam Control.....                         | 86  |
| Automatic High Beam Control Indicators.....              | 87  |
| Automatic High Beam Control – Information Messages.....  | 88  |
| Automatic High Beam Control Limitations.....             | 87  |
| Automatic High Beam Control Precautions.....             | 86  |
| Automatic High Beam Control Requirements.....            | 87  |
| How Does Automatic High Beam Control Work.....           | 86  |
| Overriding Automatic High Beam Control.....              | 88  |
| Switching Automatic High Beam Control On and Off.....    | 87  |
| Auto Mode.....                                           | 115 |
| Auto Mode Indicators.....                                | 115 |
| Switching Auto Mode On and Off.....                      | 115 |
| Switching Dual Mode On and Off.....                      | 116 |
| Autorelock.....                                          | 57  |
| How Does Autorelock Work.....                            | 57  |
| Autounlock.....                                          | 56  |
| Autounlock Requirements.....                             | 56  |
| What Is Autounlock.....                                  | 56  |

# Index

|                                          |     |                                           |     |
|------------------------------------------|-----|-------------------------------------------|-----|
| Autowipers.....                          | 76  | Center Display Precautions.....           | 360 |
| Adjusting the Sensitivity of the Rain    |     | Changing a Flat Tire.....                 | 347 |
| Sensor.....                              | 76  | Changing a Road Wheel.....                | 347 |
| Autowipers Settings.....                 | 76  | Changing the Backup Battery.....          | 50  |
| What Are Autowipers.....                 | 76  | Changing the Language.....                | 109 |
| AWD                                      |     | Changing the Measurement Unit.....        | 109 |
| See: All-Wheel Drive.....                | 181 | Changing the Remote Control               |     |
| <b>B</b>                                 |     | Battery.....                              | 51  |
| Battery Performance and Durability       |     | Changing the Set Speed Limit.....         | 238 |
| Information.....                         | 385 | Charge Coupler Manual Release.....        | 165 |
| Beginning a Voice Interaction.....       | 362 | Charge Port Indicators.....               | 155 |
| Bidirectional Charging.....              | 169 | Charging a Device.....                    | 133 |
| Blind Spot Assist.....                   | 242 | Charging a Wireless Device.....           | 136 |
| Blind Spot Assist Indicators.....        | 244 | Charging Equipment Identification         |     |
| Blind Spot Assist – Information          |     | Symbols.....                              | 172 |
| Messages.....                            | 245 | Charging Equipment Indicators.....        | 150 |
| Blind Spot Assist Limitations.....       | 243 | Charging Equipment Overview.....          | 148 |
| How Does Blind Spot Assist Work.....     | 242 | Charging Equipment Precautions.....       | 147 |
| What Is Blind Spot Assist.....           | 242 | Charging Settings.....                    | 166 |
| Bluetooth®.....                          | 368 | Charging Your Vehicle.....                | 147 |
| Bonnet Lock                              |     | AC Charging.....                          | 156 |
| See: Opening and Closing the Hood.....   | 303 | Charging Your Vehicle –                   |     |
| Booster Seats.....                       | 36  | Troubleshooting.....                      | 173 |
| Brake Fluid Specification.....           | 189 | Charging Your Vehicle –                   |     |
| Brake Over Accelerator.....              | 188 | Troubleshooting.....                      | 173 |
| Brake Precautions.....                   | 188 | Charging Your Vehicle – Frequently Asked  |     |
| Brakes.....                              | 188 | Questions.....                            | 175 |
| Anti-Lock Braking System.....            | 188 | Charging Your Vehicle – Information       |     |
| Brakes – Troubleshooting.....            | 189 | Messages.....                             | 173 |
| Brakes – Troubleshooting.....            | 189 | Charging Your Vehicle – Warning           |     |
| Brakes – Frequently Asked Questions..... | 191 | Lamps.....                                | 173 |
| Brakes – Information Messages.....       | 190 | Charging Your Vehicle Videos.....         | 175 |
| Brakes – Warning Lamps.....              | 189 | Checking the Brake Fluid.....             | 188 |
| Breaking-In.....                         | 281 | Checking the Tire Pressures.....          | 329 |
| <b>C</b>                                 |     | Checking the Wiper Blades.....            | 77  |
| Canceling a Voice Interaction.....       | 363 | Child Restraint Anchor Points.....        | 31  |
| Canceling the Set Speed.....             | 225 | Locating the Child Restraint Lower Anchor |     |
| Canceling the Set Speed Limit.....       | 238 | Points.....                               | 31  |
| Center Console.....                      | 138 | Locating the Child Restraint Top Tether   |     |
| Adjusting the Center Console.....        | 138 | Anchor Points.....                        | 31  |
| Center Console Videos.....               | 139 | What Are the Child Restraint Anchor       |     |
| Opening the Center Console.....          | 138 | Points.....                               | 31  |
| Center Display Limitations.....          | 360 | Child Restraints.....                     | 32  |
| Center Display Overview.....             | 360 | Child Restraint Position Information..... | 32  |
|                                          |     | Child Restraints Recommendation.....      | 35  |
|                                          |     | Installing Child Restraints.....          | 36  |
|                                          |     | Child Safety.....                         | 30  |
|                                          |     | Child Restraint Anchor Points.....        | 31  |

# Index

|                                                     |     |                                                     |     |
|-----------------------------------------------------|-----|-----------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Child Restraints.....                               | 32  | Connected Vehicle Data.....                         | 23  |
| Child Safety Locks – Troubleshooting.....           | 38  | Connected Vehicle Limitations.....                  | 352 |
| Child Safety Lock Indicator.....                    | 38  | Connected Vehicle Requirements.....                 | 352 |
| Child Safety Locks.....                             | 37  | Connected Vehicle – Troubleshooting.....            | 353 |
| Child Safety Locks – Troubleshooting.....           | 38  | Connected Vehicle – Frequently Asked Questions..... | 353 |
| Child Safety Locks – Information Messages.....      | 38  | Connecting a Bluetooth® Device.....                 | 368 |
| Child Safety Precautions.....                       | 30  | Connecting a Trailer.....                           | 274 |
| Cleaning the Exterior.....                          | 315 | Connecting a Trailer – Troubleshooting.....         | 276 |
| Cleaning Camera Lenses and Sensors.....             | 316 | Tow Ball.....                                       | 274 |
| Cleaning Chrome, Aluminium or Stainless Steel.....  | 315 | Connecting a Trailer Precautions.....               | 274 |
| Cleaning Headlamps and Rear Lamps.....              | 315 | Connecting a Trailer – Troubleshooting.....         | 276 |
| Cleaning Stripes or Graphics.....                   | 316 | Connecting a Trailer – Warning Lamps.....           | 276 |
| Cleaning the Exterior Precautions.....              | 315 | Connecting the Vehicle to a Mobile Network.....     | 352 |
| Cleaning the Underbody.....                         | 316 | Connecting the Ford App to the Modem.....           | 352 |
| Cleaning Wheels.....                                | 315 | Enabling and Disabling the Modem.....               | 352 |
| Cleaning Windows and Wiper Blades.....              | 315 | What Is the Modem.....                              | 352 |
| Cleaning the Interior.....                          | 316 | Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Network.....      | 353 |
| Cleaning Carpets and Floor Mats.....                | 318 | Connecting Your Phone.....                          | 364 |
| Cleaning Displays and Screens.....                  | 317 | Coolant.....                                        | 306 |
| Cleaning Fabric.....                                | 317 | Adding Coolant.....                                 | 306 |
| Cleaning Leather.....                               | 317 | Changing the Coolant.....                           | 307 |
| Cleaning Plastic.....                               | 317 | Checking the Coolant Level.....                     | 306 |
| Cleaning Seatbelts.....                             | 318 | Coolant – Information Messages.....                 | 308 |
| Cleaning Storage Compartments.....                  | 318 | Coolant Videos.....                                 | 309 |
| Cleaning the Instrument Panel.....                  | 316 | Coolant – Warning Lamps.....                        | 308 |
| Cleaning Vinyl.....                                 | 318 | Cooling System Capacity and Specification.....      | 308 |
| Climate Control.....                                | 112 | Crash and Breakdown Information.....                | 285 |
| Auto Mode.....                                      | 115 | Jump Starting the Vehicle.....                      | 286 |
| Climate Control Hints.....                          | 116 | Post-Crash Alert System.....                        | 288 |
| Closing the Liftgate.....                           | 63  | Recovery Towing.....                                | 289 |
| Closing the Hands-Free Liftgate.....                | 64  | Cross Traffic Alert.....                            | 250 |
| Closing the Liftgate From Inside Your Vehicle.....  | 63  | Cross Traffic Alert – Troubleshooting.....          | 252 |
| Closing the Liftgate From Outside Your Vehicle..... | 63  | Cross Traffic Alert Indicators.....                 | 251 |
| Closing the Liftgate Using the Remote Control.....  | 64  | Cross Traffic Alert Limitations.....                | 250 |
| Cold Weather Precautions.....                       | 281 | Cross Traffic Alert Precautions.....                | 250 |
| Connected Vehicle.....                              | 352 |                                                     |     |
| Connected Vehicle – Troubleshooting.....            | 353 |                                                     |     |
| Connecting the Vehicle to a Mobile Network.....     | 352 |                                                     |     |



# Index

|                                                      |     |
|------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Cross Traffic Alert – Troubleshooting.....           | 252 |
| Cross Traffic Alert – Information Messages.....      | 252 |
| Cup Holders.....                                     | 137 |
| Cup Holder Precautions.....                          | 137 |
| Locating the Cup Holders.....                        | 137 |
| Customer Information.....                            | 385 |
| Customizing the Instrument Cluster Display.....      | 105 |
| <b>D</b>                                             |     |
| Data Privacy.....                                    | 21  |
| DC Charging.....                                     | 162 |
| Deleting a Personal Profile.....                     | 370 |
| Directing the Flow of Air.....                       | 114 |
| Dog Guard                                            |     |
| See: Partitioning System.....                        | 266 |
| Doors and Locks.....                                 | 54  |
| Autolock.....                                        | 56  |
| Autorelock.....                                      | 57  |
| Autounlock.....                                      | 56  |
| Doors and Locks – Troubleshooting.....               | 57  |
| Mislock.....                                         | 56  |
| Operating the Doors From Inside Your Vehicle.....    | 55  |
| Operating the Doors From Outside Your Vehicle.....   | 54  |
| Doors and Locks – Troubleshooting.....               | 57  |
| Doors and Locks – Frequently Asked Questions.....    | 57  |
| Doors and Locks – Warning Lamps.....                 | 57  |
| Drive Mode Control.....                              | 182 |
| Drive Mode Control – Troubleshooting.....            | 183 |
| Drive Modes.....                                     | 182 |
| Drive Mode Control – Troubleshooting.....            | 183 |
| Drive Mode Control – Frequently Asked Questions..... | 183 |
| Drive Modes.....                                     | 182 |
| Eco.....                                             | 182 |
| Individual.....                                      | 182 |
| Normal.....                                          | 182 |
| Sport.....                                           | 182 |
| Traction.....                                        | 182 |
| Driver Alert.....                                    | 259 |
| Driver Alert – Troubleshooting.....                  | 261 |
| Driver Alert Indicators.....                         | 261 |
| Driver Alert Precautions.....                        | 259 |
| Driver Alert – Troubleshooting.....                  | 261 |
| Driver Alert – Information Messages.....             | 261 |
| Driver State Assist.....                             | 46  |
| Driver State Assist – Troubleshooting.....           | 47  |
| Driver State Assist Limitations.....                 | 47  |
| Driver State Assist Precautions.....                 | 46  |
| Driver State Assist – Troubleshooting.....           | 47  |
| Driver State Assist – Information Messages.....      | 47  |
| Driver State Assist – Warning Lamps.....             | 47  |
| Driving Hints.....                                   | 281 |
| Electric Vehicle.....                                | 283 |
| Driving In Sand.....                                 | 282 |
| Driving on Hilly or Sloping Terrain.....             | 281 |
| Driving on Snow and Ice.....                         | 281 |
| Driving Through Mud and Water.....                   | 281 |
| Driving Through Shallow Water.....                   | 282 |
| Drowsiness Monitor                                   |     |
| See: Driver Alert.....                               | 259 |
| <b>E</b>                                             |     |
| Easy Entry and Exit.....                             | 60  |
| eCall.....                                           | 48  |
| eCall – Troubleshooting.....                         | 50  |
| eCall – Troubleshooting.....                         | 50  |
| eCall – Information Messages.....                    | 50  |
| eCall User Information.....                          | 388 |
| Efficient Drive Mode.....                            | 184 |
| Efficient Drive Mode Indicators.....                 | 185 |
| Efficient Drive Mode Precautions.....                | 184 |
| Electric Motor Audible Warnings.....                 | 178 |
| Electric Motor.....                                  | 176 |
| Electric Motor – Troubleshooting.....                | 180 |
| Roll-Away Protection.....                            | 178 |
| Selector Positions.....                              | 176 |
| Electric Motor Precautions.....                      | 176 |
| Electric Motor – Troubleshooting.....                | 180 |
| Electric Motor – Information Messages.....           | 180 |
| Electric Parking Brake Audible Warning.....          | 193 |

# Index

|                                                     |     |                                                     |     |
|-----------------------------------------------------|-----|-----------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Electric Parking Brake.....                         | 192 | Switching the Parking Lamps On and Off.....         | 84  |
| Electric Parking Brake – Troubleshooting.....       | 193 | Using All Weather Lamps.....                        | 85  |
| Electric Parking Brake – Troubleshooting.....       | 193 | Using the Entry and Exit Lighting.....              | 85  |
| Electric Parking Brake – Information Messages.....  | 193 | Using the Rear Fog Lamps.....                       | 85  |
| Electric Parking Brake – Warning Lamps.....         | 193 | Using the Turn Signal Lamps.....                    | 84  |
| Electric Power Steering.....                        | 203 | Exterior Lighting Control.....                      | 82  |
| Electric Power Steering Precautions.....            | 203 | Exterior Lighting.....                              | 82  |
| How Does Electric Power Steering Work.....          | 203 | Adaptive Front Lighting.....                        | 91  |
| Electric Vehicle.....                               | 283 | Autolamps.....                                      | 83  |
| Maximizing Your Driving Range.....                  | 283 | Automatic High Beam Control.....                    | 86  |
| Electromagnetic Compatibility.....                  | 392 | Exterior Lamps.....                                 | 84  |
| Emergency Call Indicators.....                      | 49  | Glare Free High Beam Control.....                   | 88  |
| Emergency Call Limitations.....                     | 48  | Headlamps.....                                      | 82  |
| Emergency Call Requirements.....                    | 48  | Exterior Lighting – Frequently Asked Questions..... | 91  |
| Emergency Call System Data.....                     | 24  | Exterior Mirrors.....                               | 100 |
| Emergency Equipment.....                            | 293 | Exterior Mirrors Videos.....                        | 101 |
| Emergency Towing.....                               | 291 | Exterior Overview.....                              | 28  |
| Enabling Local Hazard Information.....              | 236 | <b>F</b>                                            |     |
| Energy Consumption Figures.....                     | 145 | Fastening and Unfastening the Seatbelts.....        | 39  |
| Energy Consumption Regulations.....                 | 145 | Flat Tire                                           |     |
| Entering a Parking Space.....                       | 215 | See: Changing a Flat Tire.....                      | 347 |
| Environment.....                                    | 25  | Floor Mats.....                                     | 284 |
| Evasive Steering Assist.....                        | 257 | Folding the Exterior Mirrors.....                   | 101 |
| Evasive Steering Assist Limitations.....            | 257 | Forward Collision Warning.....                      | 257 |
| Switching Evasive Steering Assist On and Off.....   | 257 | What is Forward Collision Warning.....              | 257 |
| What is Evasive Steering Assist.....                | 257 | Front Parking Aid.....                              | 207 |
| Event Data.....                                     | 22  | Front Parking Aid Audible Warnings.....             | 207 |
| Exiting a Parking Space.....                        | 216 | Front Parking Aid Limitations.....                  | 207 |
| Exit Warning.....                                   | 247 | Locating the Front Parking Aid Sensors.....         | 207 |
| Exit Warning – Troubleshooting.....                 | 249 | What is the Front Parking Aid.....                  | 207 |
| Exit Warning Indicators.....                        | 248 | Front Seat Precautions.....                         | 119 |
| Exit Warning Limitations.....                       | 247 | Front Seats.....                                    | 119 |
| Exit Warning Precautions.....                       | 247 | Heated Seats.....                                   | 124 |
| Exit Warning – Troubleshooting.....                 | 249 | Manual Seats.....                                   | 120 |
| Exit Warning – Information Messages.....            | 249 | Massage Seats.....                                  | 123 |
| Exterior Lamps.....                                 | 84  | Power Seats.....                                    | 120 |
| Exterior Lamps On Audible Warning.....              | 85  | Front Seats Videos.....                             | 125 |
| Switching the Daytime Running Lamps On and Off..... | 84  | Fuse Precautions.....                               | 294 |
|                                                     |     | Fuses.....                                          | 294 |
|                                                     |     | Interior Fuse Box.....                              | 297 |
|                                                     |     | Under Hood Fuse Box.....                            | 294 |

# Index

## G

|                                            |     |
|--------------------------------------------|-----|
| Glare Free High Beam Control.....          | 88  |
| Glare Free High Beam Control               |     |
| Indicators.....                            | 90  |
| Glare Free High Beam Control – Information |     |
| Messages.....                              | 90  |
| Glare Free High Beam Control               |     |
| Limitations.....                           | 90  |
| Glare Free High Beam Control               |     |
| Precautions.....                           | 89  |
| Glare Free High Beam Control               |     |
| Requirements.....                          | 89  |
| How Does Glare Free High Beam Control      |     |
| Work.....                                  | 88  |
| Overriding Glare Free High Beam            |     |
| Control.....                               | 90  |
| Switching Glare Free High Beam Control     |     |
| On and Off.....                            | 90  |
| Global Opening and Closing.....            | 97  |
| Global Opening and Closing Videos.....     | 98  |
| Using Global Closing.....                  | 97  |
| Using Global Opening.....                  | 97  |
| What Is Global Opening and Closing.....    | 97  |
| Glossary of Tire Terminology.....          | 325 |
| Glove Compartment.....                     | 137 |
| Opening the Glove Compartment.....         | 137 |

## H

|                                            |     |
|--------------------------------------------|-----|
| Headlamp Adjusting                         |     |
| See: Adjusting the Headlamps.....          | 312 |
| Headlamps.....                             | 82  |
| Adjusting the Level of the Headlamps.....  | 83  |
| Headlamp Indicators.....                   | 83  |
| Switching the Headlamps for Driving on the |     |
| Left or Right-Hand Side of the             |     |
| Road.....                                  | 82  |
| Using the High Beam Headlamps.....         | 82  |
| Head Up Display.....                       | 110 |
| Head Up Display Overview.....              | 110 |
| Head Up Display Settings.....              | 110 |
| Heated Seats.....                          | 124 |
| Heated Seat Precautions.....               | 124 |
| Switching the Heated Seats On and          |     |
| Off.....                                   | 124 |
| Heating                                    |     |
| See: Climate Control.....                  | 112 |

|                                        |     |
|----------------------------------------|-----|
| High Voltage Battery Gauge.....        | 103 |
| High Voltage Battery.....              | 142 |
| High Voltage Battery –                 |     |
| Troubleshooting.....                   | 146 |
| High Voltage Battery Precautions.....  | 142 |
| High Voltage Battery –                 |     |
| Troubleshooting.....                   | 146 |
| High Voltage Battery – Information     |     |
| Messages.....                          | 146 |
| High Voltage Battery – Warning         |     |
| Lamps.....                             | 146 |
| High Voltage Battery Vehicle           |     |
| Precautions.....                       | 285 |
| Home Screen.....                       | 360 |
| Hood Lock                              |     |
| See: Opening and Closing the Hood..... | 303 |
| How Does Active Park Assist Work.....  | 214 |
| How Does Adaptive Cruise Control With  |     |
| Stop and Go Work.....                  | 220 |
| How Does All-Wheel Drive Work.....     | 181 |
| How Does Auto Hold Work.....           | 198 |
| How Does Cross Traffic Alert           |     |
| Work.....                              | 250 |
| How Does Drive Mode Control            |     |
| Work.....                              | 182 |
| How Does Driver Alert Work.....        | 259 |
| How Does Driver State Assist Work..... | 46  |
| How Does Easy Entry and Exit           |     |
| Work.....                              | 60  |
| How Does eCall Work.....               | 48  |
| How Does Efficient Drive Mode          |     |
| Work.....                              | 184 |
| How Does Exit Warning Work.....        | 247 |
| How Does Lane Change Assist            |     |
| Work.....                              | 233 |
| How Does Pre-Collision Assist with     |     |
| Intersection Assist Work.....          | 254 |
| How Does Pre-Collision Assist          |     |
| Work.....                              | 253 |
| How Does Reverse Brake Assist          |     |
| Work.....                              | 194 |
| How Does Stability Control Work.....   | 201 |
| How Does the 360 Degree Camera         |     |
| Work.....                              | 212 |
| How Does the Center Mounted Side       |     |
| Airbag Work.....                       | 42  |
| How Does the Intelligent Speed Limiter |     |
| Work.....                              | 237 |

# Index

|                                                                |     |
|----------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| How Does the Lane Keeping System Work.....                     | 240 |
| How Does the Rear Occupant Alert System Work.....              | 128 |
| How Does Traction Control Work.....                            | 200 |
| How Does Traffic Sign Recognition Work.....                    | 262 |
| How Does Trailer Sway Control Work.....                        | 280 |
| How Do Personal Profiles Work.....                             | 370 |
| How Do the Front Airbags Work.....                             | 41  |
| How Do the Side Airbags Work.....                              | 41  |
| How Do the Side Curtain Airbags Work.....                      | 42  |
| <b>I</b>                                                       |     |
| Icon Glossary                                                  |     |
| See: Symbols Glossary.....                                     | 17  |
| Icons                                                          |     |
| See: Symbols Glossary.....                                     | 17  |
| Identifying Fuse Types.....                                    | 302 |
| Identifying the Audio Unit.....                                | 355 |
| Inflating the Tires.....                                       | 329 |
| Information on the Tire Sidewall.....                          | 322 |
| Inspecting the Tire for Damage.....                            | 331 |
| Installing and Removing the Luggage Compartment Cargo Net..... | 270 |
| Installing and Removing the Luggage Compartment Cover.....     | 270 |
| Instrument Cluster Display.....                                | 105 |
| Instrument Cluster.....                                        | 102 |
| Instrument Cluster Overview.....                               | 102 |
| Intelligent Speed Limiter Audible Warnings.....                | 239 |
| Intelligent Speed Limiter Indicators.....                      | 239 |
| Intelligent Speed Limiter.....                                 | 237 |
| Intelligent Speed Limiter – Troubleshooting.....               | 239 |
| Intelligent Speed Limiter Precautions.....                     | 237 |
| Intelligent Speed Limiter – Troubleshooting.....               | 239 |
| Intelligent Speed Limiter – Frequently Asked Questions.....    | 239 |
| Intentionally Exceeding the Set Speed Limit.....               | 238 |

|                                                      |     |
|------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Interior Air Quality.....                            | 118 |
| Auto Air Refresh.....                                | 118 |
| Interior Bulbs.....                                  | 312 |
| Interior Bulb Specification Chart.....               | 312 |
| Interior Fuse Box.....                               | 297 |
| Accessing the Interior Fuse Box.....                 | 297 |
| Identifying the Fuses in the Interior Fuse Box.....  | 298 |
| Interior Lamp Function.....                          | 93  |
| Switching the Interior Lamp Function On and Off..... | 93  |
| What Is the Interior Lamp Function.....              | 93  |
| Interior Lighting.....                               | 93  |
| Ambient Lighting.....                                | 94  |
| Interior Lamp Function.....                          | 93  |
| Interior Lighting Videos.....                        | 94  |
| Interior Mirror.....                                 | 99  |
| Auto-Dimming Interior Mirror.....                    | 99  |
| Interior Mirror Precautions.....                     | 99  |
| Interior Overview - LHD.....                         | 26  |
| Interior Overview - RHD.....                         | 27  |
| Introduction.....                                    | 13  |

## J

|                                |     |
|--------------------------------|-----|
| Jump Starting the Vehicle..... | 286 |
| Jump Starting Precautions..... | 286 |
| Jump Starting the Vehicle..... | 286 |
| Preparing the Vehicle.....     | 286 |

## K

|                                                            |    |
|------------------------------------------------------------|----|
| Keyless Entry.....                                         | 58 |
| Keyless Entry – Troubleshooting.....                       | 59 |
| Keyless Entry Limitations.....                             | 58 |
| Keyless Entry Settings.....                                | 58 |
| Keyless Entry – Troubleshooting.....                       | 59 |
| Keyless Entry – Frequently Asked Questions.....            | 59 |
| Keys and Remote Controls.....                              | 51 |
| Keys and Remote Controls – Troubleshooting.....            | 53 |
| Keys and Remote Controls – Troubleshooting.....            | 53 |
| Keys and Remote Controls – Frequently Asked Questions..... | 53 |

# Index

## L

|                                                     |     |
|-----------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Lane Centering.....                                 | 226 |
| How Does Lane Centering Work.....                   | 226 |
| Lane Centering Alerts.....                          | 228 |
| Lane Centering Automatic Cancellation.....          | 228 |
| Lane Centering Indicators.....                      | 229 |
| Lane Centering Limitations.....                     | 227 |
| Lane Centering Manual Cancellation.....             | 228 |
| Lane Centering Precautions.....                     | 226 |
| Lane Centering Requirements.....                    | 226 |
| Switching Lane Centering On and Off.....            | 227 |
| Lane Centering – Troubleshooting.....               | 229 |
| Lane Centering – Information Messages.....          | 229 |
| Lane Change Assist Cancellation.....                | 234 |
| Lane Change Assist.....                             | 233 |
| Lane Change Assist – Troubleshooting.....           | 235 |
| Lane Change Assist Limitations.....                 | 234 |
| Lane Change Assist Precautions.....                 | 233 |
| Lane Change Assist – Troubleshooting.....           | 235 |
| Lane Change Assist – Information Messages.....      | 235 |
| Lane Keeping System Indicators.....                 | 241 |
| Lane Keeping System.....                            | 240 |
| Blind Spot Assist.....                              | 242 |
| Lane Keeping System – Troubleshooting.....          | 246 |
| Lane Keeping System Limitations.....                | 240 |
| Lane Keeping System Precautions.....                | 240 |
| Lane Keeping System – Troubleshooting.....          | 246 |
| Lane Keeping System – Information Messages.....     | 246 |
| Liftgate.....                                       | 61  |
| Closing the Liftgate.....                           | 63  |
| Liftgate – Troubleshooting.....                     | 65  |
| Opening the Liftgate.....                           | 61  |
| Liftgate Obstacle Detection.....                    | 65  |
| Liftgate Precautions.....                           | 61  |
| Liftgate – Troubleshooting.....                     | 65  |
| Liftgate – Frequently Asked Questions.....          | 66  |
| Liftgate – Warning Lamps.....                       | 65  |
| Liftgate Videos.....                                | 66  |
| Load Carrying.....                                  | 266 |
| Roof Rack.....                                      | 268 |
| Tow Bar Mounted Carrier.....                        | 269 |
| Load Carrying Precautions.....                      | 266 |
| Load Carrying Videos.....                           | 269 |
| Loading Your Trailer.....                           | 277 |
| Load Retention Net                                  |     |
| See: Partitioning System.....                       | 266 |
| Local Hazard Information Indicators.....            | 236 |
| Local Hazard Information.....                       | 236 |
| Local Hazard Information Precautions.....           | 236 |
| Locating the Brake Fluid Reservoir.....             | 188 |
| Locating the Charge Port.....                       | 154 |
| Locating the Cross Traffic Alert Sensors.....       | 251 |
| Locating the Exit Warning Sensors.....              | 248 |
| Locating the Memory Function Buttons.....           | 130 |
| Locating the Power Outlets.....                     | 134 |
| Locating the Pre-Collision Assist Sensors.....      | 256 |
| Locating the Rear View Camera.....                  | 210 |
| Locating the Tire label.....                        | 322 |
| Locating the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit.....     | 333 |
| Locating the USB Ports.....                         | 132 |
| Locating the Wireless Accessory Charger.....        | 135 |
| Locking and Unlocking the Center Display.....       | 361 |
| Luggage Compartment Anchor Points.....              | 272 |
| Locating the Luggage Compartment Anchor Points..... | 272 |
| Luggage Compartment.....                            | 270 |
| Luggage Compartment Anchor Points.....              | 272 |
| Luggage Compartment Precautions.....                | 270 |
| Luggage Compartment Videos.....                     | 273 |

# Index

## M

|                                                |     |
|------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Maintenance.....                               | 303 |
| 12V Battery.....                               | 309 |
| 12V Battery – Troubleshooting.....             | 311 |
| Coolant.....                                   | 306 |
| Interior Bulbs.....                            | 312 |
| Maintenance Precautions.....                   | 303 |
| Making and Receiving a Phone<br>Call.....      | 365 |
| Manually Making an Emergency<br>Call.....      | 48  |
| Manual Seats.....                              | 120 |
| Adjusting the Head Restraint.....              | 126 |
| Adjusting the Seat Backrest.....               | 120 |
| Adjusting the Seat Height.....                 | 120 |
| Folding the Seat Backrest.....                 | 126 |
| Moving the Seat Backward and<br>Forward.....   | 120 |
| Removing the Head Restraint.....               | 126 |
| Unfolding the Seat Backrest.....               | 127 |
| Massage Seats.....                             | 123 |
| Adjusting the Massage Seat Settings.....       | 124 |
| Switching the Massage Seats On and<br>Off..... | 123 |
| Memory Function.....                           | 130 |
| Memory Function Precautions.....               | 130 |
| Mislock.....                                   | 56  |
| How Does Mislock Work.....                     | 56  |
| Mobile Communications<br>Equipment.....        | 387 |
| Mobile Device Data.....                        | 23  |
| Movable Screen.....                            | 359 |
| Movable Screen Videos.....                     | 359 |
| Muting the Audio.....                          | 357 |

## N

|                             |     |
|-----------------------------|-----|
| Navigation Map Updates..... | 371 |
| Navigation.....             | 371 |
| Adjusting the Map.....      | 371 |
| Route Guidance.....         | 374 |
| Setting a Destination.....  | 372 |
| Waypoints.....              | 374 |

## O

|                                 |     |
|---------------------------------|-----|
| One Pedal Drive Indicators..... | 187 |
|---------------------------------|-----|

|                                                                          |     |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| One Pedal Drive Limitations.....                                         | 186 |
| One Pedal Drive.....                                                     | 186 |
| One Pedal Drive Precautions.....                                         | 186 |
| Opening and Closing the Hood.....                                        | 303 |
| Opening and Closing the Windows.....                                     | 96  |
| Opening the Liftgate.....                                                | 61  |
| Opening the Hands-Free Liftgate.....                                     | 62  |
| Opening the Liftgate From Inside Your<br>Vehicle.....                    | 61  |
| Opening the Liftgate From Outside Your<br>Vehicle.....                   | 61  |
| Opening the Liftgate Using the Remote<br>Control.....                    | 61  |
| Operating the Doors From Inside Your<br>Vehicle.....                     | 55  |
| Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the<br>Central Locking.....        | 55  |
| Operating the Doors From Outside Your<br>Vehicle.....                    | 54  |
| Double Locking the Doors Using the<br>Remote Control.....                | 54  |
| Individually Unlocking and Locking the<br>Doors Using the Key Blade..... | 55  |
| Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the<br>Key Blade.....              | 54  |
| Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the<br>Remote Control.....         | 54  |
| OTA<br>See: Vehicle Software Updates.....                                | 376 |
| Overriding Reverse Brake Assist.....                                     | 195 |
| Overriding the Set Speed.....                                            | 225 |
| Over the air<br>See: Vehicle Software Updates.....                       | 376 |
| Over-the-air<br>See: Vehicle Software Updates.....                       | 376 |

## P

|                                  |     |
|----------------------------------|-----|
| Parking Aid Indicators.....      | 209 |
| Parking Aid Precautions.....     | 205 |
| Parking Aids.....                | 205 |
| Front Parking Aid.....           | 207 |
| Rear Parking Aid.....            | 206 |
| Side Parking Aid.....            | 208 |
| Partitioning System.....         | 266 |
| Passenger Airbag Indicators..... | 43  |

# Index

|                                                        |     |
|--------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Passive Anti-Theft System.....                         | 69  |
| How Does the Passive Anti-Theft System Work.....       | 69  |
| What Is the Passive Anti-Theft System.....             | 69  |
| Pedestrian Alert System.....                           | 45  |
| Pedestrian Alert System Precautions.....               | 45  |
| Performing a System Reset.....                         | 377 |
| Personalized Settings.....                             | 109 |
| Personal Profiles.....                                 | 370 |
| Phone Menu.....                                        | 364 |
| Phone.....                                             | 364 |
| Phone Precautions.....                                 | 364 |
| Playing Media Using Bluetooth®.....                    | 368 |
| Playing Media Using the USB Port.....                  | 132 |
| Playing or Pausing the Audio Source.....               | 356 |
| Post-Collision Braking.....                            | 288 |
| Post-Crash Alert System.....                           | 288 |
| How Does the Post-Crash Alert System Work.....         | 288 |
| Post-Crash Alert System Limitations.....               | 288 |
| Switching the Post-Crash Alert System Off.....         | 288 |
| What Is the Post-Crash Alert System.....               | 288 |
| Power Gauge.....                                       | 103 |
| Powering Off.....                                      | 140 |
| Power Outlet.....                                      | 134 |
| Power Outlet Precautions.....                          | 134 |
| Power Seats.....                                       | 120 |
| Adjusting the Head Restraint.....                      | 120 |
| Adjusting the Lumbar Support.....                      | 123 |
| Adjusting the Seat Backrest.....                       | 123 |
| Adjusting the Seat Cushion.....                        | 122 |
| Adjusting the Seat Height.....                         | 123 |
| Moving the Seat Backward and Forward.....              | 122 |
| Removing the Head Restraint.....                       | 121 |
| Power-Up See: Vehicle Software Updates.....            | 376 |
| Pre-Collision Assist Limitations.....                  | 255 |
| Pre-Collision Assist Precautions.....                  | 254 |
| Pre-Collision Assist.....                              | 253 |
| Evasive Steering Assist.....                           | 257 |
| Forward Collision Warning.....                         | 257 |
| Pre-Collision Assist – Troubleshooting.....            | 257 |
| Pre-Collision Assist – Troubleshooting.....            | 257 |
| Pre-Collision Assist – Information Messages.....       | 258 |
| Pre-Collision Assist – Warning Lamps.....              | 257 |
| Predictive Speed Assist.....                           | 229 |
| How Does Predictive Speed Assist Work.....             | 229 |
| Predictive Speed Assist Alerts.....                    | 230 |
| Predictive Speed Assist Indicators.....                | 231 |
| Predictive Speed Assist Limitations.....               | 230 |
| Predictive Speed Assist Precautions.....               | 229 |
| Switching Predictive Speed Assist Mode On and Off..... | 230 |
| Preparing Your Vehicle for Storage.....                | 320 |
| Preserving Your High Voltage Battery.....              | 142 |
| Programming the Remote Control.....                    | 53  |
| Protecting the Environment.....                        | 25  |
| Puncture See: Changing a Flat Tire.....                | 347 |
| R                                                      |     |
| Radio Frequency Certification Labels.....              | 387 |
| Radio.....                                             | 358 |
| REACH.....                                             | 386 |
| Rear Loadspace Hatch.....                              | 267 |
| Rear Occupant Alert System Limitations.....            | 128 |
| Rear Occupant Alert System Precautions.....            | 128 |
| Rear Occupant Alert System.....                        | 128 |
| Rear Parking Aid.....                                  | 206 |
| Locating the Rear Parking Aid Sensors.....             | 206 |
| Rear Parking Aid Audible Warnings.....                 | 206 |
| Rear Parking Aid Limitations.....                      | 206 |
| What Is the Rear Parking Aid.....                      | 206 |
| Rear Seats.....                                        | 126 |
| Manual Seats.....                                      | 126 |
| Rear Seats Videos.....                                 | 127 |
| Rear View Camera Guidelines.....                       | 210 |

## R

|                                             |     |
|---------------------------------------------|-----|
| Radio Frequency Certification Labels.....   | 387 |
| Radio.....                                  | 358 |
| REACH.....                                  | 386 |
| Rear Loadspace Hatch.....                   | 267 |
| Rear Occupant Alert System Limitations..... | 128 |
| Rear Occupant Alert System Precautions..... | 128 |
| Rear Occupant Alert System.....             | 128 |
| Rear Parking Aid.....                       | 206 |
| Locating the Rear Parking Aid Sensors.....  | 206 |
| Rear Parking Aid Audible Warnings.....      | 206 |
| Rear Parking Aid Limitations.....           | 206 |
| What is the Rear Parking Aid.....           | 206 |
| Rear Seats.....                             | 126 |
| Manual Seats.....                           | 126 |
| Rear Seats Videos.....                      | 127 |
| Rear View Camera Guidelines.....            | 210 |

# Index

|                                                                                              |     |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Rear View Camera Precautions.....                                                            | 210 |
| Rear View Camera.....                                                                        | 210 |
| Rear View Camera Videos.....                                                                 | 211 |
| Rebooting the Center Display.....                                                            | 361 |
| Recalling a Preset Position.....                                                             | 131 |
| Recovery Towing.....                                                                         | 289 |
| Accessing the Front Towing Point.....                                                        | 289 |
| Accessing the Rear Towing Point.....                                                         | 289 |
| Installing the Towing Eye.....                                                               | 290 |
| Locating the Towing Eye.....                                                                 | 290 |
| Recycling and Disposing Labels.....                                                          | 25  |
| Recycling and Disposing of<br>Batteries.....                                                 | 25  |
| Recycling and Disposing of the High<br>Voltage Battery.....                                  | 144 |
| Releasing the Electric Parking Brake if<br>the Vehicle Battery Has Run Out of<br>Charge..... | 193 |
| Remote Control Limitations.....                                                              | 51  |
| Remote Start.....                                                                            | 111 |
| Remote Start Settings.....                                                                   | 111 |
| Removing and Installing the Frunk<br>Storage Tray.....                                       | 271 |
| Removing the Key Blade.....                                                                  | 51  |
| Removing Your Vehicle From<br>Storage.....                                                   | 321 |
| Repairing Minor Paint Damage.....                                                            | 318 |
| Replacement Parts<br>Recommendation.....                                                     | 387 |
| Replacing a Lost Key or Remote<br>Control.....                                               | 53  |
| Replacing the Front Wiper Blades.....                                                        | 77  |
| Replacing the Rear Wiper Blades.....                                                         | 78  |
| Reprogramming the Unlocking<br>Function.....                                                 | 56  |
| Resetting Tire Pressure Monitoring<br>System.....                                            | 344 |
| Resuming the Set Speed Limit.....                                                            | 238 |
| Resuming the Set Speed.....                                                                  | 225 |
| Reverse Brake Assist Indicators.....                                                         | 195 |
| Reverse Brake Assist Precautions.....                                                        | 194 |
| Reverse Brake Assist.....                                                                    | 194 |
| Reverse Brake Assist –<br>Troubleshooting.....                                               | 196 |
| Reverse Brake Assist –<br>Troubleshooting.....                                               | 196 |
| Reverse Brake Assist – Frequently Asked<br>Questions.....                                    | 197 |
| Reverse Brake Assist – Information<br>Messages.....                                          | 196 |
| Reverse Wipe.....                                                                            | 77  |
| Reverse Wipe Settings.....                                                                   | 77  |
| What Is Reverse Wipe.....                                                                    | 77  |
| Reversing Assist.....                                                                        | 218 |
| Activating Reversing Assist.....                                                             | 219 |
| How Does Reversing Assist Work.....                                                          | 219 |
| Reversing Assist Precautions.....                                                            | 218 |
| Reversing Using Reversing Assist.....                                                        | 219 |
| Roll-Away Protection.....                                                                    | 178 |
| How Does Roll-Away Protection<br>Work.....                                                   | 178 |
| Roll-Away Protection Limitations.....                                                        | 178 |
| Switching the Roll-Away Protection On and<br>Off.....                                        | 179 |
| Rollover Warning.....                                                                        | 385 |
| Roof Rack.....                                                                               | 268 |
| Roof Rack Load Capacities.....                                                               | 268 |
| Roof Rack Precautions.....                                                                   | 268 |
| Route Guidance.....                                                                          | 374 |
| Adjusting the Guidance Prompt<br>Volume.....                                                 | 374 |
| Canceling Route Guidance.....                                                                | 375 |
| Repeating an Instruction.....                                                                | 375 |
| Running-In<br>See: Breaking-In.....                                                          | 281 |
| <b>S</b>                                                                                     |     |
| Saving a Preset Position.....                                                                | 130 |
| Scrolling Through Menu Items.....                                                            | 357 |
| Searching for a Parking Space.....                                                           | 214 |
| Seatbelt Precautions.....                                                                    | 39  |
| Seatbelt Reminder.....                                                                       | 40  |
| Seatbelt Reminder Audible Warnings.....                                                      | 40  |
| Seatbelt Reminder Indicators.....                                                            | 40  |
| Seatbelts.....                                                                               | 39  |
| Seatbelt Reminder.....                                                                       | 40  |
| Security.....                                                                                | 69  |
| Anti-Theft Alarm System.....                                                                 | 69  |
| Anti-Theft Alarm System Settings.....                                                        | 70  |
| Passive Anti-Theft System.....                                                               | 69  |
| Selecting a Drive Mode.....                                                                  | 182 |
| Selecting a Menu Item.....                                                                   | 357 |
| Selecting a Personal Profile.....                                                            | 370 |
| Selecting the Audio Source.....                                                              | 355 |
| Selector Position Indicators.....                                                            | 178 |



# Index

|                                            |     |                                        |     |
|--------------------------------------------|-----|----------------------------------------|-----|
| Selector Positions.....                    | 176 | Stability Control –                    |     |
| Brake (B).....                             | 177 | Troubleshooting.....                   | 202 |
| Drive (D).....                             | 177 | Stability Control – Information        |     |
| Neutral (N).....                           | 176 | Messages.....                          | 202 |
| Park (P).....                              | 176 | Starting and Powering Off              |     |
| Reverse (R).....                           | 176 | Precautions.....                       | 140 |
| Service Data.....                          | 22  | Starting and Powering Off.....         | 140 |
| Service Intervals.....                     | 384 | Starting and Powering Off –            |     |
| Service Intervals - Turkey.....            | 384 | Troubleshooting.....                   | 141 |
| Setting a Destination.....                 | 372 | Starting and Powering Off –            |     |
| Setting a Destination Using a Point of     |     | Troubleshooting.....                   | 141 |
| Interest.....                              | 374 | Starting and Powering Off – Frequently |     |
| Setting a Destination Using a Predictive   |     | Asked Questions.....                   | 141 |
| Destination.....                           | 372 | Starting the Vehicle.....              | 140 |
| Setting a Destination Using a Recent       |     | Status Bar.....                        | 360 |
| Destination.....                           | 373 | Steering.....                          | 203 |
| Setting a Destination Using a Saved        |     | Electric Power Steering.....           | 203 |
| Destination.....                           | 373 | Steering – Troubleshooting.....        | 203 |
| Setting a Destination Using the Map        |     | Steering – Troubleshooting.....        | 203 |
| Screen.....                                | 372 | Steering – Information Messages.....   | 204 |
| Setting a Destination Using the Text Entry |     | Steering – Warning Lamps.....          | 203 |
| Screen.....                                | 372 | Steering Wheel.....                    | 73  |
| Settings Data.....                         | 23  | Stopping the Liftgate Movement.....    | 65  |
| Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control        |     | Storage.....                           | 137 |
| Gap.....                                   | 224 | Center Console.....                    | 138 |
| Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control        |     | Cup Holders.....                       | 137 |
| Speed.....                                 | 223 | Glove Compartment.....                 | 137 |
| Setting the Blower Motor Speed.....        | 113 | Under Floor Storage.....               | 139 |
| Setting the Clock and Date.....            | 357 | Storing a First Aid Kit.....           | 293 |
| Setting the Liftgate Opening Height.....   | 63  | Storing a Warning Triangle.....        | 293 |
| Setting the Speed Limit.....               | 237 | Storing Your Vehicle.....              | 320 |
| Setting the Temperature.....               | 114 | Switching Active Park Assist On and    |     |
| Shifting Your Vehicle Into Gear.....       | 177 | Off.....                               | 214 |
| Side Parking Aid.....                      | 208 | Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On   |     |
| Locating the Side Parking Aid              |     | and Off.....                           | 223 |
| Sensors.....                               | 208 | Switching Air Conditioning On and      |     |
| Side Parking Aid Audible Warnings.....     | 208 | Off.....                               | 112 |
| Side Parking Aid Limitations.....          | 208 | Switching All of the Interior Lamps On |     |
| What is the Side Parking Aid.....          | 208 | and Off.....                           | 93  |
| Sitting in the Correct Position.....       | 119 | Switching Android Auto™ On and         |     |
| Software Update                            |     | Off.....                               | 366 |
| See: Vehicle Software Updates.....         | 376 | Switching Apple CarPlay On and         |     |
| Special Notices - Turkey.....              | 15  | Off.....                               | 366 |
| Speedometer.....                           | 103 | Switching Auto Hold On and Off.....    | 198 |
| Stability Control Indicator.....           | 201 | Switching Climate Control On and       |     |
| Stability Control.....                     | 201 | Off.....                               | 112 |
| Stability Control – Troubleshooting.....   | 202 | Switching Cross Traffic Alert On and   |     |
|                                            |     | Off.....                               | 251 |

# Index

|                                                                |     |                                                                              |     |
|----------------------------------------------------------------|-----|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Switching Defrost On and Off.....                              | 113 | Switching the Heated Mirrors On and Off.....                                 | 113 |
| Switching Driver Alert On and Off.....                         | 260 | Switching the Heated Rear Window On and Off.....                             | 113 |
| Switching Easy Entry and Exit On and Off.....                  | 60  | Switching the Heated Steering Wheel On and Off.....                          | 73  |
| Switching Efficient Drive Mode On and Off.....                 | 184 | Switching the Intelligent Speed Limiter On and Off.....                      | 237 |
| Switching Exit Warning On and Off.....                         | 248 | Switching the Lane Keeping System On and Off.....                            | 241 |
| Switching From Intelligent Speed Limiter to Speed Limiter..... | 239 | Switching the Passenger Airbag On and Off.....                               | 44  |
| Switching Lane Change Assist On and Off.....                   | 234 | Switching the Rear Interior Lamps On and Off.....                            | 93  |
| Switching Maximum Cooling On and Off.....                      | 113 | Switching the Rear Window Wiper On and Off.....                              | 77  |
| Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off.....                      | 113 | Switching Traction Control On and Off.....                                   | 200 |
| Switching One Pedal Drive On and Off.....                      | 186 | Symbols Glossary.....                                                        | 17  |
| Switching Parking Aid On and Off.....                          | 205 | Symbols Used On Your Instrument Cluster.....                                 | 17  |
| Switching Pre-Collision Assist On and Off.....                 | 256 | System Update<br>See: Vehicle Software Updates.....                          | 376 |
| Switching Rear Occupant Alert System On and Off.....           | 128 |                                                                              |     |
| Switching Recirculated Air On and Off.....                     | 112 | <b>T</b>                                                                     |     |
| Switching Repeat Mode On and Off.....                          | 357 | Third Party Software Copyright Acknowledgment.....                           | 385 |
| Switching Reverse Brake Assist On and Off.....                 | 195 | Tire Care.....                                                               | 329 |
| Switching Shuffle Mode On and Off.....                         | 356 | Tire Pressure Monitoring System Limitations.....                             | 343 |
| Switching Stability Control On and Off - AWD.....              | 201 | Tire Pressure Monitoring System Precautions.....                             | 343 |
| Switching Stability Control On and Off - RWD.....              | 201 | Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....                                         | 343 |
| Switching Text Message Notification On and Off.....            | 366 | Tire Pressure Monitoring System - Troubleshooting.....                       | 344 |
| Switching the Audio Unit On and Off.....                       | 355 | Tire Pressure Monitoring System - Troubleshooting.....                       | 344 |
| Switching the Display On and Off.....                          | 358 | Tire Pressure Monitoring System - Information Messages.....                  | 346 |
| Switching the Front Interior Lamps On and Off.....             | 93  | Tire Pressure Monitoring System - Warning Lamps.....                         | 344 |
| Switching the Hands-Free Liftgate On and Off.....              | 62  | Tire Pressure Specifications.....                                            | 329 |
| Switching the Hazard Flashers On and Off.....                  | 286 | Tire Replacement Requirements.....                                           | 326 |
| Switching the Head Up Display On and Off.....                  | 110 | Tire Rotation.....                                                           | 331 |
|                                                                |     | Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit Components - Vehicles Built From: 05/2026..... | 334 |

# Index

|                                                                                     |     |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit<br>Components - Vehicles Built Up To:<br>04/2026..... | 334 |
| Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit<br>Precautions.....                                   | 333 |
| Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit.....                                                  | 333 |
| Tow Ball.....                                                                       | 274 |
| Deploying the Tow Ball Arm.....                                                     | 275 |
| Retracting the Tow Ball Arm.....                                                    | 275 |
| Tow Ball Arm Guidelines.....                                                        | 274 |
| Tow Ball Components.....                                                            | 275 |
| Tow Ball Limitations.....                                                           | 274 |
| Tow Ball Precautions.....                                                           | 274 |
| Tow Bar Mounted Carrier.....                                                        | 269 |
| Tow Bar Mounted Carrier<br>Precautions.....                                         | 269 |
| Tow Bar Mounted Load Capacities.....                                                | 269 |
| Towing a Trailer Limitations.....                                                   | 277 |
| Towing a Trailer Precautions.....                                                   | 277 |
| Towing a Trailer.....                                                               | 277 |
| Towing Weights and Dimensions.....                                                  | 278 |
| Towing Weights and Dimensions.....                                                  | 278 |
| Tow Bar Dimensions.....                                                             | 278 |
| Towing Weight Capacities.....                                                       | 278 |
| Towing Your Vehicle Precautions.....                                                | 291 |
| Towing Your Vehicle.....                                                            | 291 |
| Traction Control Indicator.....                                                     | 200 |
| Traction Control.....                                                               | 200 |
| Traction Control – Troubleshooting.....                                             | 200 |
| Traction Control –<br>Troubleshooting.....                                          | 200 |
| Traction Control – Warning Lamps.....                                               | 200 |
| Traffic Sign Recognition<br>Indicators.....                                         | 263 |
| Traffic Sign Recognition<br>Limitations.....                                        | 262 |
| Traffic Sign Recognition<br>Precautions.....                                        | 262 |
| Traffic Sign Recognition Settings.....                                              | 263 |
| Traffic Sign Recognition.....                                                       | 262 |
| Traffic Sign Recognition –<br>Troubleshooting.....                                  | 265 |
| Traffic Sign Recognition –<br>Troubleshooting.....                                  | 265 |
| Traffic Sign Recognition – Information<br>Messages.....                             | 265 |
| Trailer Sway Control Precautions.....                                               | 280 |
| Trailer Sway Control.....                                                           | 280 |
| Trailer Towing Hints.....                                                           | 277 |
| Transporting the Vehicle.....                                                       | 290 |
| Trip Summary.....                                                                   | 107 |
| Tyre Pressure Specifications<br>See: Tyre Pressure Specifications.....              | 329 |

## U

|                                                                                 |     |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Under Floor Storage.....                                                        | 139 |
| Locating the Luggage Compartment Under<br>Floor Storage.....                    | 139 |
| Under Hood Fuse Box.....                                                        | 294 |
| Identifying the Fuses in the Under Hood<br>Fuse Box.....                        | 295 |
| Locating the Under Hood Fuse Box.....                                           | 294 |
| Under Hood Overview - LHD.....                                                  | 304 |
| Under Hood Overview - RHD.....                                                  | 305 |
| USB Ports.....                                                                  | 132 |
| Using Auto Hold.....                                                            | 198 |
| Using Keyless Entry.....                                                        | 58  |
| Using Remote Start.....                                                         | 111 |
| Using Snow Chains.....                                                          | 327 |
| Using Summer Tires.....                                                         | 327 |
| Using the Instrument Cluster Display<br>Controls.....                           | 105 |
| Using the Movable Screen.....                                                   | 359 |
| Using the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit -<br>Vehicles Built From: 05/2026.....  | 335 |
| Using the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit -<br>Vehicles Built Up To: 04/2026..... | 338 |
| Using This Publication.....                                                     | 14  |
| Using Winter Tires.....                                                         | 327 |
| Using Your Vehicle App and<br>Charging.....                                     | 169 |

## V

|                                                    |     |
|----------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Vehicle Care.....                                  | 315 |
| Cleaning the Exterior.....                         | 315 |
| Cleaning the Interior.....                         | 316 |
| Vehicle Dimensions.....                            | 313 |
| Vehicle Identification Number.....                 | 350 |
| Locating the Vehicle Identification<br>Number..... | 350 |
| Vehicle Identification Number<br>Overview.....     | 350 |

# Index

|                                            |     |                                         |     |
|--------------------------------------------|-----|-----------------------------------------|-----|
| Vehicle Identification Plate.....          | 351 | What is One Pedal Drive.....            | 186 |
| Locating the Vehicle Identification        |     | What Is Pre-Collision Assist.....       | 253 |
| Plate.....                                 | 351 | What Is Reverse Brake Assist.....       | 194 |
| Vehicle Identification Plate Overview..... | 351 | What Is Stability Control.....          | 201 |
| Vehicle Identification.....                | 350 | What Is the Electric Parking Brake..... | 192 |
| Vehicle Identification Number.....         | 350 | What Is the Head Up Display.....        | 110 |
| Vehicle Identification Plate.....          | 351 | What Is the High Voltage Battery.....   | 142 |
| Vehicle Range Display.....                 | 103 | What Is the Intelligent Speed           |     |
| Vehicle Software Updates.....              | 376 | Limiter.....                            | 237 |
| Vehicle Specifications.....                | 313 | What Is the Lane Keeping System.....    | 240 |
| Vehicle System Reset.....                  | 377 | What Is the Memory Function.....        | 130 |
| Ventilation                                |     | What Is the Pedestrian Alert            |     |
| See: Climate Control.....                  | 112 | System.....                             | 45  |
| Visual Search.....                         | 26  | What is the Rear Occupant Alert         |     |
| Voice Interaction Examples.....            | 363 | System.....                             | 128 |
| Voice Interaction Settings.....            | 363 | What Is the Rear View Camera.....       | 210 |
| Voice Interaction.....                     | 362 | What Is the Tire Pressure Monitoring    |     |
|                                            |     | System.....                             | 343 |
|                                            |     | What Is the Tire Sealant and Inflator   |     |
|                                            |     | Kit.....                                | 333 |
|                                            |     | What Is the Wireless Accessory          |     |
|                                            |     | Charger.....                            | 135 |
|                                            |     | What Is Traction Control.....           | 200 |
|                                            |     | What Is Traffic Sign Recognition.....   | 262 |
|                                            |     | What is Voice Interaction.....          | 362 |
|                                            |     | Wheel and Tire Information.....         | 322 |
|                                            |     | Wheel Bolts.....                        | 348 |
|                                            |     | Wi Fi                                   |     |
|                                            |     | See: Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi  |     |
|                                            |     | Network.....                            | 353 |
|                                            |     | Window Bounce-Back.....                 | 98  |
|                                            |     | Overriding Window Bounce-Back.....      | 98  |
|                                            |     | Resetting Window Bounce-Back.....       | 98  |
|                                            |     | What Is Window Bounce-Back.....         | 98  |
|                                            |     | Windows.....                            | 96  |
|                                            |     | Global Opening and Closing.....         | 97  |
|                                            |     | Window Bounce-Back.....                 | 98  |
|                                            |     | Wipers and Washers –                    |     |
|                                            |     | Troubleshooting.....                    | 80  |
|                                            |     | Wipers and Washers – Frequently Asked   |     |
|                                            |     | Questions.....                          | 81  |
|                                            |     | Wipers and Washers – Warning            |     |
|                                            |     | Lamps.....                              | 80  |
|                                            |     | Wipers and Washers Videos.....          | 80  |
|                                            |     | Wipers and Washers.....                 | 75  |
|                                            |     | Autowipers.....                         | 76  |
|                                            |     | Reverse Wipe.....                       | 77  |
|                                            |     | Washers.....                            | 78  |

## W

|                                       |     |
|---------------------------------------|-----|
| Warnings and Notes Used in This       |     |
| Publication.....                      | 14  |
| Washers.....                          | 78  |
| Adding Washer Fluid.....              | 79  |
| Using the Rear Window Washer.....     | 79  |
| Using the Windshield Washer.....      | 79  |
| Washer Fluid Specification.....       | 80  |
| Washer Precautions.....               | 78  |
| Washers                               |     |
| See: Wipers and Washers.....          | 75  |
| Waxing Your Vehicle.....              | 319 |
| Waypoints.....                        | 374 |
| Adding a Waypoint.....                | 374 |
| Editing Waypoints.....                | 374 |
| What Are the Instrument Cluster       |     |
| Indicators.....                       | 104 |
| What Are the Instrument Cluster       |     |
| Warning Lamps.....                    | 104 |
| What Is a Connected Vehicle.....      | 352 |
| What Is Active Park Assist.....       | 214 |
| What Is Cross Traffic Alert.....      | 250 |
| What Is Drive Mode Control.....       | 182 |
| What Is Driver Alert.....             | 259 |
| What Is eCall.....                    | 48  |
| What Is Efficient Drive Mode.....     | 184 |
| What is Exit Warning.....             | 247 |
| What Is Keyless Entry.....            | 58  |
| What Is Local Hazard Information..... | 236 |

# Index

---

|                                                |     |
|------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Wipers.....                                    | 75  |
| Wipers and Washers –<br>Troubleshooting.....   | 80  |
| Wipers.....                                    | 75  |
| Switching Windshield Wipers On and<br>Off..... | 75  |
| Wiper Precautions.....                         | 75  |
| Wireless Accessory Charger<br>Precautions..... | 135 |
| Wireless Accessory Charger.....                | 135 |

## Y

|                             |     |
|-----------------------------|-----|
| Your Authorized Dealer..... | 378 |
|-----------------------------|-----|





